

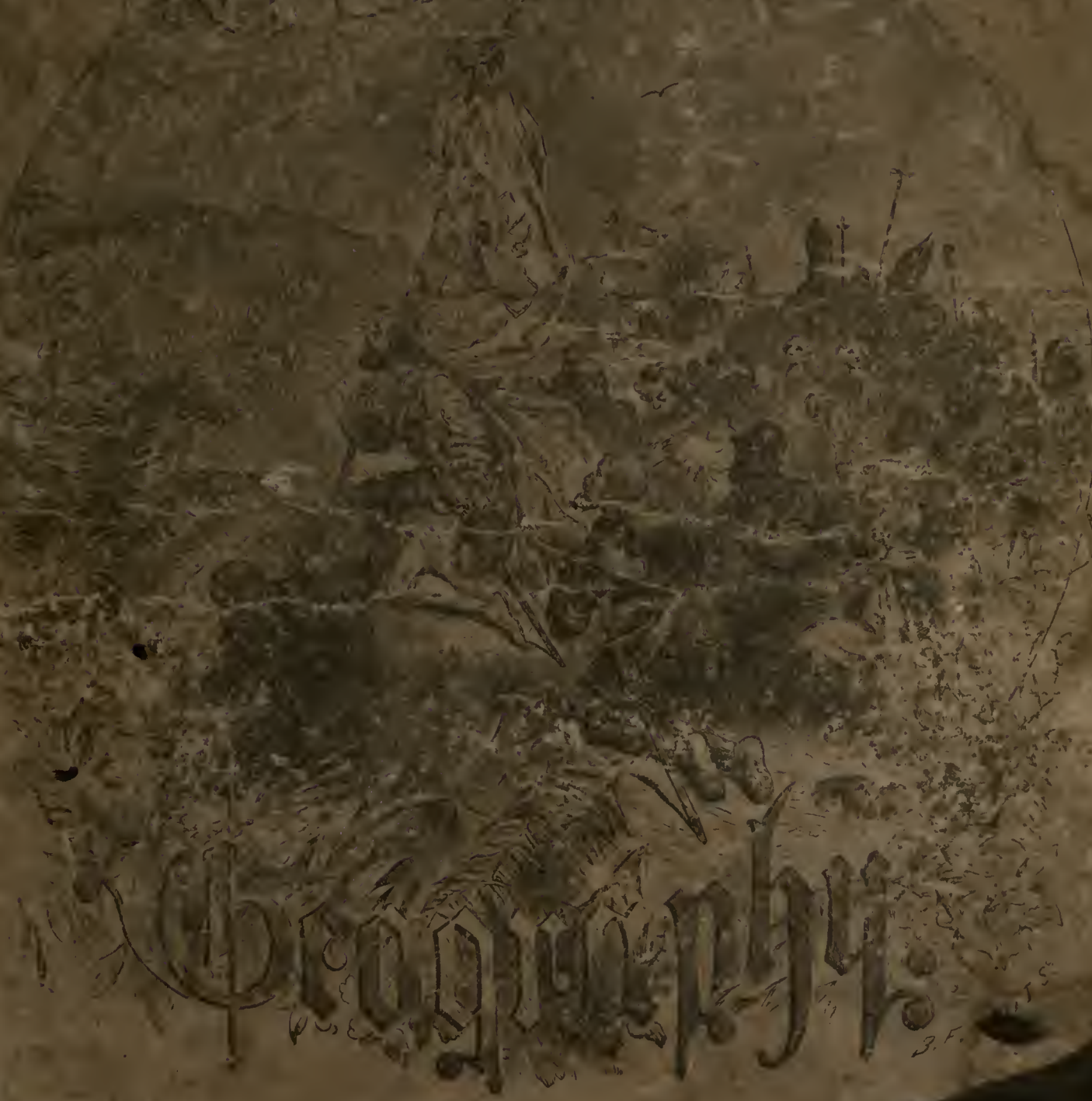
UC-NRLF



5C 16 672

WARRINGTON

MEMORIAL



Philadelphia

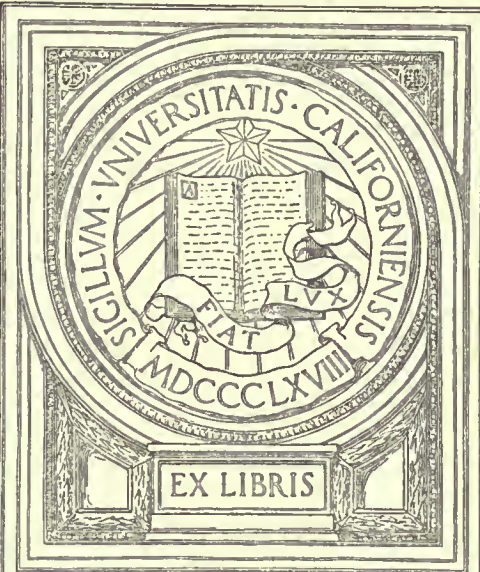
PHILADELPHIA:

COWPERTHWAIT & COMPANY

YF 00705

Isabel Wyckoff
Isabel Wyckoff

GIFT OF
Dr. William H. Ivie



Education Library

240
99
49
38
30

THE
COMMON-SCHOOL GEOGRAPHY:

AN
ELEMENTARY TREATISE

ON
MATHEMATICAL, PHYSICAL, AND POLITICAL
GEOGRAPHY.

BY
D. M. WARREN,

AUTHOR OF A TREATISE ON PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY, ETC. ETC.

LAST REVISED EDITION.

PHILADELPHIA:
COWPERTHWAIT & CO.
1869.

Education Lib.

PUBLISHERS' ADVERTISEMENT.

Warren's Series of Geographies.

THIS SERIES NOW COMPRISES THE FOLLOWING WORKS, VIZ.:-

WARREN'S PRIMARY GEOGRAPHY,
WARREN'S COMMON-SCHOOL GEOGRAPHY,
WARREN'S PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY.

THESE three books form a complete geographical course, adapted to the various stages of progress of the different classes of all grades of schools. In all the books of the series, the Maps and descriptive text are in the same volume. The Maps and Engravings are of the very highest order of excellence.

The Primary Geography is designed for beginners. It contains a brief description of the different countries of the earth, and is illustrated by nineteen colored Electrotyped Maps drawn expressly for the work, and by more than fifty fine wood Engravings, all of which are from original designs.

The Common-School Geography is especially intended for the use of the Grammar-schools of our cities and towns, and of the Common schools in the country districts. It contains a description of all the countries upon the globe, and is illustrated by very superior Copper-plate Maps, and by many fine wood Engravings.

The Physical Geography is designed for advanced classes, and is well adapted to the use of Colleges, Academies, Seminaries, and High Schools. The work forms one royal quarto volume of 92 pages, and is illustrated by many superior wood Engravings, and by twenty Electrotyped and Copper-plate Maps drawn expressly for the work.

This Series of Geographies, in whole or in part, has been introduced into many of the best public and private schools in all parts of the country—receiving the warm approval of those teachers who have made themselves acquainted with their merits. Teachers and school-officers are respectfully requested to examine this series of works, before determining on the text-books on the subject of Geography to be used in the schools under their charge.

Educ. Lib.
Req. of Educ. Lib.
GIFT
Ivie

G127
W3
1869
Educ.
Lit.

PREFACE TO THE REVISED EDITION.

THE progress of geographical discovery, and the numerous changes, political and territorial, that are constantly taking place, have again rendered necessary a revision of this work.

Advantage has been taken of this alteration of the text, to introduce into the book an entirely new series of finely engraved Copper-plate Maps, in place of those hitherto contained in it. The division and general arrangement of the Maps remain the same as before, although, wherever practicable, their scale has been somewhat enlarged; while a new, full-page Map of Great Britain and Ireland has been added.

The new Maps have been prepared under the direct supervision of Mr. JAMES H. YOUNG, whose long experience and well-earned reputation in this department are a sufficient guarantee of their accuracy as well as of their artistic finish.

The addition of a greatly enlarged Pronouncing and Explanatory Vocabulary, and of two pages of Review Questions, will be found, it is believed, to be a valuable improvement.

The Treatise on Map-Drawing, by Mr. E. A. APGAR, State Superintendent of New Jersey, explains a new and practical method of acquiring this important art.

The following extract from the Preface to the first edition of the work will show its general plan and arrangement:—

“The book consists of two parts. Part First contains lessons on the elementary principles of geographical science; Part Second, a description of the different countries. The lessons of Part First are not arranged in the usual form of question and answer. The principles are clearly stated in familiar language, and the lessons are followed by direct questions upon the text, and suggestive questions testing the learner’s understanding of it. Part Second is arranged in chapters, which correspond with the maps. The description of a country is followed by a map of the same; on the page opposite to which are suggestive questions growing out of the text, and direct questions upon the map. The descriptions in Part Second follow a natural order. The position of a country is first given, then its surface is described, and the effect of these circumstances upon the climate, productions, and inhabitants stated. An account of the political divisions follows the description of the physical features, constant reference being made to the general statement of principles in Part First. The arrangement of this part of the book in chapters will enable the teacher to assign to his pupils such length of lessons as he chooses.”

Acknowledgments are due to many Educators, in various parts of the country, for useful suggestions kindly offered; and especially to Mr. P. W. BARTLETT, late Master of the Chapman School, Boston, whose extensive geographical knowledge has contributed largely to the general accuracy of the work.

In its improved form, it is hoped that the COMMON SCHOOL GEOGRAPHY may commend itself to the Educational public, and continue to justify the generous support which has hitherto been extended to it.

PHILADELPHIA, August, 1866.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

PART I.

INTRODUCTORY.

MATHEMATICAL GEOGRAPHY.

Lesson	Page
I.—FORM OF THE EARTH.....	5
II.—MOTIONS OF THE EARTH.....	6
III.—MOTIONS OF THE EARTH—(Continued).....	6
IV.—DIVISION OF THE EARTH BY CIRCLES.....	7
V.—DIVISION OF THE EARTH BY CIRCLES—(Continued).....	7
VI.—ZONES.....	8
VII.—DAYS AND NIGHTS.....	8
VIII.—MAPS AND GLOBES.....	9
IX.—QUESTIONS ON LATITUDE AND LONGITUDE.....	9

PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY.

X.—NATURAL DIVISIONS OF THE LAND.....	10
XI.—SURFACE OF THE LAND.....	10
XII.—NATURAL DIVISIONS OF THE WATER.....	11
XIII.—LAKES AND RIVERS.....	11
XIV.—CLIMATE.....	12
XV.—VEGETATION.....	12
XVI.—ANIMALS.....	13
XVII.—MAN.....	13

POLITICAL GEOGRAPHY.

XVIII.—STATES OF SOCIETY.....	14
XIX.—STATES OF SOCIETY—(Continued).....	14
XX.—GOVERNMENT.....	15
XXI.—RELIGION.....	15
XXII.—BRANCHES OF INDUSTRY.....	16
XXIII.—BRANCHES OF INDUSTRY—(Continued).....	16
XXIV.—BRANCHES OF INDUSTRY—(Continued).....	17
XXV.—BRANCHES OF INDUSTRY—(Continued).....	17

PART II.

DESCRIPTION OF COUNTRIES.

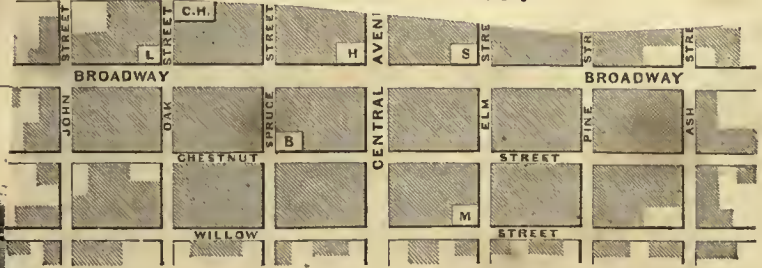
Chapter	Page
I.—THE HEMISPHERES.....	19
II.—THE CONTINENTS.....	20
III.—NORTH AMERICA.....	22
IV.—THE UNITED STATES.....	26
V.—THE EASTERN, OR NEW ENGLAND STATES.....	30
VI.—THE MIDDLE STATES, MARYLAND, AND VIRGINIA.....	34
VII.—THE SOUTHERN STATES, ARKANSAS, AND TENNESSEE....	38
VIII.—THE WESTERN STATES.....	42
IX.—TEXAS, CALIFORNIA, OREGON, AND THE TERRITORIES....	46
X.—COMMERCE OF THE UNITED STATES.....	50
REVIEW QUESTIONS.....	
XI.—THE BRITISH PROVINCES OF NORTH AMERICA.....	53
XII.—MEXICO, CENTRAL AMERICA, AND THE WEST INDIES.....	56
XIII.—SOUTH AMERICA.....	60
XIV.—EUROPE.....	66
XV.—GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND.....	70
XVI.—WESTERN EUROPE.....	72
XVII.—CENTRAL EUROPE.....	76
XVIII.—ASIA.....	80
XIX.—AFRICA.....	86
XX.—OCEANICA.....	90
XXI.—COMMERCE OF THE WORLD.....	94

QUESTIONS FOR GENERAL REVIEW.....	96
A TREATISE ON MAP-DRAWING.....	97
PRONOUNCING AND EXPLANATORY VOCABULARY.....	99
STATISTICAL TABLES.....	105

INDEX TO THE MAPS.

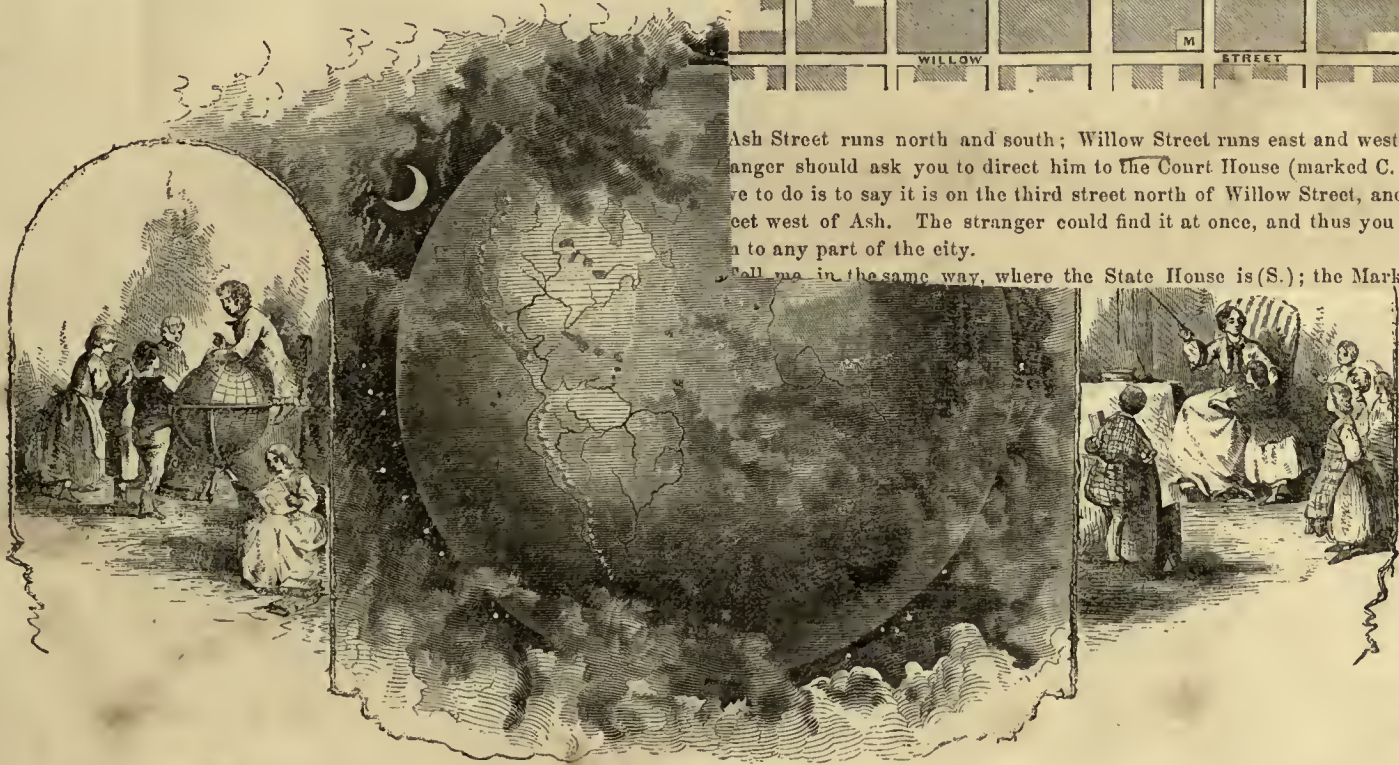
	Page		Page
1. EASTERN AND WESTERN HEMISPHERES.....	9	18. GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND.....	71
2. WESTERN HEMISPHERE.....	18	19. THE SHETLAND ISLANDS.....	71
3. EASTERN HEMISPHERE.....	21	20. THE CHANNEL ISLANDS.....	71
4. NORTH AMERICA.....	24	21. WESTERN EUROPE.....	74
5. THE UNITED STATES.....	28	22. DENMARK, SLESWICK, HOLSTEIN, &C.....	74
6. THE EASTERN, OR NEW ENGLAND STATES.....	32	23. CENTRAL EUROPE.....	78
7. MIDDLE STATES, MARYLAND, AND VIRGINIA.....	36	24. ASIA.....	84
8. SOUTHERN STATES, ARKANSAS, AND TENNESSEE.....	40	25. SYRIA.....	84
9. WESTERN STATES.....	44	26. THE EMPIRE OF JAPAN.....	84
10. TEXAS, CALIFORNIA, OREGON, AND THE TERRITORIES.....	48	27. AFRICA.....	88
11. COMMERCIAL MAP OF THE UNITED STATES.....	51	28. EGYPT.....	88
12. THE BRITISH PROVINCES OF NORTH AMERICA.....	55	29. LIBERIA AND SIERRA LEONE.....	88
13. MEXICO AND CENTRAL AMERICA.....	58	30. MALAYSIA, AUSTRALASIA, AND PART OF POLYNESIA.....	92
14. THE WEST INDIES.....	58	31. THE SANDWICH ISLANDS.....	92
15. SOUTH AMERICA.....	64	32. NEW ZEALAND.....	92
16. ROUTE ACROSS THE ISTHMUS OF PANAMA.....	64	33. COMMERCIAL MAP OF THE WORLD.....	95
17. EUROPE.....	68		

THE COMMON-SCHOOL GEOGRAPHY.



Ash Street runs north and south; Willow Street runs east and west. Now, if a stranger should ask you to direct him to the Court House (marked C. H.), all you have to do is to say it is on the third street north of Willow Street, and on the fifth street west of Ash. The stranger could find it at once, and thus you might direct him to any part of the city.

Tell me in the same way, where the State House is (S.); the Market (M.); the



PART I.

INTRODUCTORY.

Geography is a description of the earth. The term is derived from two Greek words, signifying "the earth," and "to describe." Geography may be divided into three departments:—Mathematical, Physical, and Political Geography.

LESSON I.

MATHEMATICAL GEOGRAPHY.

I. Mathematical Geography treats—*first*, of the form, size, and motions of the earth; *second*, of its division by circles; *third*, of the representation of its surface upon globes, maps, and charts.

II. Form of the Earth.—The earth is nearly round. It is so nearly round that it is called a Globe.

The earth is not perfectly round, but, like an orange, is flattened on two of the opposite sides; not nearly so much, however, in proportion to its size, as an orange. In any representation of the earth, such as an artificial globe, the difference between its real form and that of a globe would be too small to be seen.

III. Mountains and valleys do not affect the form of the earth. The highest mountain in the world is not so large, in proportion to the size of the earth, as a grain of sand upon the surface of an ordinary globe.

IV. The earth does not appear to us like a globe. When we are upon the ocean, or upon an extensive plain, where there are no mountains and valleys, it seems flat, like the top of a round table.

This is because we see so little of it at a time. To an ant, crawling over an artificial globe, the surface probably appears perfectly level; but we see so much of the wooden globe at once, that we know its true shape.

So tall a man, standing in the centre of an extensive plain, sees only about three miles around him, and is therefore in the condition of the little ant upon the wooden globe. If he could see as much of the earth at a time as he can of the wooden globe, it would appear to him to be what it really is, a great globe.

V. Proofs that the Earth is round.—1. The tops of the masts of a ship coming into port are always seen before the hull.—2. It has often been circumnavigated, or sailed around.—3. The shadow of the earth when cast on the moon is always circular.

If the earth were flat, the masts of the ship, which are smaller than the hull, would appear last.

PART I.

INTRODUCTORY.

MATHEMATICAL GEOGRAPHY.

Lesson	Page
I.—FORM OF THE EARTH.....	5
II.—MOTIONS OF THE EARTH.....	6
III.—MOTIONS OF THE EARTH—(Continued).....	6
IV.—DIVISION OF THE EARTH BY CIRCLES.....	7
V.—DIVISION OF THE EARTH BY CIRCLES—(Continued).....	7
VI.—ZONES.....	8
VII.—DAYS AND NIGHTS.....	8
VIII.—MAPS AND GLOBES.....	9
IX.—QUESTIONS ON LATITUDE AND LONGITUDE.....	9

PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY.

ILLUSTRATION OF ONE OF THE PROOFS THAT THE EARTH IS NEARLY ROUND.

The gradual appearance of the ship above the horizon (or line where the sea and sky seem to meet), proves that the surface over which she is sailing is curved,—as in the following representation:



A man, standing on the ground, sees the whole of the first ship, the masts of the second, and the top of the main-mast of the third; the fourth is out of sight. As the curve is found to be nearly the same in all parts of the world, whether sailing north or south, east or west, we conclude that the earth is shaped like a globe.

Questions.—What is Geography?—From what is the term derived?—Into what three departments is Geography divided?—What is Mathematical Geography?—What is the form of the earth?—Is it perfectly round?—Why are not artificial globes flattened at the top and bottom, if such is the shape of our earth?—If you were to scatter a few grains of sand on a wooden globe, would it still appear round?—Why then do not mountains affect the form of the earth?—What distance can a tall man, on a level plain, see around him?—Is the plain on which he stands perfectly level, or slightly curved?—Does it appear to him to be curved?—State one of the proofs that the earth is round.

LESSON II.

MOTIONS OF THE EARTH.

I. THE EARTH has two motions: a daily revolution (or turning around) upon its *axis*, and a yearly course around the sun.

The axis of any thing is that upon which it turns, or may turn. Thus, the axle-tree is the axis of a wheel. Pass a wire through the centre of an orange, from the stem to the opposite point, and then make the orange revolve on the wire: the wire is the axis of the orange.

So the earth revolves upon its axis. Yet the axis of the earth is not a reality, it is only an *imaginary* line, passing through the centre of the earth, between the two opposite flattened sides. The ends of this line are called the *poles* of the earth. One is called the North Pole; the other, the South Pole.

The axis of the earth is inclined to the plane of its orbit at an angle of about $23\frac{1}{2}$ degrees. This leaning of the axis of the earth, and its annual revolution, cause the change of seasons, known as Spring, Summer, Autumn, and Winter.

II. The Daily Motion.—The earth is constantly revolving on its axis from west to east, and this movement is called *the rotation* upon its *axis*. It takes twenty-four hours, or one day, for each revolution.

It seems to us, however, as if the earth were stationary, and as if the sun, moon, and stars were moving around towards the west. This delusion arises from the fact that the motion of the earth is so steady and uniform that we do not perceive it.

III. Some parts of the earth, in its daily revolution, move at the rate of more than a thousand miles an hour.

At the Poles there is little or no motion; but, midway between the Poles, the velocity is so great that if we could be lifted up far above the earth, and suspended there, the mountains, seas, and islands below, would be rushing by with such amazing rapidity, that we should not be able to distinguish one object from another. But as we are now moving with them at the same rate, we do not perceive the motion.

IV. The revolution of the earth upon its axis produces day and night—every place upon its surface being, alternately, in sunlight and in shade.

Questions.—How many motions has the earth?—What is an axis?—Has the earth a real axis, like a wheel?—What are the Poles?—Are they real or imaginary points?—How is the axis of the earth inclined?—What does this inclination cause?—What is the daily motion of the earth?—How many hours does it take for the earth to revolve upon its own axis?—Does it ever cease to revolve?—Why does it seem to us that the earth is stationary, and that the sun moves around it towards the west?—How many miles an hour do some parts of the earth move, revolving upon its axis?—What parts are they?—How are day and night produced?

LESSON III.

MOTIONS OF THE EARTH.—Continued.

I. THE daily revolution of the earth determines the points East, West, North, and South.

The earth is constantly turning round from west to east, towards the sun, producing the effect of sunrise. The direction from which the sun appears to rise is called East; where it sets, West.

If you stand with your right arm extended towards the East, the West will be on your left hand, the North will be before you, and the South behind you.

II. These directions are called the *Points of the Compass*.



The compass is an instrument which has a magnetic needle attached to it. This always points to the north, or nearly to the north. The compass is used by surveyors, and by mariners to tell the direction in which their vessels are sailing. Beside the four principal points, there are four other important ones: North-east, North-west, South-east, and South-west. N. stands for North, N. E. for North-east, N. W. for North-west, S. E. for South-east, and S. W. for South-west.

III. Motion of the Earth around the Sun.—The earth moves around the sun in a nearly circular path, called its *orbit*, in $365\frac{1}{4}$ days, or one year. This is called the annual, or yearly motion.

Over this course, a length of upwards of 567 millions of miles, the earth moves with a velocity of more than a thousand miles in a minute.

IV. The circumference of the earth is the distance around it. The diameter is the distance in a straight line through its centre, between any two opposite points on the surface.

V. The circumference and diameter vary in length, in different parts of the globe.

Since the earth is flattened at the Poles, and expanded in the middle, it is plain that its circumference and diameter are greater, midway between the Poles, than anywhere else.

VI. The greatest circumference of the earth is about 25,000 miles, and the greatest diameter about 8000 miles. The diameter of the earth, from Pole to Pole, is 26 miles less than midway between the Poles.

Questions. — How is sunrise caused? — Does the sun *really* rise? — What is that point called at which the sun appears to rise? — What are the other principal points of the compass? — How long does it take the earth to make its annual revolution around the sun? — Does it stop after having completed its yearly course? — What is the form of the earth's orbit? — How fast does the earth move around the sun? — Which is the more rapid; the motion of the earth around the sun, or its revolution upon its own axis? — What do you understand by the circumference of the earth? — By its diameter? — Where is the circumference greatest? — How long is the greatest diameter? — The shortest?

LESSON IV.

DIVISION OF THE EARTH BY CIRCLES.

I. THE surface of the globe is divided by imaginary circles. They are the Equator, the Parallels of Latitude, the Meridians of Longitude, and the Tropical and Polar Circles.

II. A Circle is a curved line every point of which is equally distant from the centre.

Every circle is divided into 360 equal parts, called degrees.

III. A Great Circle is one that divides the globe into two *equal* parts, each of which is called a Hemisphere, — that is, half a sphere or globe.

Each degree of a great circle is equal to 60 geographical miles, or about 69½ English miles.

IV. A Small Circle divides the earth into two *unequal* parts.

The length of a degree of a small circle varies with the size of the circle.

V. The Equator is a great circle drawn round the globe half-way between the Poles.

VI. Parallels of Latitude are small circles drawn round the globe parallel to the Equator.

The parallels are represented on maps by lines running across them from east to west.

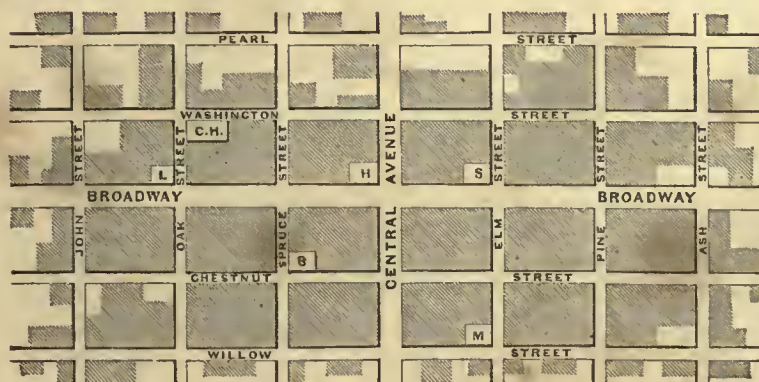
VII. The Horizon is the boundary-line of our circle of vision, where the earth and sky seem to meet.

VIII. The Zenith is the point in the heavens directly overhead.

IX. Latitude is distance from the Equator, either north or south.

It is measured on great circles; and hence the length of a degree of latitude is nearly the same in all parts of the earth. Ninety of these degrees are north, and ninety south, of the Equator. All places north of the Equator are said to be in North Latitude; all south of it, in South Latitude. These degrees are numbered on the sides of maps. The numbers increase from the Equator towards the Poles, from 0 to 90°. If the numbers increase from the bottom towards the top of the map, the section represented is in North Latitude; if from the top towards the bottom, the section is in South Latitude.

Suppose a city, with streets crossing each other at right angles, like the lines in the annexed representation: —



Ash Street runs north and south; Willow Street runs east and west. Now, if a stranger should ask you to direct him to the Court House (marked C. II.), all you have to do is to say it is on the third street north of Willow Street, and on the fifth street west of Ash. The stranger could find it at once, and thus you might direct him to any part of the city.

Tell me, in the same way, where the State House is (S.); the Market (M.); the Public Library (L.); the City Hall (H.); the Savings Bank (B.). In what direction is the State House from the Market? The Market from the Library? The City Hall from the State House? The Savings Bank from the City Hall? The Market from the State House?

Thus, if you could draw a set of lines on the earth's surface, running east and west, and another set running north and south, you could fix the position of places without any difficulty, and ascertain their direction from each other. This is precisely what is done by the lines of latitude and longitude; although they are not *real*, but imaginary lines.

Questions. — Name the circles which divide the surface of the globe. — What is a Circle? — How is every Circle divided? — What is a Great Circle? — What is a Hemisphere? — How long is a degree of a great circle? — What is a Small Circle? — What is the Equator? — Define Parallels of Latitude. — What is the Horizon? — What is the Zenith? — What is Latitude? — On what circles is it measured? — How many degrees of North Latitude are there? — How many of South? — If a place is said to be in ten degrees of North Latitude, on which side of the Equator is it? — If you are told that a place is in the thirty-third degree of South Latitude, how far, and in what direction, is it from the Equator?

LESSON V.

DIVISION OF THE EARTH BY CIRCLES.

I. Meridians of Longitude are imaginary lines encircling the earth from north to south, and passing through both Poles. The meridian of any place is a line passing through that place from the North to the South Pole.

The meridians are represented on maps by lines running across them from north to south.

II. Longitude is distance from any given meridian, east or west.

It is measured on the Equator, or on parallels. The length of a degree on the Equator is nearly the same as that of a degree of latitude. On the 20th parallel it is 65 miles; on the 40th parallel it is 53 miles; on the 60th parallel it is 32½ miles; and on the 80th parallel it is 12 miles.

III. The meridian from which longitude is reckoned is called the First Meridian.

The Equator is the line universally agreed upon from which to reckon latitude; but no such line has been agreed upon by different countries from which to

compute longitude. The English reckon from the meridian of Greenwich, near London; the French, from that of Paris. In the United States we commonly adopt the meridian of Greenwich; though longitude is often computed from that of Washington.

The meridian which passes through Greenwich is marked with a cipher (0). There are 180 degrees of East, and 180 degrees of West Longitude. All places east of the meridian of Greenwich are in East Longitude; all places west of it, in West Longitude.

These degrees are numbered on the top and bottom of maps, or upon the Equator. If the numbers increase from the left towards the right of the map, the section represented is in East Longitude; if from the right towards the left, it is in West Longitude. On globes and maps, the meridians and parallels are generally either curved or slanting. In finding the direction, therefore, of one place from another, you must follow the course of the line of longitude or latitude.

IV. **Parallels of Latitude and Meridians of Longitude.**—These circles enable us to ascertain the position of places, and their distance and direction from each other.

V. Those who live on the same meridian have their noon or midnight at the same moment. Those who live on the same parallel have an equal length of day and night.

Antipodes are those who live on exactly opposite sides of the globe.

Questions.—What are meridians of longitude?—What is the meridian of a place?—How are meridians marked on maps?—What is longitude?—On what is it measured?—How does the length of degrees of longitude vary?—What do you mean by first meridian?—Do all nations reckon longitude from the same meridian?—What meridian is generally adopted in the United States?—How can you tell whether a place is in East or West Longitude?

How is the meridian of Greenwich marked on the map?—Suppose you should follow that meridian from the Equator to the South Pole: in what direction would you go?—In following the same meridian to the North Pole, in what direction would you go?—Of what use are parallels and meridians?—What places have noon at the same time?—What places have an equal length of day and night?—Define antipodes.—

LESSON VI. ZONES.

I. THE hottest part of the earth is in the vicinity of the Equator, for the sun is more nearly overhead there, throughout the entire year, than in any other part of the globe. Going from the Equator to the Poles, the climate constantly grows colder. On account of these differences in climate, the surface of the earth is divided into five distinct *zones* or *belts*.

The Torrid Zone extends about $23\frac{1}{2}$ degrees of latitude on each side of the Equator. The Frigid Zones extend around each Pole for nearly $23\frac{1}{2}$ degrees from it: one is the North Frigid—the other the South Frigid Zone. The Temperate Zones are between the Torrid and Frigid Zones: one is the North Temperate—the other, the South Temperate Zone. The Temperate Zones are each a little more than 43 degrees wide.

II. The Tropical Circles are those parallels of latitude which mark the boundaries of the Torrid Zone. The northern is the Tropic of Cancer: the southern, the Tropic of Capricorn. The countries between these circles are called tropical countries. The Polar Circles are those parallels of latitude which mark the boundaries of the Frigid Zones. The northern is the Arctic: the southern the Antarctic Circle.

III. **The Seasons.**—During the earth's annual course around the sun, the seasons change, in the Temperate Zones, from winter to

spring, from spring to summer, from summer to autumn, and from autumn to winter. The seasons in the Northern Hemisphere occur at opposite periods to those in the Southern.

IV. The Frigid Zones have but two seasons—a long, cold winter, and a short summer.

Winter and summer succeed each other so rapidly that spring and autumn are hardly perceptible. While it is winter in the North Frigid, it is summer in the South Frigid Zone.

V. The Torrid Zone has two seasons—the wet, and the dry.

It has no winter and summer, properly speaking. The dry season, in the northern half of the Torrid Zone, continues from October to April. During this time it is the wet season in the southern half. The wet season of the northern part continues from April to October; during this period it is the dry season in the southern portion.

VI. The Temperate Zones have four seasons—Spring, Summer, Autumn, and Winter.

While it is spring in the North Temperate, it is autumn in the South Temperate Zone; and when it is summer in the North Temperate, it is winter in the South Temperate Zone.

Questions.—Where do we find the hottest part of the earth?—Why is the heat so great in that vicinity?—What change is observed in passing from the Equator to the Poles?—How many zones are there?—How many seasons have the Frigid Zones?—How many the Temperate?—The Torrid?—When it is summer in the North Frigid Zone, what season is it in the South Frigid?—When it is winter in the North Temperate Zone, what season is it in the South Temperate?—When it is the dry season in the southern half of the Torrid Zone, what season is it in the northern half?

In what months is the dry season in the northern half of the Torrid Zone?—The wet season?—What are the months of the wet season in the northern half?—In the southern?—What season is it now in the North Temperate Zone?—In the South Temperate?

LESSON VII. DAYS AND NIGHTS.

I. THE length of the days and nights is not the same in all parts of the world.

II. In the Torrid Zone the days and nights are of nearly equal length throughout the year—that is, about twelve hours each.

At the Equator they are each twelve hours long throughout the year. Leaving the Equator, the length of the days and of the nights becomes unequal; and this inequality increases as we advance towards the Poles.

III. In the Temperate Zones they are of very unequal length—the days in summer being more, and the nights less, than twelve hours; while in winter the days are shorter, and the nights longer, than twelve hours.

This inequality increases towards the Polar Circles, which are the limits of the Temperate Zones. At these circles the longest day is twenty-four hours—that is, the sun does not set on that day.

IV. In the Frigid Zones, the days and nights are still more unequal in length than in the Temperate.

At the Polar Circles the longest day is twenty-four hours, and its length increases towards the Poles—the sun frequently being above or below the horizon for days and weeks together. At the Poles, the days and nights are each six months long.

Questions.—Are the days or nights, at the Equator, ever more than twelve hours long?—Are they more than twelve hours long in any part of the world?—When are the days longest in the Temperate Zones: in summer, or in winter?—When are the nights longest?—At what part of the Temperate Zones are the summer days longest: near the Tropics, or the Polar Circles?—How long is the longest day at the Polar Circles?—Does the length of the days, in summer, increase or diminish from the Polar Circles to the Poles?—How long is the day at the Poles?—The night?—Is the Day, at the Poles, summer or winter?



LESSON VIII.

MAPS, GLOBES, AND CHARTS.

I. A MAP is a representation of the whole or a part of the earth's surface on a plane.

Maps exhibit the lines of latitude and longitude; the Equator; the tropical and polar circles; and the position of continents, islands, oceans, mountains, rivers, countries, and towns.

Maps enable us to see at once the form of the various bodies of land and water, and their direction from each other. They assist us in comparing the sizes of different countries, and in estimating the distance from one place to another.

II. North is towards the top of the map; South is towards the bottom; East is towards the right hand; and West is towards the left hand.

III. The best representation of the whole earth is by an artificial globe, which is a ball, on which are drawn the various objects, as on a map. On a globe we see only one hemisphere at a time.

IV. If we should cut a globe into halves, and place them side by side, with the curved sides toward us, we should have nearly the same view of the earth's surface as that presented by a map of the hemispheres—such as the one above.

V. The scale of a map is useful in computing the distances between different places.

VI. A chart differs from a map in always having the meridians and parallels drawn as straight lines.

For this reason they are chiefly used by navigators.

Questions.—What is a map?—What do maps exhibit?—What is the use of maps?—Towards what part of the map is North?—South?—East?—West?—What is the best representation of the whole earth?—What kind of a view of the earth is presented by a map of the hemispheres?—Of what use is the scale of a map?—Suppose on a map, the scale of which is 50 miles to the inch, two places are three inches apart: what distance are they from each other?—What is a Chart?

LESSON IX.

QUESTIONS ON LATITUDE AND LONGITUDE.

[Note.—These questions may be answered from the map at the top of the page.]

Is North America in North or South Latitude?—Why?—Europe?—Why?—Australia?—Why?—In what latitude is the greater part of South America?—Is any part of Asia in South Latitude?—Is any part of Africa in North Latitude?—In South Latitude?—Is any part of South America in North Latitude?

In what longitude (from the meridian of Greenwich) is South America?—Australia?—Asia?—North America?—Is any part of Africa in West Longitude?—In what longitude is the greater part of Europe?—Why?

On a certain day, the ship "Flying Cloud" was in 20° of North Latitude: can you tell me whether she was in the Atlantic, or in the Pacific Ocean?—Suppose I also say that she was in 140° of West Longitude: can you now tell me in what ocean she was?—In what direction was she from North America?—From South America?—How many degrees from the Equator?—From the South Pole?—The North Pole?

The ship "Storm King" was lost in a hurricane in 20° South Latitude, and 80° East Longitude: in what ocean was this vessel wrecked?—In what direction from Africa was this ship?—From Asia?—From Australia?—How far was it from the Equator?—From the South Pole?

Suppose two ships are at the Equator—one in 180°, the other in 40°, of West Longitude: how many degrees apart are they?—How many miles?—Suppose they each sail directly north to 60° of North Latitude: are they any nearer to each other than before?—How far north would they have to go, in order to meet?

QUESTIONS ON ZONES.

How many degrees on each side of the Equator does the Torrid Zone extend?—How many degrees wide, then, is the Torrid Zone?—How many degrees wide are the Frigid Zones?—The Temperate Zones?—How many miles wide is each of these zones, reckoning 70 miles to a degree?—How many degrees from the Equator are the Tropical Circles?

How many degrees from the Poles are the Polar Circles?—Between what circles is the Torrid Zone included?—The North Temperate?—The South Temperate?—At what latitude would a ship enter the North Temperate Zone, in sailing from the Equator?

What is the meaning of Torrid?—Frigid?—Arctic?—Antarctic?—Australia? [Questions of this kind, which will be found in many of the succeeding lessons, are answered in the Pronouncing Vocabulary at the end of the book.]

LESSON X.

PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY.

I. Physical Geography treats of the land and water into which the earth's surface is divided; of the atmosphere which surrounds the earth; and of the animals and plants which live upon it.

II. The surface of the earth consists of land and water,—about one-fourth being land, and three-fourths water.

III. The land surface of the earth is divided into continents and islands.

Various parts of these divisions receive different names, according to their size, shape, or some other circumstance. The principal of them are peninsulas, capes, and isthmuses.

Such divisions as continents, islands, and peninsulas are called *natural*, to distinguish them from divisions formed by man, such as States and Countries.

IV. A Continent is a great body of land, containing many countries.

There are two continents—the Eastern and the Western. Australia is sometimes considered a continent, but in this book it is classed among islands. A tract of uninhabited land, south of Australia, first discovered in 1840, is known as the Antarctic Continent. It is not however, strictly speaking, a continent.

V. An Island is a body of land entirely surrounded by water.

A number of islands, closely clustered together, form an *Archipelago*. This term is also applied to a sea interspersed with islands. Islands differ from continents only in size—both being surrounded by water.

VI. A Peninsula is a body of land nearly surrounded by water. Africa and South America are the largest peninsulas.

VII. A Cape is a point of land extending into the water.

VIII. An Isthmus is a narrow neck of land which connects two larger bodies of land. The Isthmus of Panama connects North and South America.

IX. A Coast or Shore is the land bordering on the water.

Questions.—What is Physical Geography?—When you are learning about islands are you studying Mathematical or Physical Geography?—In what division of geography do you learn the movements of the earth?—Of what does the surface of the earth consist?—How much greater portion of it is water than land?—What is the difference between a continent and an island?—Why are such divisions as continents and islands called natural divisions?

Should we call Australia a continent, if it were three or four times as large as it really is?—What is an island?—An archipelago?—What is a peninsula?—A cape?—An isthmus?—A coast?—What do you mean by the coast of North America?—Spell the following words: Physical, Archipelago, Peninsula, Isthmus, Darien.—What is the meaning of Peninsula?—Cape?—Isthmus?

LESSON XI.

SURFACE OF THE LAND.

I. THE land surface of the earth is diversified by plains, mountains, hills, table-lands, and valleys.

II. A Plain is a tract of land nearly level.

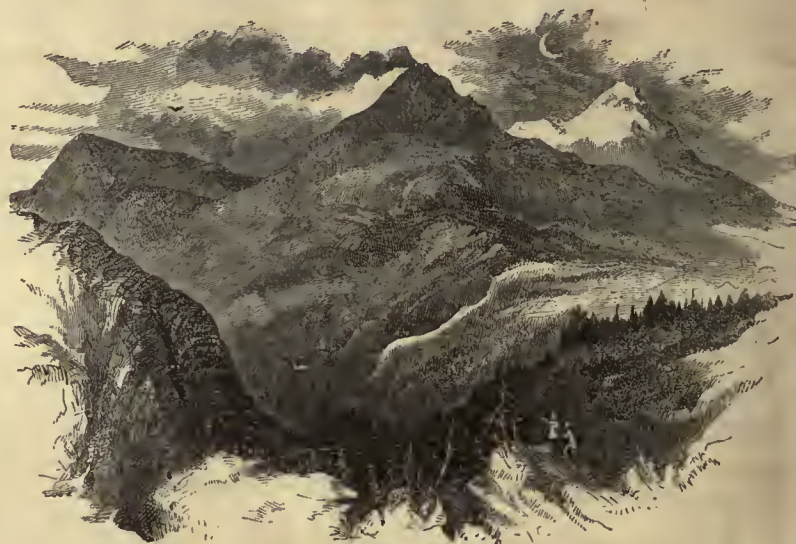
Some plains appear perfectly flat, while others have a rolling surface, like many of our western prairies.

III. A Mountain is a tract of land which rises considerably above the general surface.

IV. Elevations of less than two thousand feet, are usually called *hills*.

The *base* of a mountain, or hill, is that upon which it rests. We reckon the height of mountains not from the base, but from the level of the ocean; which is the same in all parts of the world, and therefore forms a fixed standard for comparing the heights of mountains.

Mountains are seldom found single, but are generally in groups or chains. A *mountain-chain* is an irregular mass of elevated land, which is sometimes several thousand miles long, and more than a hundred wide. A chain of mountains is also called a *ridge*, or *range*. A number of chains, extending in the same general direction, constitute what is called a *mountain-system*.



MOUNTAIN SCENERY.

Mountains do not often rise abruptly from the level surface of a plain; the ground, for some distance around the base, is usually broken into hills.

V. A Volcano is a mountain which casts out fire, smoke, melted lava, or other substances, from its interior.

It is supposed that the interior of the earth is a mass of fire, to which the volcanoes serve as chimneys. There are more than four hundred volcanoes upon the globe.

VI. A Table-land, or Plateau, is an elevated plain, rising somewhat abruptly from the surrounding surface. Plateaus are generally crossed by mountain-chains.

VII. A Valley is a tract of country situated between mountains or hills.

A valley may be a narrow space between the sides of mountains, or it may be a broad and level plain, thousands of miles in extent.

VIII. A Desert is a tract of land which is nearly or wholly barren.

A fertile spot in the midst of a desert is called an *Oasis*. Deserts are generally composed of sand or gravel. They sometimes contain tracts of clay and of salt marsh, and occasionally produce a scanty growth of coarse grass. They may be either table-lands or plains.

Questions.—How is the land surface of the earth diversified?—What is a plain?—Is there a plain in your neighborhood?—What is the difference between a mountain and a hill?—What is the base of a mountain?—Why is the height of mountains reckoned from the level of the sea?—Are mountains commonly found single?—Describe the formation of a mountain-chain.—Do mountains rise abruptly from a level surface?—What is a volcano?—What is the use of volcanoes?—What is the difference between a plateau and a plain?—By what are plateaus generally crossed?—What is a valley?—Can a valley be a plain?—Are deserts always perfectly barren?—Of what are they composed?—Are they always low plains?—What is an Oasis?—Spell Plateau; Volcano.

LESSON XII.

WATER.

I. THE waters of the earth consist of the ocean and its various divisions; and of lakes and rivers.

II. The Ocean, or Sea, is that great body of salt water which covers nearly three-fourths of the surface of the earth.

The Ocean is divided into five principal parts, which are also called oceans,—the Pacific, Atlantic, Indian, Arctic, and Antarctic.

III. Parts of the ocean near the land, or extending into it, are sometimes called seas, gulfs, bays, sounds, harbors, straits, or channels.

IV. A Sea, Gulf, Bay, or Bight is a body of water nearly surrounded by land; as the Mediterranean Sea, the Gulf of Mexico, Hudson Bay, the Bight of Benin.

In a few cases, however, they are more open to the ocean; as the Arabian Sea, the Bay of Bengal, and the Bay of Biscay. There is but little difference between a sea, a gulf, and a bay; though most bays are smaller than seas or gulfs.

V. A Sound is a passage of water so shallow that its depth may be easily measured.

VI. A Harbor is a small inlet, so sheltered from the open sea as to afford safety to vessels.

A harbor, in order to be good, must be nearly surrounded by land; it should have deep water, and be easy of entrance. Where the coast is low and sandy, the harbors are not very good, for the water is shallow, and the entrance obstructed by sand-bars. A sand-bar is a bank of sand, rising to within a few feet of the surface. If a vessel draws so many feet of water (that is, sinks so many feet deep in floating) as to strike against the sand-bar, she cannot enter the harbor.

VII. A Strait or Channel is a narrow passage connecting two large bodies of water.

Questions.—Of what do the waters of the earth consist?—What is the ocean?—What are its principal divisions?—What are those parts of the ocean called which are near the land?—What is a sea, gulf, or bay?—Is there much difference between them?—What is a sound?—A harbor?—Can a harbor be good which has very shallow water?—What danger would there be in having sunken rocks near the entrance?—What disadvantage in having a sand-bar at the entrance?

If a vessel draws ten feet of water, can she cross a sand-bar which is within eight feet of the surface?—What do you mean by saying that a vessel draws ten feet of water?—Suppose a harbor is not well protected by the land, what danger would there be to vessels lying within it?—What is a strait?

LESSON XIII.

LAKES AND RIVERS.

I. A Lake is a body of water surrounded by land.

The greater number of lakes have rivers flowing into them, and from them. Lakes which have no outlet are generally salt; these are often called seas.

II. A River is a stream of fresh water which flows into the sea, or into some other body of water.

A River System is a collection of rivers flowing into the same ocean, sea, bay, gulf, or other large river.

III. The Source of a river is the place where it rises. Its Mouth is where it empties.

Rivers are usually formed of small streams flowing from springs among the mountains and hills. Some, however, flow directly from lakes; while others have their source from the melting of great masses of ice called *Glaciers*, which cover the summits of many mountains.

Most great rivers flow into the sea by several mouths. The space included between the two outside streams is called a *Delta*, because it is shaped somewhat like a letter of the Greek alphabet, Δ , called *delta*. A very wide mouth, like that of the Amazon, is called an *Estuary*, *Firth*, *Frith*, or *Fiord*.



IV. Rivers generally rise among mountains or hills. Their course depends upon the slope of the land.

The land generally slopes from the interior towards the sea. Where the mountains are near the coast, the slope towards the sea is steep and abrupt; the rivers on that side, therefore, are short and rapid. If the mountains are far from the sea, the slope is gradual; the rivers then are long, and have a gentle current.

V. The Bed of a river is the channel within which its waters are confined, and is bordered by its *Banks*.

The *right* and *left* banks are these on the right and left sides in going *down* the stream—that is, from the source to the mouth. The *Current* of a river is the onward flow of its waters towards the mouth.

When the bed slopes considerably, the river flows with great speed and violence, forming a *Rapid*. If the descent is steep and sudden, a *Water-fall* is formed. A small water-fall is a *Cascade*; a great one is a *Cataract*. Where the river flows through a level country, there are neither rapids nor water-falls.

VI. The *Basin*, or *Valley*, of a river, is the extent of country which is drained by the river with all its tributaries.

If you draw a line on the map, passing through the source of a river, and of every river and stream which flows into it, the line will form the boundary of its *Basin*.

VII. A *Water-shed* is the elevated land which separates two rivers, or series of rivers; one series flowing down one slope, and the other flowing down another slope in a different direction.

VIII. Rivers generally afford an easy means of reaching the interior of a country.

When men begin to settle a new country, they generally select a place near a river; because they can more readily communicate with other settlements by way of the river, than by travelling on land, where there are at first no roads. The soil, too, is commonly more fertile. In this way, villages, towns, and cities spring up on the banks of navigable rivers. Most of the great cities in the world are situated upon rivers.

A navigable river is one on which vessels can navigate, or sail. Rapids and falls obstruct the navigation of a river, though a channel, or canal, is sometimes made around them.

Questions.—What is a lake?—Do rivers ever flow into lakes?—Do they ever flow from them?—What lakes are generally salt?—What is a river?—What is the source of a river?—What is its mouth?—What is the delta of a river?—What is an estuary?—Where do rivers generally rise?—Upon what does their course depend?

What is the bed of a river?—In sailing towards the mouth, which bank is on your right hand?—In sailing up a river, which bank is on your left hand?—What produces a rapid?—A cataract?—Would there be any difficulty in sailing up a rapid?—Why?—Which is most likely to have rapids and falls: a level or a hilly country?—What is a river-basin?—How can you mark out the limits of a river-basin?—What is a water-shed?—Why do men, in settling a new country, select a place near a river?—Where are most of the great cities of the world situated?—What is a navigable river?



THE FRIGID ZONES.

THE TEMPERATE ZONES.

THE TORRID ZONE.

LESSON XIV.

CLIMATE.

I. By the Climate of a country, we mean its degree of heat or cold, moisture or dryness, healthfulness or unhealthfulness. The Temperature of a place (that is, the degree of heat or cold) depends principally upon its distance from the Equator.

There are numerous exceptions, however, to this general law; some places, more remote from the Equator, being warmer than others which are nearer to it.

II. The Temperature of a place also depends upon its elevation above the level of the sea, and its vicinity to the ocean.

The higher you ascend above the general surface, the colder the air becomes. The effects of this are strikingly shown in tropical countries, where in ascending a mountain only three or four miles high, you pass through as many changes of climate as in travelling from the Equator to the Poles. Even at the Equator, the summits of lofty mountains are perpetually covered with snow.

The more equal temperature of the ocean generally gives to places on or near the coast, cooler summers and warmer winters than others in the same latitude in the interior of a country.

III. In the Torrid Zone the heat is very great throughout the year, for the wet and dry seasons have nearly the same temperature.

Snow and ice are unknown, except among the mountains. In the dry season, little or no rain falls, and the sky is usually cloudless. In the wet season, copious showers fall nearly every day, and violent thunder-storms are frequent.

IV. The Temperate Zones are characterized by a cold winter and a hot summer; though neither the heat nor cold is so excessive as in other zones.

For several degrees from the Tropics, the climate is like that of the Torrid Zone, and there is no strong contrast between the temperature of the summer and the winter. Advancing towards the Polar Circles, the winters become very cold, and the summers, though short, are yet very hot.

V. In the Frigid Zones, the cold is very severe. Near the Poles, the ground is perpetually covered with snow and ice, which are only partially thawed in summer.

Great fields of ice, many miles in extent, float about in the Polar Seas; and huge blocks of fresh-water ice, called *ice-bergs* (ice-mountains), render the navigation extremely perilous.

Questions.—What is meant by climate?—What is temperature?—Upon what does the temperature of a place chiefly depend?—What else influences the climate of a place?—If you were to go up in a balloon, would you find the air growing colder, or warmer?—What is the climate of the Torrid Zone?—Where would you find snow in this zone?—What is the climate of the Temperate Zones?—Is it everywhere the same?—What parts are like the Torrid Zone?—Where are the winters coldest in this zone: near the Polar or Tropical Circles?—What is the climate of the Frigid Zone?

LESSON XV.

VEGETATION.

I. THE vegetable productions of the earth vary with the climate.

The term *vegetation*, or *vegetable productions*, includes trees, flowers, fruits, grains, grasses, and all other plants.

II. Vegetation is most luxuriant in tropical countries. The excessive moisture and intense heat produce trees of enormous size, flowers of the most brilliant colors, and climbing-plants in great number and variety.

The most important tropical productions are yams, bananas, plantains, bread-fruit, cassava (from which tapioca is made), sago, cocoa-nuts, and the cacao or cocoa tree (from the seeds of the fruit of which chocolate and cocoa are prepared). Many delicious fruits are also produced in the Torrid Zone—such as pine-apples, oranges, lemons, and citrons.

Spices—such as pepper, cinnamon, cloves, and nutmegs—come from tropical countries; and many kinds of beautiful wood, as mahogany and rosewood, grow there in great abundance. The vegetation of the Torrid Zone continues green

throughout the year; while, with some exceptions, the plants of other regions cast their leaves in winter.

III. On leaving the Torrid Zone, tropical plants gradually disappear. Instead of the palm and banana trees, we find the beech, oak, maple, and pine. The Temperate Zones are the regions of the grape-vine, the potato, and of various grains—such as wheat, Indian corn, barley, oats, and rye. Hemp and flax thrive best in these zones.

Many of the most important vegetable productions grow both in the Torrid and in the warmer parts of the Temperate Zones. Among these are rice, cotton, coffee, tobacco, and the sugar-cane. Tea is principally produced in the Temperate Zone.

IV. In the Frigid Zones, trees dwindle into mere shrubs; and in the regions of perpetual snow, no vegetation exists, except a few minute plants that grow upon the surface of the snow.

V. In ascending from the base of mountains and table-lands, the same changes in the character of vegetation are found, as in going towards the Poles; so that a tropical mountain, of great elevation, possesses the climate and many of the productions of every zone.

Questions.—What does the term vegetation include?—Where is it most luxuriant?—What trees grow in the Temperate Zones?—What kinds of grain?—What is the vegetation of the Frigid Zones?—In which zone do yams, bananas, and plantains grow?—Wheat, rye, oats, and barley?—Name some of the fruits of the Torrid Zone.—What fruits are raised in your vicinity?—What spices grow in the Torrid Zone?—From what plant is tapioca made?—Sugar?—From what plant are chocolate and cocoa made?—Where does sago come from?—In what zones are cotton, rice, and tobacco raised?

LESSON XVI.

ANIMALS.

I. THE character of the animals which inhabit the earth varies with the climate and vegetation.

II. In the Torrid Zone we find the largest, strongest, and most ferocious land animals. A great variety of birds, and vast numbers of dangerous reptiles and troublesome insects, are also found in this zone. The birds, fishes, insects, serpents, and many of the wild beasts, are adorned with the most brilliant and beautiful colors.

Among the most remarkable animals living within or near the Tropics, are the elephant, rhinoceros, hippopotamus, giraffe, camel, lion, tiger, jackal, leopard, and hyena. These animals, however, are not found in the Western Continent. The monkey is confined almost entirely to tropical regions. The boa constrictor and crocodile are among the most formidable reptiles.

III. In the Temperate regions we find the buffalo, bear, deer, wolf, fox, and wild-cat. Reptiles and insects become fewer, smaller, and less troublesome. The birds have not so gorgeous a plumage, but they are more melodious.

IV. In the Polar regions, the animals have a less brilliant color. There are no reptiles, and but few insects.

The variety of animals is not so great in the Arctic regions as elsewhere, but the number especially of birds and fishes is immense. The principal land animals are reindeer, bears, wolves, foxes, sables, and ermine. Whales, seals, narwhals, walrus, and vast shoals of fishes, are found in the Polar Seas. Great flocks of ducks, geese, and other birds, hover in countless numbers over the islands and along the shores of these cold regions.

V. In ascending from the base of tropical mountains, we find the same changes of animal life that are observed in passing from the Equator to the Poles.

VI. Most animals can exist only in the climate for which they

are by nature adapted. The reindeer and polar bear cannot endure the warmth of the Temperate and Torrid Zones; nor could the lion and tiger long survive the rigors of an Arctic winter.

On this account, a lofty chain of mountains forms an impassable barrier for the animals living on opposite sides; for in crossing the mountains, they would have to enter a different climate from that in which they are formed to live.

Many of the most useful domestic animals, however, such as the ox, horse, sheep, goat, hog, and dog, are found in almost every part of the world which is inhabited by man.

Questions.—Where do we find the largest and fiercest animals?—The greatest number of serpents and insects?—Mention the most remarkable animals of the Torrid Zone.—Mention all the tropical animals that you have seen.—Which of the tropical animals are not found in the Western Continent?—What are the principal animals of the Temperate Zones?—Name the principal animals of the Frigid Zones.—Can the animals of one zone generally live in another?—Why does a chain of high mountains usually form a barrier to animals on each side?—What useful animals can live in almost any part of the world?

LESSON XVII.

MAN.

I. THE Earth was made for Man; hence, he is found in every country, and in every climate.

Men can adapt the warmth or lightness of their clothing to the climate in which they live. They can also derive nourishment from various kinds of food. If it were not so, they could not occupy, and have dominion over, the whole earth.

In the Frigid Zone, where there is little or no vegetable food, men subsist almost wholly on animals. In the Torrid Zone, they live almost entirely on vegetable food, which is best suited to health in a hot climate. In the Temperate Zones, where animal and vegetable food are both abundant, men partake of both.

II. The most intelligent and highly civilized nations live in the Temperate Zones. The inhabitants of the Torrid Zone are languid and indolent from the excessive heat; while in the barren regions near the Poles, men can only procure the mere necessaries of life.

III. Mankind is divided into five varieties, or races, differing from each other by certain characteristic features.

1. The **Caucasian**, or **White race**.—Most of the nations of Europe and America belong to this race. The Caucasian race is superior to all others in intelligence, energy, and courage.

2. The **Mongolian**, or **Yellow race**, is found chiefly in Asia. The Chinese and Japanese belong to the Mongolian race.

3. The **Ethiopian**, or **Black race**, includes all the natives of Africa, except those of the northern part; the natives of Australia, and some of the neighboring islands, and the negroes of America.

4. The **Malay**, or **Brown race**, inhabit most of the islands of the Pacific Ocean, the Peninsula of Malacca (in Asia), and many of the adjacent islands.

5. The **American**, or **Red race**, includes all the Indians of the Western Continent, except the Esquimaux, in the extreme north, who belong to the Mongolian race.

Questions.—Are men confined to any one country or climate?—Why are men able to accommodate themselves to various degrees of heat and cold?—Are they confined to any one kind of food?—If they were, what would be the effect?—Upon what kind of food do men live in the Frigid Zones?—Upon what do men live in the Torrid Zone?—In the Temperate Zones?—In what zones do the most intelligent nations live?

Into how many races is mankind divided?—Do they all look alike?—Which is the most intelligent race?—Which are the most important branches of this race?—Where is the Mongolian race chiefly found?—The Ethiopian?—The Malay?—The American?—To what race do the Chinese and Japanese belong?—The American Indians?—The Esquimaux?—Most of the Africans?—The Australians?—The natives of the islands of the Pacific?—The natives of Malacca?—Most of the European nations?

LESSON XVIII.

POLITICAL GEOGRAPHY.

I. **POLITICAL GEOGRAPHY** treats of the division of the world into various countries or States; and of the state of society, government, religion, and occupation of the inhabitants.

II. **States of Society.**—The various nations and tribes of men differ greatly in regard to knowledge and manner of living. For this reason they are sometimes divided into four classes—the savage, barbarous, half-civilized, and civilized.

III. **Savages** are the lowest and most degraded class. They do not cultivate the soil, but live on roots and wild fruit, or by hunting and fishing. Some tribes are ignorant of the use of fire, and eat their food raw. They have scarcely any regular laws, and no large towns or cities.

The American Indians, many of the negro tribes of Africa, and all the native tribes of Australia, are savages.



IV. In the barbarous state, men are somewhat more advanced than in the savage. They keep many horses, cattle, and other animals, with which they wander about from place to place; wherever they can find pasturage. They generally live in tents, and pay little attention to agriculture, but derive their support from their flocks and herds, and from hunting and fishing.

The wandering tribes of Arabia and of Tartary belong to this class.

V. **Savage and barbarous nations** are almost always engaged in war. They are addicted to plunder and robbery—are cruel and revengeful, and generally treat their women as inferior beings.

Questions.—What is Political Geography?—What department of Geography are you learning when you study the government of a country?—Its plains, mountains, and rivers?—When you are studying about Latitude and Longitude?

Are all nations of men equally intelligent and civilized?—Into what classes are they divided?—Which is the lowest class?—Upon what do savages live?—Are there farmers and mechanics among savage tribes?—Do savages have large towns and cities?—If a tribe is ignorant of the use of fire, how must they eat their food?—To what class do the American Indians belong?—The negroes of Africa and Australia?

Which is the more advanced: the savage or the barbarous state?—How do barbarous tribes support themselves?—Do they generally live in towns?—Why do they lead a wandering life?—What examples of barbarous tribes can you mention?—Are savage and barbarous nations of a peaceful character?—How are women treated by them?

LESSON XIX.

STATES OF SOCIETY.

I. **HALF-CIVILIZED** nations carry on agriculture with considerable skill. They build houses and ships—have books, and some degree of learning—and are acquainted with many other useful arts; but they are jealous of strangers, and have very little communication with foreign countries. For this reason they make but little progress, and continue for centuries in the same condition.

Most of the half-civilized nations belong to the Mongolian race, and inhabit the Eastern Continent. The Chinese, Japanese, Persians, Turks, and Hindoos, are half-civilized.



II. Among civilized nations, agriculture, manufactures, and other arts, reach their highest perfection. While the miserable savage goes naked, or clothes himself with the skins of beasts, the civilized man is supplied with the productions and luxuries of every country and of every climate.

He can measure the size and distance of the heavenly bodies, which the savage ignorantly worships as gods. Civilized nations rapidly advance in knowledge; for they maintain a constant communication with each other, and with the remotest parts of the earth. They have colleges, churches, hospitals, schools, and many other useful institutions.

Most of the civilized nations belong to the Caucasian race. Nearly all the inhabitants of Europe, and their descendants in America and other parts of the world, belong to this class.

Questions.—What is the next state of society after the barbarous?—With what arts are half-civilized nations acquainted?—Are these known by savage or barbarous tribes?—Why do half-civilized nations make but little progress?—What are the chief nations of this class?—In what state of society are agriculture and manufactures most advanced?—What striking points of difference exist between the savage and the civilized man?—What advantages may a people derive from a communication with foreign nations?—Do the half-civilized nations avail themselves of this advantage?—Do the civilized?

What savage tribes are there in America?—To which of the five races do they belong?—Are there any civilized nations in America?—To what class of society do most of the nations of Europe belong?—Suppose each nation were to cut off all communication with other countries: would its progress be advanced, or retarded?—Are there any nations which adopt this course?—To what race do most of the half-civilized nations belong?—To what the civilized?

LESSON XX.

GOVERNMENT.

I. GOVERNMENT is that form of principles and laws by which the members of a society or nation are governed or controlled.

II. Those persons who execute the laws, or see that they are obeyed, are called rulers, or governors.

Among savage and barbarous nations there are few established forms of law. The lives and property of the people are generally at the disposal of the chief.

III. There are two principal forms of government, a Monarchy and a Republic.

There are many other names of governments: as, the Patriarchal, which existed in the early history of the Jews, and is now found among the tribes of American Indians, and among some of the tribes of Arabs; and the Aristocracy and Democracy of the ancient Greeks and Romans.

IV. A Monarchy is that form of government in which the supreme authority is possessed by one person, called a monarch, who holds his power for life.

Monarchs have different names. Thus, the monarch of an Empire is called an Emperor, Czar, or Sultan; of a Kingdom, a King; of a Principality, a Prince; of a Duchy, a Duke; of an Electorate, an Elector. The monarch, when a woman, is called a Queen, or Empress.

V. An Absolute Monarchy, or Despotism, is a government in which the sovereign rules according to his own will, and has almost uncontrolled power over the lives and property of his subjects.

China, Persia, Morocco, and most of the half-civilized countries of the Eastern Continent, are absolute monarchies.

VI. A Limited Monarchy is a government in which the power of the sovereign is limited by law.

Great Britain is an example of a limited monarchy.

VII. A Republic is a government in which the exercise of the sovereign power is lodged in representatives chosen by the people.

Most of the States and Countries of the Western Continent are Republics. The United States forms the best example of a Republican government.

VIII. In the United States the power of the government is divided into three departments,—the Legislative, the Executive, and the Judicial.

The Legislative power makes the laws, and belongs to Congress. Congress is composed of two branches, a Senate and a House of Representatives. The Senate is composed of two members from each State, chosen for six years. The House of Representatives is composed of members from each State, chosen for two years, the number of Representatives depending on the population.

The Executive power executes the laws, and is lodged in the President, who is elected for four years by electors chosen by the people.

The Judicial power determines all questions of law and justice arising under the Constitution and laws. It consists of a Supreme Court, and a number of Circuit and District Courts.

IX. The character of a government depends, in a great degree, on the intelligence of the people. Despotism can exist only among the ignorant and barbarous. Civilized communities understand their rights and require their rulers to observe and respect them.

Questions.—What is government?—Who are rulers, or governors?—Where do you find few forms of law?—What are the two principal forms of government?—Where do you find examples of the Patriarchal government?—Of Aristocracy and Democracy?—Define a Monarchy.—What is an Absolute Monarchy?—Give an example.—What is a Limited Monarchy?—Give an example.—What is a Republic?—Where are most of the Republics found?—What are the three departments of the United States Government?—What connection is there between the intelligence of a people and their form of government?

LESSON XXI.

RELIGION.

Most, if not all, of the different varieties of the human race appear to have some idea of a Supreme Being. Even the most savage tribes believe in a future state, and in some invisible power of good or evil. These different ideas constitute the various forms of religion which prevail in the world.

I. The principal forms of religion are the Christian, Jewish, Mohammedan, and Pagan.

II. Christians believe in Jesus Christ as the Saviour of mankind, and in the Old and New Testament as the Word of God.

The Christian religion is professed by the most enlightened nations of the earth. The three great classes of its followers are Roman Catholics, Protestants, and adherents of the Greek Church. The French, Spaniards, Italians, many of the Germans, and the principal part of the inhabitants of Mexico and South America, are Catholics. The inhabitants of the United States, Great Britain, and some countries of Northern Europe, are chiefly Protestants. The Russians and Greeks belong to the Greek Church.

III. Jews believe in the Old Testament as the Word of God. They reject Christ and his Gospel, and expect a Messiah, or Saviour, yet to come.

The Jews once inhabited the Holy Land. They are now scattered throughout nearly all parts of the world.

IV. Mohammedans are followers of the false prophet Mohammed who lived in Arabia about 600 years after Christ.

They believe in one God, and that Mohammed is his prophet. They consider Moses and Christ as true prophets, but Mohammed as the greatest and last. The Mohammedans are found in Turkey, Northern Africa, Arabia, Persia, and many other parts of Asia.

V. Pagans believe in false gods, and worship many different objects: as idols, beasts, and serpents.

The greater part of the inhabitants of Asia and Africa, nearly all of the native tribes of the islands of the Pacific, together with the Indians of America, are Pagans. Among some heathen tribes, as in Africa, India, and the Islands of the Pacific Ocean, the horrid practice of human sacrifice is connected with their religious worship.

VI. About one-half of the people upon the globe are Pagans; about one-third are Christians; nearly one-sixth are Mohammedans; and there are about four millions of Jews.

Christian nations are more powerful, and much more advanced in knowledge, than any others. Their power also is continually increasing. They have colonies in many Pagan countries. They send missionaries to the remotest parts of the earth. They establish schools, and other useful institutions; and there is little doubt that in the course of a few generations, the Christian religion will be spread over the greater part of the earth.

Questions.—What are the principal forms of religion upon the globe?—What do Christians believe?—How does their belief differ from that of the Jews?—Name the three classes of Christians.—What is the character of Christian nations?—Where do the Jews live?

Who was Mohammed?—How long ago did he live?—Where are the Mohammedans found?—What do they believe?—In what do Pagans believe?—What do they worship?—What Pagan tribes inhabit America?—Is human sacrifice ever practised with religious worship?—Where?—By whom?

Which are the most numerous: Pagans or Christians?—What is the estimated number of Jews?—What part of the inhabitants of the globe are Mohammedans?—What nations are most powerful?

LESSON XXII.

BRANCHES OF INDUSTRY.

I. AMONG civilized nations men are engaged in obtaining the natural products of the land and water, in manufactures, and in commerce.

II. The natural products of the land and water are animal, vegetable, and mineral. Every substance in the world belongs to one of these classes.

III. Animal productions consist of land animals, either in a wild or domestic state, and of fish.

In a thinly settled country, where wild animals are numerous, hunting is a favorite occupation. In cold countries, many animals are hunted for their furs, which are very valuable.

IV. In countries where good pasturage is abundant, *grazing*—or the feeding of cattle upon grass—and the raising of *live-stock* are important occupations. The term *live-stock* includes cattle (that is, oxen and cows), horses, sheep, goats, and some other animals.

The various articles which are obtained from them are included among animal productions, namely: hides, skins, horns, tallow, hair, wool, beef, and pork; also, milk, butter, cheese, and other products of the dairy.



V. Fishing.—The products of the fisheries are of great value to man. Oil and whale-bone are obtained from the whale; seal-skin and oil, from the seal; and vast numbers of cod, salmon, mackerel, herring, and other fish, are salted, or otherwise preserved, for food.

Questions.—How are the inhabitants of a civilized country generally employed?—Of what three classes do natural productions consist?—Of what do animal productions consist?

What is a favorite occupation in a thinly-settled country?—Are there any wild animals in the vicinity of the place in which you live?—Is the wolf a wild animal?—Are dogs?—Let each scholar name a wild animal which he has seen.

What does *live-stock* mean?—To what class do the articles which are obtained from these animals belong?—From what animals are hides obtained?—Horns?—Tallow?—Wool?—Beef?—Pork?—Milk, butter, and cheese?—Oil?—Whale-bone?—Seal-skin?

LESSON XXIII.

BRANCHES OF INDUSTRY.—Continued.

I. AGRICULTURE is the cultivation of the soil. The products of agriculture, and of the forests, form the most important part of vegetable productions.

In very warm countries agriculture is not conducted with much skill; for the fruits grow wild, in great abundance, and little care is required to procure food, shelter, and clothing. Thus, it is said that three of the Bread-Fruit trees will afford one person a constant supply of food.

On the other hand, in very cold countries, where the ground is covered with snow the greater part of the year, the soil will not yield a sufficient support, and the people must gain a subsistence by hunting and fishing.

II. A temperate climate is favorable to the highest skill in agriculture. In such a climate, few useful plants grow without cultivation; yet, by cultivation, a great abundance may be produced. For the production of wheat, corn, and other grains common to the Temperate Zones, much labor is required, but such labor is well rewarded.



III. Mining is the business of obtaining mineral productions. The place where they are obtained is called a mine. The place from which building-stone is taken, is termed a *quarry*.

Mineral productions consist principally of jewels or precious stones; of precious metals, such as gold, silver, and platinum; of useful metals, as iron, tin, lead, copper, zinc, and quicksilver; of various kinds of stone, such as marble, granite, sandstone, limestone—useful for building purposes; of coal, salt, and many other minerals, which are obtained beneath the surface of the earth.

Questions.—What are the most important vegetable productions?—What is agriculture?—Why is not agriculture conducted with much skill in very warm countries?—In very cold climates?—Why is a temperate climate favorable to agricultural skill?—In what countries is agricultural skill unnecessary?—In what countries is it unsuccessful?—In what is it both necessary and successful.

What is mining?—What is a mine?—What is a quarry?—Let each scholar name some jewel or precious stone.—Name the principal precious metals.—The useful metals.—The various kinds of stone.—What other useful minerals can you mention?—Which are most necessary to our comfort and convenience: gold, silver, and diamonds—or iron, lead, coal, and salt?

LESSON XXIV.

BRANCHES OF INDUSTRY.—Continued.

I. MANUFACTURING is the art of adapting natural productions to the uses of man.

Very few productions are used in their natural state by men: they must undergo some change to suit their necessity or pleasure. Even the savage, whose wants are few and simple, pounds his corn into meal with a heavy stone, and fashions his rude war-hatchet and spear.

II. In civilized society many different articles are manufactured from animal, vegetable, and mineral productions. Such articles are called manufactures. Thus, leather is made from the skins of animals; cloth from cotton, hemp, and flax; agricultural and household implements from iron, copper, and tin.

It will thus be seen that there are two classes of productions: those which are in a natural state, and those which are manufactured.

III. Among the most necessary manufactures are those which are used for food, clothing, and shelter.

From grain, milk, and the sugar-cane, various kinds of food and drink are made—some of them wholesome, others very injurious. Thus, grain is made not only into flour and meal, but into ale, beer, whiskey, and other intoxicating drinks. From the sugar-cane are manufactured not only sugar and molasses, but rum. Vast quantities of wine are made from the grape.

Among the substances most used for clothing are wool, cotton, leather, flax, and hemp (from which linen is made), and silk. Silk is made from the web of the silk-worm. The silk-worm is fed with the leaves of the mulberry tree, which grows luxuriantly in Southern Europe, China, and India.

For building-purposes, wood, stone, clay (for bricks) and iron, are chiefly employed. The principal material used in making glass is sand.

IV. The ingenious and costly machinery of our great manufacturing establishments requires wealth and a high state of civilization. On that account we must not look for extensive manufactures in a thinly settled country, or among an indolent people.

Questions.—What is manufacturing?—Do men commonly use the productions of the earth in a natural state?—Does the savage manufacture as great a variety of articles as the civilized man?—From what three classes of substances are manufactures derived?—What two classes of productions are there?—What are the most necessary manufactures?—Name some of the substances which are manufactured for food.—From what are ale, beer, and whiskey made?—Wine?—Rum?—Flour?—Butter and cheese?—Sugar and molasses?—Which of these articles are most valuable?

Name some of the substances manufactured for clothing?—From what substance are shoes principally made?—Coats?—Hats and caps?—Bonnets?—Stockings?—To which class—animal, vegetable, or mineral—does leather belong?—Wool?—Straw?—Cotton?—Hemp and flax?—From what is linen made?—From what silk?—On what is the silk-worm fed?—From what countries do we obtain silk?—Name the substances most used for building.

LESSON XXV.

BRANCHES OF INDUSTRY.—Continued.

I. COMMERCE is the exchange of goods. When a farmer raises more grain than he wants, he sells the remainder (called the *surplus*.) for something which he does not himself produce. This is the case, too, with the miner, the manufacturer, the fisherman, and every other producer.

Suppose the farmers of an extensive district raise an abundance of grain and live-stock—they wish to sell the surplus in order to procure other articles, such as sugar, tea, coffee, furniture, and books. They cannot dispose of their grain and live stock to each other, for each man raises more than he needs for his own use. They cannot spare the time to carry their produce to a distant region: they therefore take it to some neighboring town.

The merchants of that town buy the produce thus furnished by the surrounding country, and *export* it (send it away) to other places. They also *import* (bring in) a variety of articles, of which the people stand in need.



II. Commercial Towns.—In a prosperous country there are many large commercial towns in the interior and upon the coast, each forming the centre of trade for the surrounding district.

A sea-coast town cannot have an extensive foreign commerce, unless the harbor is deep enough to admit large ships—for the commerce with distant countries is not often carried on in small vessels. The interior commercial towns are generally situated upon some large river, or lake, which communicates with the coast. Where these are wanting, a railroad sometimes supplies the deficiency.

III. Our own country, so well supplied with noble lakes, rivers, and harbors, contains many great commercial cities which exhibit the advantages of a fortunate position.

Thus, if we examine the map of the United States (p. 26), we shall find on the chain of Great Lakes, Chicago, Milwaukee, Detroit, Toledo, Cleveland, and Buffalo. The wheat, corn, and other products of the Great West are forwarded through these cities, along the lakes and by various railroads and canals, to the great Atlantic cities—New York, Philadelphia, Baltimore, and Boston.

These latter cities pay for the produce thus received by goods manufactured in their vicinity, or by merchandise imported from foreign countries. In like manner, New Orleans carries on a trade with St. Louis, Cincinnati, and other places in the interior.

Questions.—What is commerce?—How do the farmer, miner, fisherman, and manufacturer dispose of their surplus products?—Name some of the articles which the farmer wants, in return for his own productions.—What do the merchants in a commercial town do with the productions of the surrounding country?—What do they import?—A certain country has no iron mines, but manufactures a great amount of cotton goods: which would the people be likely to export?—To import?

Do you generally find many commercial towns in a prosperous country?—Why must a large commercial seaport have a deep harbor?—How are the commercial towns of the interior connected with the coast?—Is our own country well supplied with favorable sites for commercial towns?—Give an example of the way in which commerce is carried on between cities on the coast, and those in the interior.



WESTERN HEMISPHERE

NORTH AMERICA

PACIFIC OCEAN

ATLANTIC OCEAN

SOUTH AMERICA

SOUTHERN OCEAN

ANTARCTIC OCEAN

ANTARCTIC CIRCLE

SOUTH POLE

PART II.

DESCRIPTIONS OF COUNTRIES.

CHAPTER I.

THE HEMISPHERES.

I. THE entire surface of the globe is represented by the maps of the two hemispheres:—the Eastern, and the Western.

The meridian of 20 degrees west from Greenwich is the line usually chosen for the division of the Eastern and Western Hemispheres, though any other meridian would answer equally well.

This line was adopted because it was supposed to be the meridian of Ferro, one of the Canary Islands. Ferro was the most western land known to the ancients; the region beyond being to them one of doubt and darkness. This island is now known to be a little east of 20°.

II. The Western Hemisphere comprises the Western Continent, a small part of the Eastern Continent, a portion of the Antarctic Land, and numerous islands; besides a part of the Pacific, Atlantic, Arctic, and Antarctic Oceans. There is much more water than land in this hemisphere.

III. The Eastern Hemisphere comprises the Eastern Continent (except the north-eastern extremity), a portion of the Antarctic Land, and numerous islands; besides the Indian Ocean, and a part of the Pacific, Atlantic, Arctic, and Antarctic Oceans. There is also more water than land in this hemisphere.

IV. Except the Antarctic Land, and a few small islands far out at sea, every tract of land now known is included within one of the six Grand Divisions of Asia, Europe, Africa, North America, South America, and Oceanica.

V. The globe may also be divided into a Northern and a Southern Hemisphere; of which the former contains the greater proportion of land—the latter, of water.

VI. In the Southern Hemisphere there are various tracts of land lying within the Antarctic Ocean, which may be included in the general name of Antarctic Land.

Until the year 1819, no land was known to exist south of the 60th degree of South Latitude. Since that time, navigators have discovered numerous islands and bodies of land, among which are the South Shetland Islands, Graham's Land, Victoria Land, and Enderby's Land.

The most extensive tract yet known, in that part of the world, is called the Antarctic Continent, situated about 2000 miles south of Australia. It was discovered in 1840, by Captain Wilkes, of the American Navy. He sailed along the coast a distance of 1700 miles east and west.

In 1841, Captain Ross, of the British Navy, explored a line of coast (Victoria Land), extending southward to within 830 miles of the South Pole; being the nearest approach yet made to that point. He discovered, in these frozen regions, an active volcano, 12,400 feet high, which he named Mount Erebus. A little farther east, he saw an extinct volcano, which he named Mount Terror.

All these regions are barren and desolate. The land is perpetually covered with ice and snow, and the coasts are for the most part bordered by vast masses of ice. There are no inhabitants, and but few land animals; and some tracts are wholly destitute of vegetation. It has been ascertained that the ice of the Antarctic regions extends 10 degrees nearer the Equator than that of the Arctic.

Questions.—What proportion of the surface of the globe is represented by the map of the Eastern Hemisphere?—By that of the Western?—By both?—What meridian is usually chosen for the division of the Eastern and Western Hemispheres?—Could any other line be adopted?—Suppose some other meridian were used for this purpose: would the map of each hemisphere contain the same portions of land and water as it does now?

Suppose the meridian of 100° of West Longitude were selected for the dividing line: in which hemisphere would South America be?—Why is the meridian of 20° commonly adopted?—In which hemisphere is the Island of Ferro?—Why?

What bodies of land are included in the Western Hemisphere?—What oceans lie partly within this hemisphere?—What bodies of land are included in the Eastern Hemisphere?—What ocean is entirely within it?—What other oceans are partly within it?—What contains the greater proportion of land: the Northern, or the Southern Hemisphere?—Which contains the more water?

What is included in the term Antarctic Land?—In what year did the discovery of these regions commence?—Where is Victoria Land?—The South Shetland Isles?—Graham's Land?—What is the character of these regions?—Why are there no inhabitants?—In which region, the Arctic or Antarctic, does the ice extend farthest towards the Equator?

QUESTIONS ON THE MAP.

Which is the largest division of land in the Western Hemisphere?—What ocean is north of this division?—What ocean is East?—West?

What is that portion of the Atlantic Ocean north of the Equator called?—What is the portion south called?—What is that part of the Pacific Ocean north of the Equator called?—What is the part south called?

Through what strait would you sail, to go from the Pacific to the Arctic Ocean?—What narrow isthmus separates the waters of the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans?—The Antarctic Ocean is south of the Antarctic Circle: what land is in this ocean?

What sea and gulf lie between North and South America?—Of what ocean do these bodies of water form a part?—What sea is north of the Aleutian Islands?—Of what ocean is it a part?—Through what bay must Dr. Kane have sailed to reach his farthest point north?

A vessel is reported to have been wrecked in Latitude 40° North, and Longitude 30° West: in what ocean did it occur?—Near what land?

A United States vessel of war is ordered to cruise among the islands situated between Latitude 10° and 30° North, and Longitude 60° and 90° West; what islands are meant?

A whaling-vessel is reported in Latitude 30° South, and Longitude 80° West: in what ocean is this vessel?—Near what group of islands?—What main-land.

CHAPTER II.

THE CONTINENTS.

I. THE most extensive bodies of land upon the surface of the earth are the Eastern and the Western Continents.

II. The Eastern Continent, and the adjacent islands, form three grand divisions: Europe, Asia, and Africa. This continent is more than twice as large as the Western.

III. The Western Continent, with the neighboring islands, forms two grand divisions: North America and South America.

These are connected by the Isthmus of Panama.

The two continents approach nearest each other at Behring Strait, which, at the narrowest part, is only 36 miles wide. A partial connection is established by the Aleutian Islands, which extend from the Peninsula of Alaska, in North America, to Kamtschatka, in Asia.

IV. Position.—The greatest extent of land in the two continents is north of the Equator, and in the North Temperate Zone. Only a small part is in the South Temperate, and none at all in the South Frigid Zone.

V. Climate.—The position of the continents determines, in a great measure, the climate of the five sections of which they are composed.

The three northern sections (Asia, Europe, and North America) are principally in the Temperate Zone, and extend beyond the Arctic Circle—forming almost a connected line around the North Pole. They are, therefore, colder than the two southern sections (Africa and South America), which lie chiefly within the Tropics, and are far removed from the Frigid Zone.

VI. Outline.—The outline of the two continents presents some points of resemblance, and some of contrast.

1. The southern section of each continent is a peninsula, connected with the main body by a narrow isthmus. Each of these peninsulas terminates in a pointed projection towards the south.

2. An island, or group of islands, is found east of the southern part of each continent: as Madagascar, east of Africa; and the Falkland Islands, east of South America.

3. The three northern sections are deeply indented by large seas and gulfs; while in the two southern, the coast is unbroken by any large arms of the ocean. It is partly owing to this circumstance that South America and Africa have not been more thoroughly explored by Europeans.

4. The greatest length of the Western Continent is from north-west to south-east; while that of the Eastern is from north-east to south-west.

VII. Surface.—The Western Continent is traversed throughout its entire length by a great mountain-system, which accompanies the line of its western shores.

VIII. East of this great chain is a vast plain, stretching throughout the entire length of the continent, interrupted only by the Gulf of Mexico. The eastern limits of this plain are formed by inferior mountain-systems.

IX. The Eastern Continent also contains an immense mountain-system, traversing the greatest length of the main body (Asia and Europe), from the Pacific to the Atlantic Ocean.

[NOTE.—The mountain-systems of the two continents will be described in connection with the Grand Divisions.]

Southward from this system extend a number of peninsulas: Farther India, Hindoostan, and Arabia, in Asia; and Greece, Italy, and the Spanish Peninsula, in Europe. These peninsulas are penetrated by mountain-chains—branches of the principal system.

X. Northward from this great mountain band, a vast plain extends to the shores of the Arctic Ocean. It stretches east and west, from Behring Strait to the Atlantic Ocean—about one-third the circumference of the globe.

Questions.—What are the most extensive bodies of land upon the surface of the earth?—Which is the larger of the two?—Of what three sections does it consist?—Of what two sections is the Western Continent composed?—Where do the continents approach nearest to each other?—What is the shortest distance between them?—How is a partial connection established between them?

On which side of the Equator is the greatest extent of land, in the two continents?—In what zone?—Which contains the greatest extent of their surface: the Torrid, or the South Temperate Zone?—Does any part of these continents extend beyond the Arctic Circle?—The Antarctic?

What determines the climate of the continents?—Why are Asia, Europe, and North America colder than Africa and South America?

Which sections of the continents are most deeply indented: the three northern, or the two southern?—Why has the unbroken outline of South America and Africa, in some measure, prevented Europeans from exploring them more thoroughly?

In what direction does the chief mountain-system of the Western Continent extend?—What is the character of the surface east of this system?

In what direction does the principal mountain-system of the Eastern Continent extend?—What grand divisions does it cross?—Name the peninsulas which extend southward from this central system?—By what mountain-chains are they penetrated?

In what direction does the great plain, north of this system, slope?—What is its extent?—In what direction does the greatest length of this plain extend?—In what direction does the greatest length of the plain in the Western Continent extend?

QUESTIONS ON THE MAP.

Which is the largest division of land in the Eastern Hemisphere?—What ocean is north of it?—What oceans are east?—What ocean is west?

Which are the two northern divisions of the Eastern Continent?—Which division is a great peninsula?—What isthmus connects it with the main land?

What great sea and bay are south of Asia?—Of what ocean are they a part?—Of what ocean are the seas south and west of Europe a part?—Name the four great seas east of Asia.—Of what ocean are they a part?

Which is the largest island of the Eastern Hemisphere?—To what grand division does it belong?—Name two other islands belonging to the same grand division.

In what zone is the greater part of Asia?—Is any part of Europe in the Torrid Zone?—Is any part of Asia south of the Equator?—Is any part of Africa in the South Temperate Zone?—In what zones is Australia?

To what grand division does Madagascar belong?—The Japan Islands?—Borneo?—Tasmania?—What extensive tract of land is south of Australia?—Is the Antarctic Continent inhabited or uninhabited?

A bottle containing the following paper was picked up at sea, in Latitude 10° South, and Longitude 50° East: "Thrown overboard from the wreck of the ship Valparaiso, in Latitude 30° South, and Longitude 110° East;" near what islands and main-land was the bottle found?—Where was it thrown overboard?—Across what ocean had it drifted?

A British cruiser captures a Portuguese brig engaged in the slave-trade, in Latitude 10° South, and Longitude 10° East: in what ocean did this capture occur?—Near what land?

On what ocean would a vessel sail, to go by the nearest route from Africa to the island of St. Helena?—Across what ocean would a vessel sail, to go by the nearest course from Madagascar to Australia?

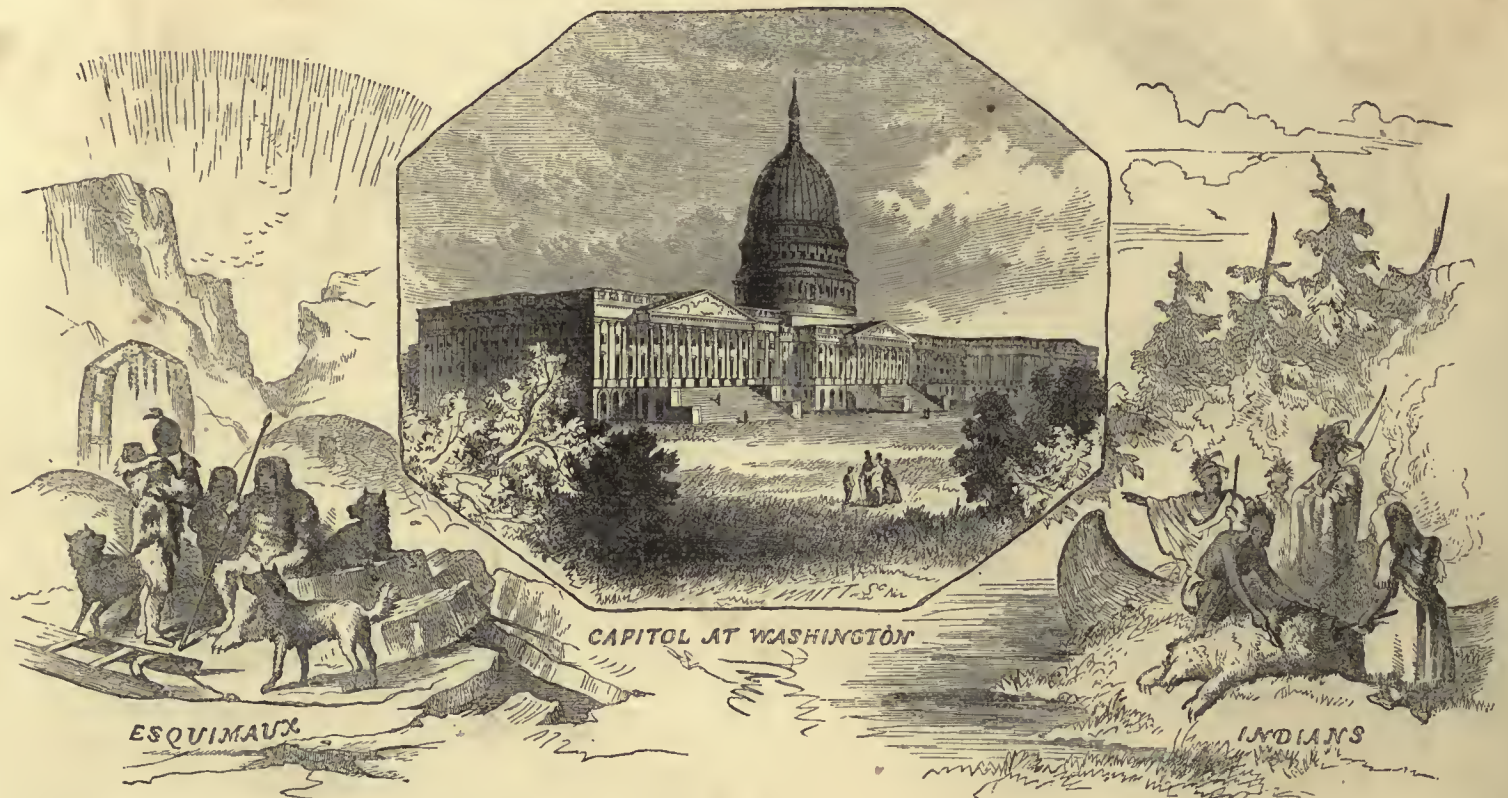
A vessel is captured by Malay pirates near the Equator, in Longitude 105° East: between what two great islands was this?—Near which of the Grand Divisions of the Eastern Continent?

A vessel is wrecked in Latitude 40° North, and Longitude 150° East: in what ocean is this?—The passengers and crew are saved, and escape to the nearest land: what is it?

E A S T E R N



H E M I S P H E R E



CHAPTER III.

NORTH AMERICA.

PHYSICAL FEATURES.

I. **Outline.**—North America is penetrated by many large gulfs and bays. In this respect it differs from South America, which has an unbroken coast-line.

II. **Surface.**—North America contains three mountain-systems: the Rocky Mountain, California, and Alleghany Systems.

The Rocky Mountain System extends from the Isthmus of Panama to the Arctic Ocean. As far north as Latitude 38°, the principal chain is called the Sierra Madre; thence to the Arctic Ocean it is known as the Rocky Mountains.

The California System includes the chains which extend along the Pacific coast, from the southern extremity of California into Russian America. The Sierra Nevada and Cascade Mountains are the principal ranges.

The Alleghany Mountains extend along the Atlantic coast, from within two hundred miles of the Gulf of Mexico to the Gulf of St. Lawrence.

III. The surface of North America is divided by the Rocky and Alleghany Mountains into three distinct sections: the Atlantic Slope, the Pacific Slope, and the Great Central Plain.

The Atlantic Slope includes the country lying between the Alleghany Mountains and the Atlantic Ocean.

The Pacific Slope extends from the Rocky Mountains to the Pacific Ocean.

The Great Central Plain, lying between the Rocky and Alleghany Mountains, extends from the Arctic Ocean to the Gulf of Mexico. It is divided, about midway, into a northern and a southern slope. The surface is so level that a man may traverse its entire length without encountering an elevation of more than a few hundred feet.

IV. **Rivers and Lakes.**—Each of these three sections is drained by a system of lakes and rivers.

The rivers of the Great Central Plain, owing to the extent of that section, are much the largest. They flow in various directions: those of the southern slope into the Gulf of Mexico; and those of the northern slope into the Arctic Ocean, Hudson's Bay, or the Gulf of St. Lawrence.

The rivers of the northern slope are connected with numerous chains of great lakes, which are said to contain more than half the fresh water upon the surface of the globe.

V. North America consists of the following divisions: the United States, British America, Danish America, Russian America, Mexico, Central America, and the West Indies.

BRITISH, DANISH, AND RUSSIAN AMERICA.

VI. These three divisions comprise the whole country north of the United States, and constitute one-half of North America.

VII. The Arctic Ocean washes the northern shores of this immense territory.

The regions bordering upon the Arctic Ocean are among the most dreary and desolate on the face of the earth. The shores are covered with eternal snows, and the entire surface of the sea with large fields and huge masses of floating ice.

VIII. Notwithstanding the fearful dangers encountered in these frozen regions, the Arctic Ocean has been perseveringly explored for the last 300 years, with the hope of finding a passage from the Atlantic to the Pacific.

The voyage to India and China, from Europe or the ports on our Atlantic coast, is now made by way of Cape Horn or the Cape of Good Hope. The distance by way of the Arctic Ocean is only half as great; hence these repeated explorations.

That such a passage exists was proved by Capt. McClure, of the British Navy, who in 1852 forced his way through it; but so perilous and difficult is its navigation that it can never be of any commercial value.

How does the outline of North America differ from that of South America?—Name the three mountain-systems.—Describe each of them.—Into what three sections is the country divided?—Describe each of them.—Which has the largest rivers?

What are the Political Divisions of North America?—Which of them border on the Arctic Ocean?—Describe the Arctic regions.—Why has the Arctic Ocean been so perseveringly explored?—What results have followed these explorations?

IX. Discoveries in the Arctic Ocean.—Most of the discoveries have been made by British and American navigators, and many of the places bear their names.

Grinnell Land was discovered in 1850, by the Expedition under command of Lieut. De Haven, sent out in search of Sir John Franklin, and named in honor of Henry Grinnell, Esq., of New York, whose munificence fitted out the Expedition. Mount Franklin was named in honor of Sir John Franklin.

In 1852, Dr. Kane, of the U. S. Navy, penetrated as far as 82° 30' North Latitude, where he discovered an open Polar Sea, free from ice. He explored a tract of country north of Greenland, to which he gave the name of Washington Land.

X. Climate.—It has been generally supposed that the climate of nearly all British, Russian, and Danish America, was so severe that the country must forever remain a desolate waste.

The Valley of the St. Lawrence, and a part of the Basin of the Saskatchewan, have usually been regarded as the only cultivable regions. It is now believed, however, that a large portion of the country south-west of Hudson Bay (especially the section west of the Rocky Mountains,) has a genial climate and fertile soil, and that it is capable of sustaining a dense population.

XI. Vegetation.—There is scarcely any vegetation, in the north, capable of supporting man. In the cultivable districts of the south, wheat and other grains common to the Temperate Zones are raised.

An abundance of mosses, lichens, berries, willows, and shrubs, grow in the cold districts of the north, upon which the numerous birds and land-animals subsist.

In Greenland, a very small red plant grows upon the surface of the snow. When first seen it was thought to be *red snow*, and is now generally called by that name.

XII. Animals.—These frozen regions of the north, though thinly peopled, abound with animal life, both on land and in the sea. Their chief value, indeed, to the European governments, by which they are held, is in the trade in oil, whalebone, and skins, which are thus supplied.

Within the Tropics, land-animals attain the greatest size; but the largest sea-animals are found in or near the Polar waters. The Great Rorqual (a species of whale found in the Northern Atlantic,) is the largest of living animals, being sometimes from 80 to 100 feet long.

The lakes and seas abound with fish, and myriads of water-fowl hover upon the coast. The principal amphibious animals are the seal and walrus. The walrus is a ferocious creature, sometimes eighteen feet long, with tusks three feet in length.

The grizzly bear, the largest and most dangerous of the bear tribe, is found among the Rocky Mountains, in the southern districts. The white, or Polar bear, inhabits the northern coasts.

The buffalo, moose, elk, deer, and reindeer, are numerous; and immense numbers of the smaller fur-bearing animals—as the fox, wolf, raccoon, otter, marten, and beaver—are yearly taken by the trappers.

XIII. Inhabitants.—Except in Iceland and the British Provinces, the inhabitants are chiefly Indians and Esquimaux. The few Europeans are mostly government officers, or persons employed in the fur-trade.

The Esquimaux inhabit the northern districts, near the coast. They belong to the Mongolian race, and are of low stature and filthy appearance. They derive their support principally from the sea.

They eat the flesh of the bear and reindeer, and clothe themselves with the skins. The oil of the whale, seal, and walrus, affords them light during the long night of winter; and they consume the *blubber* (or fat,) for food.

The Esquimaux frames his canoe with the bones of the whale, and covers it with the skin of the seal. Instead of the reindeer, he harnesses a team of dogs to his sledge, by which he is rapidly drawn over the fields of ice and snow. The hardy native does not hesitate to attack the formidable walrus and Polar bear, which are encountered on the fields of ice.

By whom have most of the discoveries in the Arctic regions been made?—Mention some of the results of American explorations.—What is the climate of these regions?—What is the character of the vegetation?—What kind of animals are numerous?—Name some of the principal land-animals.—Why is this country valuable to European governments?—Who inhabit these regions?—Describe the Esquimaux.

BRITISH AMERICA.

XIV. This country comprises all of North America north of the United States, except Russian America, Greenland, and Iceland.

Its different divisions are Rupert Land, or New Britain, British Columbia, Vancouver Island, and the more thickly settled provinces in the southeast. (A description of the latter is given on page 54.)

Rupert Land comprises the greater part of British America. It was formerly under the control of the Hudson Bay Company, who had the exclusive right to the fisheries and trade of this vast region.

British Columbia is west of the Rocky Mountains. Gold is found in considerable quantities on Fraser River. New Westminster is the capital.

Vancouver Island is very fertile, and contains a great abundance of coal. Victoria is the principal settlement.

RUSSIAN AMERICA.

XV. This country was purchased by the Government of the United States from Russia in 1867. It has an area of 570,000, square miles, or more than ten times that of the State of Illinois, and has hitherto been but partially explored.

North of the Peninsula of Alaska the coast is low and marshy, but south of this Peninsula it is bold and mountainous, often consisting of precipitous cliffs which descend abruptly to the sea. Groups of volcanic islands skirt this part of the coast, and between them and the main land is a remarkable interior channel, safe for steamboat navigation at all times.

Extensive forests of pine, cypress, spruce, poplar, and willow cover much of the country. Deposits of valuable minerals exist in the mountain ranges.

An astonishing quantity of animal life is supported in the forests, the streams, and the island passages of the sea. The otter, beaver, mink, ermine, sable;—foxes, bears, wolves, and other fur-bearing animals, are found in great numbers. Myriads of birds fill the woods in the summer season; while the waters swarm with cod, halibut, salmon, and many other varieties of fish.

About six thousand Russians and sixty thousand Indians and Esquimaux constitute the inhabitants.—The latter are filthy and degraded, and live in huts wholly or partly under ground.

Sitka, on Baranoff Island, is the principal settlement.

DANISH AMERICA.

XVI. Danish America includes Greenland and Iceland.

XVII. Greenland.—It is not yet known whether Greenland is an island, or a projection from an Arctic continent not yet discovered. Some writers suppose it to be a cluster of islands joined together by ice.

The interior has never been explored, but the coast is high and rocky, and the more elevated portions are covered with perpetual snow and ice.

The Danish Governor resides at Lichtenfels on the west coast. The Moravian missionaries have also settlements on this coast and on the opposite coast of Labrador, and have converted many of the natives to Christianity.

XVIII. Iceland.—This island is of volcanic formation. Ranges of high and rugged mountains border the coast, while the interior is a dreary desert of volcanoes, ice-clad mountains, or fields of lava.

The most famous of the volcanoes is Mount Hecla: There are also boiling springs which throw up water, steam, and even large stones to a great height.

The settlements are all near the coast. Reikiavik is the principal town.

The Icelanders are of European origin, and are generally well educated.

Notwithstanding its name, Iceland is not so cold a country as Greenland. It was called Iceland by a Norwegian pirate, who, on his first visit, saw a bay filled with ice which had floated there from Greenland.

Greenland was so named by an Icelandic chief, who, for some crime, was obliged to flee from his native land. To induce his countrymen to follow him to Greenland, he falsely represented it as superior in fertility to Iceland.

What does British America comprise?—Name the different divisions.—Which of them is the largest?—What can you say of Russian America?—Describe the coast.—Mention some of the animals found there.—By whom is it inhabited?—What does Danish America include?—Describe Greenland.—Where have the Moravian missionaries settlements?—Describe Iceland.—Which is the colder country, Iceland or Greenland?



MAP OF NORTH AMERICA.

STATUTE MILES 69.2 TO A DEGREE.
 100 200 300 400 500 600 700 800 900 1000 1100 1200
 Scale 520 miles to an inch.

Longitude West 20 from Washington

QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF NORTH AMERICA.

OUTLINE.

Which has the more irregular outline: North or South America?—By what oceans is North America surrounded?—Which of these is on the north?—By what strait is it connected with the Pacific?—Is there any communication with the Atlantic?

What land is east of Baffin Bay?—Is Greenland attached to the main-land of the Continent?—In what direction does Greenland extend?—What cape at the southern extremity?—In what direction is Iceland from that cape?

On the eastern coast of North America there are five great branches of the Atlantic Ocean: which of these are called gulfs?—Which one is called a sea?—Which are called bays?—Do you perceive any reason why some of them should be called bays, and others gulfs and seas?—Name the only large branch of the ocean on the western coast.

By what strait is Baffin Bay entered from the Atlantic?—By what strait is Hudson Bay?—By what land is that bay surrounded?—By what island and peninsula is the Gulf of St. Lawrence partly enclosed?—What cape at the south-eastern extremity of Newfoundland?—At the south-western extremity of Nova Scotia?

By what two peninsulas is the Gulf of Mexico partly enclosed?—In what direction does the Peninsula of Yucatan extend?—By what group of islands is the Caribbean Sea separated from the Atlantic?—What land separates it from the Pacific?

What two peninsulas on the western coast of North America?—In what direction do they extend?—What cape at the southern extremity of California?—What chain of islands extends from the Peninsula of Alaska to that of Kamtschatka? (See map of the Western Hemisphere.)—Name the principal islands on the western coast of British and Russian America.—To what country does Vancouver Island belong?

SURFACE.

What three mountain-systems are there in North America?—Do they follow the general direction of the neighboring coast?—In what direction, then, does the Rocky Mountain System extend?—The Alleghany System?—Which of the three systems is the longest?—What mountain-system extends from the Isthmus of Panama to the Arctic Ocean?—What name is given to the southern part of the principal chain?—To the northern part?—What system follows the coast, from Cape St. Lucas to Russian America?—What two lofty peaks in Russian America does it contain?—Between what two gulfs does the Alleghany System extend?—In what range is Mount Brown?

LAKES AND RIVERS.

Into what three sections is North America divided by the mountain-systems?—Which section is the most extensive?—Which, then, contains the largest rivers?—From what mountains do the rivers of the Atlantic Slope flow?—In what general direction?

From what mountains do the largest rivers of the Pacific Slope flow?—In what general direction?—Why?—Into what ocean?—Which of them is in Russian America?—Which flows into the Gulf of California?—Into the Gulf of Georgia?

Do the rivers of the Central Plain all flow in the same general direction?—Why?—Where is this plain divided?—Towards what great gulf does the southern half slope?—Name the principal river of this southern slope.—What other large river flows between Mexico and the United States?—Into what gulf do these rivers flow?

What great river, in the northern half of the Central Plain, flows into the Arctic Ocean?—In what mountains does it rise?—What name does it bear in the upper part of its course?—Name the three largest lakes with which it is connected.—Does any part of this river rise on the west side of the Rocky Mountains?—Is this river frozen during any part of the year?

What is there on the map which would make you think that the land around Hudson Bay slopes towards it?—What is meant by the "Basin of Hudson Bay"?—What lake empties into Hudson Bay through Nelson River?—What great river empties into that lake?—What great river and chain of lakes flows into the Gulf of St. Lawrence?

The following rivers rise in the Rocky Mountains—name the waters into which they flow: the Columbia, Fraser, Colorado, Mackenzie, Saskatchewan, Missouri, Rio Grande.—Can you reach the Alleghany Mountains by following a tributary of the Mississippi?—Can you also reach the Rocky Mountains by following some of its tributaries?

CLIMATE AND VEGETATION.

[These questions require a thorough understanding of the principles stated in the lessons on Climate and Vegetation, page 12.]

On which side of the Equator does North America lie?—Does the climate, then, become warmer or colder, as you go north?—In what zone is North America situated?—In which zone is the greatest extent included?—Are the climate and productions of North America, then, generally those of the Torrid or Temperate Zone?

In what part of the country would you expect to find tropical productions?—In advancing towards the north, would you find the vegetation becoming more or less luxuriant?—In what regions would you expect to find the vegetation almost entirely cease?—Where would you expect to find grain most extensively produced?

Are the summers generally hotter or colder in the interior of a country than on the coast?—Where are the winters usually more severe: upon the coast, or in the interior?—Where, then, would you expect to find the hotter summer: on the Atlantic coast, or upon the banks of the Mississippi River, in the same latitude?

POLITICAL DIVISIONS.

What three divisions occupy the northern half of the country?—What great country lies south of British America?—What one between the Pacific Ocean and Gulf of Mexico?—Between the Caribbean Sea and the Pacific Ocean?

What group of islands between North and South America?—Name the two largest political divisions of North America.—Which of these is the more valuable country?—Why?—What divisions are in the Torrid Zone?—Are all of the West India Islands in the Torrid Zone?—In what part of British America is British Columbia?—Labrador?

MISCELLANEOUS.

What proportion of North America is occupied by British, Danish, and Russian America?—Why is this not, generally, a habitable region?—What parts are capable of supporting a numerous population?

What is the chief value of these countries to the governments by which they are held?—If there is not vegetation enough to support man, how do the animals live?—Name the principal land animals.—What animals are amphibious?—What is an amphibious animal?

Where is Reikiavik?—Sitka?—Would you find any white people living in these towns?—As the vegetation is scanty, upon what do they subsist?—Is Iceland in the Frigid or North Temperate Zone?—Is any part of Greenland in the Temperate Zone?

Which is the colder country: Iceland, or Greenland?—How, then, came they to receive such erroneous names?—Where is Lichtenfels?—Where are there any Moravian settlements?—Where are the settlements in Greenland and Iceland: in the interior, or on the coast?—Why?—What can you say of the animal life of Russian America?

Why have not the various bodies of land in the Arctic Ocean been more thoroughly explored?—For what purpose have most of the expeditions been sent into these seas?—Has the Northwest passage ever been made?—Does such a passage exist?

Who discovered the open Polar Sea?—Where is Grinnell Land?—Why is it so called?—What other ocean has a similar character to that of the Arctic?

Who inhabit the northern coasts of North America?—How do they live?—Are they of the same race as the Indians?—As the inhabitants of Iceland?—What valuable articles do we obtain from these northern regions?—Where is Nain?—Mount Hecla?—Disco Island?—Washington Land?—Upernavik?—On what island is Victoria?

What mountains would you cross, in going from the Atlantic to the Pacific Ocean, on the 40th parallel of latitude?—What lakes and bay, going from the Gulf of Mexico to the Arctic Ocean, on the meridian of 10° West Longitude from Washington?—Following the same meridian south, what peninsula and country would you cross?—What ocean would you reach?—Would you cross a level or mountainous country, in going from the Gulf of Mexico to the Arctic Ocean, on the meridian of 20° west from Washington?

Bound each political division of North America. Sketch a map of North America, locating the principal mountain-chains and rivers.—(See article on Map Drawing, page 97.)



THE FALLS OF NIAGARA.

CHAPTER IV.

THE UNITED STATES.

PHYSICAL FEATURES.

I. THE United States occupy the central part of North America, and form about three-eighths of its extent. The country has a fortunate position, being equally removed from the blighting cold of the North, and the enfeebling heat of the Torrid Zone.

II. **Surface.**—The three great mountain-systems of North America cross the United States from north to south.

III. The Alleghany system is almost wholly confined to the United States, only a small portion of it extending into Canada. This system extends from the north-eastern border to within 200 miles of the Gulf of Mexico.

It consists of several parallel ranges, known in the different States by various local names. The average width of the system is about 60 miles, and the average elevation from 2000 to 3000 feet.

IV. The Rocky Mountain system stretches entirely across the United States, at an average distance from the Pacific Ocean of about 800 miles. North of Latitude 38°, the principal chain is called the Rocky Mountains; south of it, the Sierra Madre.

V. The California system also extends entirely across the country, closely skirting the Pacific coast. The various chains, in the United States, are the Coast Range, the Cascade Mountains, and the Sierra Nevada.

Why may the United States be regarded as having a fortunate position?—Name the three principal mountain-systems.—Describe each of them.—Which of them are clothed with vegetation?—Which have peaks covered with snow?—Which, then, are highest?

The Coast Range and the Alleghany Mountains are generally clothed with vegetation to their summits; while the Rocky Mountains, the Sierra Nevada, and Cascade Range, are bald and inaccessible—many of the peaks being perpetually covered with snow.

VI. The country is divided by the mountain-systems into three principal sections: the Atlantic Slope, the Pacific Slope, and the Central Plain.

VII. The Atlantic Slope embraces the Country which extends from the Alleghany Mountains to the Atlantic Ocean and Gulf of Mexico.

For about 100 or 150 miles from the base of the mountains, the land has a general elevation of about 1000 feet, with a hilly and broken surface. Between this upland country and the sea is the coast district, which is low and flat, rarely rising more than 100 feet above the ocean.

From the Hudson River south, this lowland district has an average width of from 30 to 150 miles. A considerable portion of it is sandy or marshy. North-east of the Hudson River (in New England), the hilly country extends nearly or quite to the ocean; so that the flat district is an unimportant feature.

The rivers of the Atlantic Slope are usually navigable to the edge of the upland country. This point, therefore, determines the position of many important cities and towns.

VIII. The Pacific Slope embraces the country between the Rocky Mountains and the Pacific Ocean.

The region between the Rocky Mountains and the Sierra Nevada and Cascade Range, is, for the most part, a table-land, with an elevation of from 2500 to 5000 feet. It is generally barren; and is crossed by several mountain-chains, which connect the Rocky Mountain and California Systems.

Fremont, or Great Basin, is a desolate tract, lying within these limits. Its waters do not flow into the ocean.

Most of the country west of the Sierra Nevada and Cascade Mountains is exceedingly fertile, and is capable of sustaining a dense population.

Into what sections is the United States divided?—What part of the Atlantic Slope is upland?—Lowland?—What point determines the position of many important places?—Why?—What part of the Pacific Slope is fertile?—What parts are barren?

IX. The Central Plain is a part of the Great Central Plain of North America (page 22), and embraces the Mississippi Valley, the Basin of the St. Lawrence, the small valley of the Red River, of the North and the Texas Slope.

The Mississippi Valley is, next to that of the Amazon, the largest river-basin in the world. It is generally level, only rising into hills near the mountains, which form its limits. The soil is generally very rich.

The most important exception to the fertility of this region consists in a desert-plateau along the base of the Rocky Mountains, stretching eastward to a distance of 200 or 400 miles. It has an elevation of 2000 to 5000 feet.

Most of the States of Wisconsin and Illinois, and much of the country west of the Mississippi River, consists of prairie land.

The term *prairie* is applied to the great treeless plains of our Western States. The prairies are not, however, entirely destitute of timber, but are well wooded near the banks of the streams. The land is generally fertile, and yields a natural growth of heavy grass. The surface of the prairies is sometimes level and sometimes rolling.

The St. Lawrence Basin, and the valley of the Red River of the North, belong to the northern slope of the Great Central Plain. The Red River valley is included in the Saskatchewan Basin, and its waters flow into Hudson's Bay. The St. Lawrence Basin is a well-wooded, fertile region, from 300 to 500 feet in elevation.

The Texas Slope includes the region between the Mississippi Valley and the Rocky Mountains. It resembles the Mississippi Valley.

X. Lakes and Rivers.—Each of these divisions is drained by a system of lakes and rivers, which will be described in connection with the different States.

XI. Climate.—The climate is such as belongs to the middle and southern parts of the North Temperate Zone.

In our Southern States the summer is very warm, and the winter mild. Farther north, the contrast between the seasons is greater; the winters are very cold, and the summers are not so warm as at the south.

XII. Vegetation.—The vegetable productions are such as are common to the middle and southern parts of the North Temperate Zone—including, therefore, many plants of a tropical character, as well as those belonging to a temperate climate.

The various grains—wheat, Indian corn, rye, oats, and barley—are raised in all parts of the country. The northern and middle sections produce the greatest quantity of wheat; while Indian corn grows best in the middle and southern districts.

The potato succeeds best in the Northern States. Its place is supplied at the south by the Carolina or sweet potato. Tobacco is principally raised in the middle sections, though it is also grown in several of the Northern States. Hemp and flax thrive in the middle districts.

Most of the cotton used by mankind is raised in our Southern States. Rice grows in great abundance at the south, in the marshy tracts along the coast. In the extreme south, sugar is one of the most important productions; and oranges are easily raised.

XIII. Inhabitants.—The white population is chiefly of English descent; but there is also a large proportion of Irish, Germans, and other natives of Europe.

Our population has increased more rapidly than that of any other country in the world. In the Middle and Western States, especially, small villages rapidly grow into large towns, and large towns into great cities.

The principal cause of this remarkable growth is the arrival of emigrants from Europe, who seek in America that employment and liberty which are denied them at home.

What does the Central Plain comprise?—Describe each section.—How does the climate of the Southern States compare with that of the Northern?—Name some of the plants which grow in all sections of our country.—Where is tobacco raised?—Cotton?—Sugar?—Rice?—Of what descent is the white population?—What has caused the remarkable growth of this country?—What are the political divisions of the United States?

POLITICAL DIVISIONS.

XIV. The United States consist of thirty-seven States, ten Territories, the District of Columbia, and the extensive country known as Russian America, recently purchased from Russia.

The States are divided into the Eastern, Middle, Southern, and Western.

XV. Government.—The government of the United States is republican, and a President is elected by the people every four years.

XVI. Religion.—Unlike most European countries, the government supports no particular form of religion. The greater part of the inhabitants, however, are Protestants.

XVII. Education is more general in the United States than in any other country. Colleges and academies are numerous, and in nearly all the States there is a system of free schools.

HISTORY.

XVIII. The first settlements in the New World were made principally by the Spanish, French, and English.

The Spaniards occupied the greater part of South America, and the sections bordering on the Gulf of Mexico. These countries (save Florida and Texas) are still occupied by their descendants, who speak the Spanish language.

The French originally claimed and partly settled the Basin of the St. Lawrence and the Valley of the Mississippi. But the only part of this vast territory now in their possession is two small islands in the Gulf of St. Lawrence.

The early settlements of the English were almost wholly confined to the Atlantic Slope, between Maine and Florida. Yet, by energy and intelligence, their descendants have become possessed of the greater part of North America, and the countries they have settled are the most flourishing on the Western Continent.

XIX. In the year 1607, the first English settlement, or colony, in America, was established at Jamestown, in Virginia. Other colonies were settled from time to time, until, in the year 1733, they amounted to thirteen in number.

It is fortunate for our country that the Spaniards (who discovered the New World) first landed at the south—leaving the Atlantic coast of North America to be settled chiefly by the English. The Spaniards were cruel and avaricious: they did not come to America to till the soil, and follow honest labor, but with extravagant hopes of becoming suddenly rich from mines of gold and silver.

The people of the Spanish colonies, therefore, became idle, ignorant, and corrupt; and their descendants retain that character to this day. But the English were an industrious people, who loved liberty and humanity, and earned success by energetic toil in the fields and on the sea.

XX. The English colonies remained firmly attached to the mother country, until its tyranny induced them to rebel. This led to the war of the Revolution.

The first battle was fought at Lexington, in 1775. The surrender of Lord Cornwallis, in 1781, put an end to hostilities, which had lasted six years and a half. On the 4th of July, 1776, the colonies declared themselves a separate nation. In 1783, the British Government acknowledged their independence.

XXI. At the close of the Revolutionary War, the area of the United States was about 800,000 square miles, and there were about 3,000,000 of inhabitants. Now (1868), the area of the country (including Russian America) is 3,500,000 square miles, and the population exceeds 31,000,000.

Nor has the progress of the country, in other respects, been less marked than its increase in extent and population; and the great mass of the people of the United States have hitherto been more prosperous and happy than those of any other country upon the globe.

What is the form of government?—Of what religion are most of the inhabitants?—Is education general?—By whom were the early settlements made in the New World?—What sections were settled by the Spaniards?—French?—English?—What difference was there in the character of the Spanish and English settlers?—When did the English colonies become independent?—What progress has the country made since?

QUESTIONS ON THE MAP.

POLITICAL DIVISIONS OF THE UNITED STATES.

EASTERN STATES.		WESTERN STATES.	
Maine.	Ohio.	Washington.	TERRITORIES.
New Hampshire.	Indiana.	Idaho.	
Vermont.	Illinois.	Montana.	
Massachusetts.	Kentucky.	Dakota.	
Rhode Island.	Tennessee.	Utah.	
Connecticut.	Arkansas.	Colorado.	
	Missouri.	Arizona.	
	Michigan.	New Mexico.	
	Wisconsin.	Indian.	
	Iowa.	Wyoming.	
	Minnesota.		
	California.		
	Oregon.		
	Kansas.		
	Nevada.		
	Nebraska.		
MIDDLE STATES.			
New York.			
New Jersey.			
Pennsylvania.			
Delaware.			
SOUTHERN STATES.			
Maryland.			
Virginia.			
West Virginia.			
North Carolina.			
South Carolina.			
Georgia.			
Florida.			
Alabama.			
Mississippi.			
Louisiana.			
Texas.			
District of Columbia.			

POSITION AND AREA.

What country is situated upon the north of the United States?—Upon the south-west?—What ocean upon the east?—On the west?—What gulf on the south?—What part of North America does the United States occupy?

OUTLINE.

In what general direction does the Atlantic coast of the United States extend?—The Pacific coast?—Where is Passamaquoddy Bay?—Delaware Bay?—Chesapeake Bay?—Albemarle Sound?—What bay upon the Pacific coast?—Which coast has the most numerous inlets: the Atlantic, or the Pacific?

Between what bodies of water is the Peninsula of Florida?—Where is Cape Cod?—Cape Hatteras?—Cape Sable?—Cape Flattery?

SURFACE.

By what three mountain-systems is the United States crossed?—Which of these systems commences near the shores of the Gulf of St. Lawrence?

What mountain-system skirts the Pacific coast?—Which chain of this system is nearest the coast?—What chain in California lies east of the Coast Mountains?—In what direction does the Rocky Mountain System extend?—What part of this system is called the Sierra Madre?—Where are the Wasatch Mountains?

Into what three sections is the United States divided by these mountain-systems?—What part of the Atlantic Slope is generally level?

What mountain-system forms the eastern boundary of the Pacific Slope?—Describe the country between the Rocky Mountains and the Sierra Nevada and Cascade Ranges.—The country west of the two latter chains.—Between what mountains is Fremont Basin situated?

Between what mountains does the Central Plain of the United States lie?—What are the different divisions of this plain?—What can you say about the size of the Mississippi Valley?—What part of it is a barren tract?—Describe the prairies.—What part of the Central Plain is occupied by the St. Lawrence Basin and Valley of the Red River of the North?—Where is the Texas Slope?



RIVERS AND LAKES.

In what mountains do most of the rivers of the Atlantic Slope rise?—Into what ocean and gulf do they flow?—In what direction, and into what gulf, does the Mississippi flow?—In what mountains do many of the tributaries of the Mississippi rise?

In what direction, and into what lake, does the Red River of the North flow?—By what river are the Great Lakes drained?—Into what

gulf, and in what direction, do Lakes, beginning with the most into what gulf, do the rivers of Mississippi River rise?—Through What river of the United States?—In what mountains does this into what body of water, does the general direction of the river

CHAPTER V.

THE EASTERN, OR NEW ENGLAND STATES.

I. **NEW ENGLAND** is composed of six States:—Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and Connecticut.

II. **Coast.**—North of Cape Cod, the coast is bold and rocky; south of that peninsula, it is generally low and sandy.

III. **Surface.**—The Green Mountains, by which the western part of New England is crossed, belong to the Alleghany System. The general appearance of the country is hilly and picturesque.

The White Mountains, in New Hampshire, are an off-shoot from the Green Mountain chain. Mount Washington, the highest of the group, is the loftiest peak, but one, in the Alleghany System.

Another branch of this system crosses Maine in a north-easterly direction. It consists of a ridge of highlands, of which Mount Katahdin and Mars Hill are the principal elevations.

IV. **The Lakes and Rivers** belong to two systems—the Atlantic, and St. Lawrence—which are separated by the Green Mountains.

The rivers of New England, like most of those which belong to the Atlantic Slope, flow through a hilly country, and afford great water-power for manufactures. The Penobscot, Kennebec, and Connecticut, are the only ones which are navigable to any considerable distance.

V. **New England**, and especially Maine, abounds with lakes of clear, bright water, which lie sheltered among the hills, giving life and beauty to the landscape.

The largest lake entirely within the limits of New England is Moosehead Lake, in Maine. It is navigable for steamboats. Lake Winnipiseogee, in New Hampshire, is the most picturesque and beautiful.

VI. **Productions.**—Manufactures, commerce, the forests, and fisheries, form the principal sources of wealth in New England.

The agricultural products are not important, except for home consumption: they consist chiefly of Indian corn, wheat, rye, oats, and tobacco. The only mineral productions of much value are various kinds of building-stone.

The forests are most extensive in Maine, New Hampshire, and Vermont. The latter State is the only one which is not much engaged in manufactures.

The fisheries employ more men in New England than in any other section of the Union. Massachusetts and Maine are the only States which have an extensive foreign commerce, though the others, except Vermont, have a coast trade with our Atlantic sea-ports.

VII. **Inhabitants.**—The New Englanders are mostly of English descent, and are noted for their enterprise and industry.

They are a moral and religious people; and, from the earliest settlement of the country, have given great attention to the subject of education. Many of them have emigrated to the Western States of the Union.

MAINE.

VIII. The coast of Maine is penetrated by numerous inlets, and is lined with islands. Maine has a greater number of good harbors than any other State in the Union.

IX. **Productions.**—The forests cover the interior of the State, and form the principal source of its wealth.

Which are the New England States?—What is the character of the coast north of Cape Cod?—South?—Describe the surface.—To what two systems do the lakes and rivers belong?—Which are the principal navigable rivers?—Of what value are those which are not navigable?—Which is the largest lake?—What form the principal sources of wealth in New England?—Which of these are most important?—Of what descent are most of the inhabitants?—For what are they noted?—Describe them.

In winter, great numbers of men are engaged in cutting down the trees, and dragging them over the hard and deep snow to the rivers. In the spring, the logs are floated down to the saw-mills, where they are converted into timber, boards, planks, shingles, and other kinds of lumber.

Maine builds more ships, and exports more lumber, than any other State in the Union. The other exports are granite, marble, lime, ice, potatoes, and fish.

X. **The Towns** are in the southern part of the State; the north being still unsettled. Augusta is the capital.

Portland, the largest city, has one of the best harbors in the Union. Bangor is the principal place for the shipment of lumber. Bath, and many other towns on the coast, are engaged in ship-building. Great quantities of lime are exported from Rockland.

Lewiston, Saco, and Biddeford (on the opposite side of the river from Saco), have extensive cotton factories. Waterville and Brunswick each contains a college.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.

XI. **New Hampshire** is often called the Granite State, on account of the abundance of that mineral. From the magnificent scenery of the White Mountains, it is also styled the Switzerland of America.



VIEW OF LAKE WINNIPISEOGEE.

XII. **Productions.**—The manufactures of cotton and wool form the chief wealth of the State. Potatoes, cattle, wool, and the products of the dairy are also important.

XIII. **Towns.**—Concord is the capital. The principal manufacturing towns are Manchester, Nashua, Dover, and Great Falls.

Portsmouth, on the Piscataqua River, is the only sea-port. Opposite the city, on an island in the river, is a United States Navy Yard. Hanover contains Dartmouth College.

VERMONT.

XIV. **Vermont** ("green mountain") derives its name from the mountains which traverse the State, and which are clothed with evergreen pines, firs, and hemlocks.

XV. **Productions.**—The people are principally engaged in farming and grazing. The valleys have a rich soil; and, upon the mountain-

What advantage does Maine derive from the character of its coast?—What forms the principal sources of its wealth?—In what does Maine exceed any other State in the Union?—What are the principal exports?—In what part of the State are the towns?—Name the capital.—The other principal cities and towns.—What is New Hampshire often called?—Why?—What are the principal productions?—Name the capital.—The other important towns.—Which is the only sea-port?



SHIP-BUILDING.

sides are pastured great numbers of cattle, horses, and sheep. Live-stock, wool, and dairy products, are largely exported.



A GRAZING SCENE.

The lumber-trade is valuable, and great quantities of maple-sugar are made. Vast beds of the most beautiful marble are found in various parts of the State

XVI. Towns.—Montpelier is the capital. Burlington is the largest town, and contains the University of Vermont.

Rutland and Middlebury have an extensive trade in marble. Middlebury and Norwich each contains a college. Brattleboro is a noted summer resort. At Bennington, the Green Mountain Boys defeated a detachment of Hessians from Burgoyne's army, in 1777.

MASSACHUSETTS.

XVII. Massachusetts borders on Massachusetts Bay: whence it is often called the Bay State. It is one of the wealthiest and most populous of the United States.

XVIII. Productions.—Massachusetts surpasses every other State in the manufacture of boots and shoes, cotton and woollen goods, and in the fisheries. These, with commerce, are the principal sources of her wealth.

The commerce of the State is second only to that of New York. The exports consist principally of manufactured goods, whale-oil, salt-fish, granite, and ice.

XIX. Towns.—Boston is the capital, and is the largest city in New England. It is exceeded only by New York in the extent of its foreign commerce.



FANEUIL HALL.

Salem is also a commercial town. New Bedford and Nantucket are engaged in the whale-fishery; Gloucester, Marblehead, Newburyport, and Barnstable, in the cod and mackerel fisheries.

Lowell and Lawrence are the principal seats of the cotton and woollen manufactures. Lynn is well known for the manufacture of ladies' shoes. At Taunton, locomotives and steam-engines are made. Fall River has extensive iron-werks. Quincy is well known for its granite. Worcester is growing rapidly, and is a great railroad centre. It contains a State Lunatic Asylum, and numerous manufactories. Cambridge is the seat of Harvard University. Springfield contains a United States Arsenal.

From what does Vermont derive its name?—In what are most of the people engaged?—Name the capital.—The other principal towns.—Why is Massachusetts often called the Bay State?—In what does it surpass every other State?—What is the commercial rank of Massachusetts?—What is said of Boston?

XX. Several of the towns in this State are celebrated in the early history of our country. Plymouth is the place where the Pilgrim Fathers landed in 1620; and the first battles of the Revolution were fought at Concord, Lexington, and Charlestown.

RHODE ISLAND.

XXI. Rhode Island is the smallest of the United States. In proportion to its size, it is the most populous State, except Massachusetts.

XXII. Productions.—Cotton and woollen manufactures are the most valuable productions.

The small streams are lined with manufacturing villages, which, however, are not so large as those on the Merrimac River.

XXIII. Towns.—Providence and Newport are the capitals of the State.

Providence is the largest city, and has a considerable foreign commerce and coast-trade. It contains Brown University.

Newport is one of the finest watering-places in the Union. Bristol is a commercial town. Smithfield contains many manufacturing villages. Woonsocket, a part of which is in this town, is the largest of them.



A MANUFACTURING VILLAGE.

CONNECTICUT.

XXIV. Owing to the sobriety and industry of the inhabitants, this State is known as the "Land of Steady Habits." Its principal wealth is derived from manufactures.

Connecticut is noted for the great variety of her manufactures—such as cotton and woollen goods, farmers' and mechanics' tools, saddlery, coaches, paper, buttons, combs, and clocks.

XXV. Towns.—New Haven and Hartford are the capitals of the State.

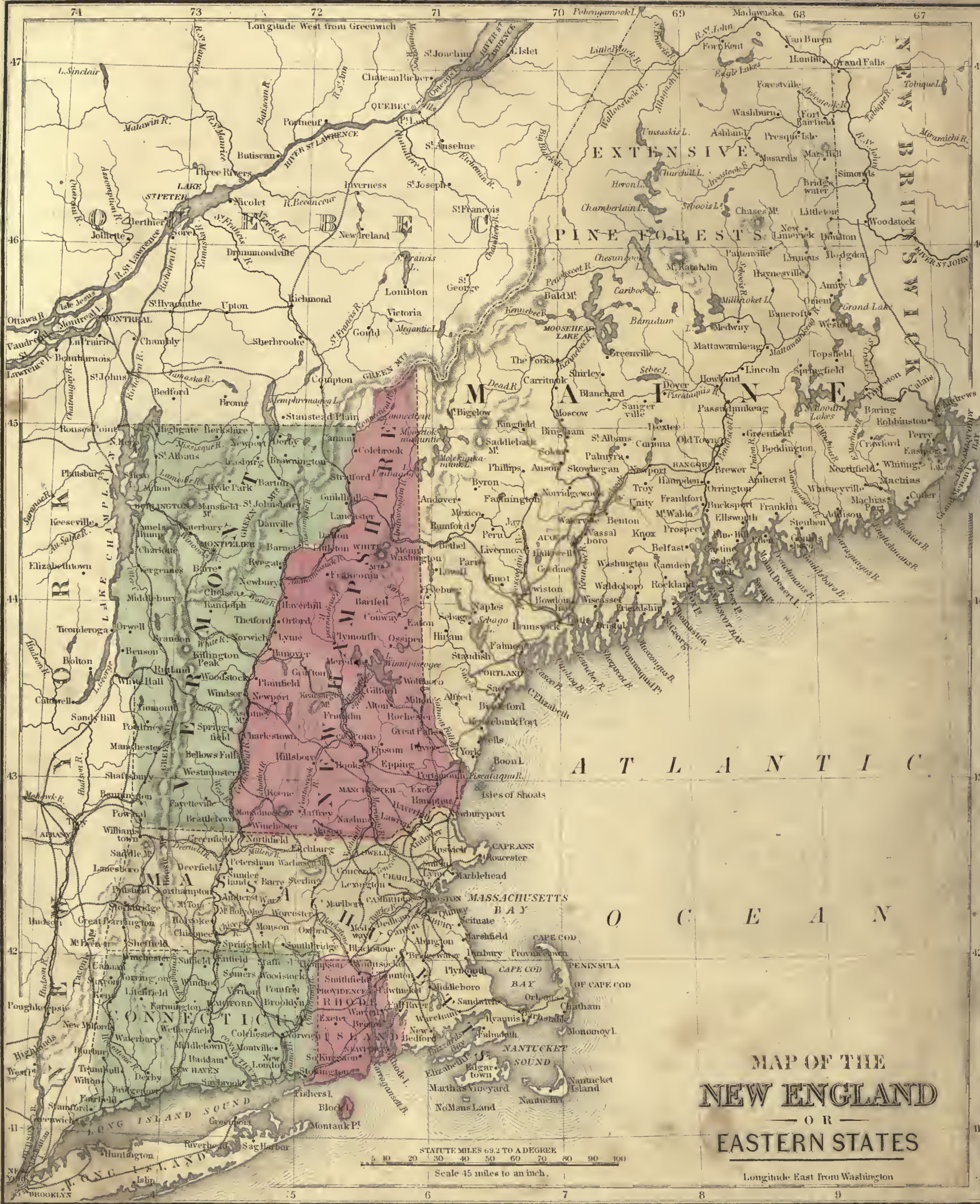


A VIEW OF YALE COLLEGE.

New Haven, the "City of Elms," is a beautiful place, and the seat of Yale College. Hartford contains Trinity College, a Deaf and Dumb Asylum, and a Retreat for the Insane. Its manufactures are extensive, and large steamboats ascend the Connecticut River to this point.

New London and Stonington send a considerable number of vessels to the whale-fishery. Norwich is beautifully situated at the head of the Thames River. Middletown contains the Wesleyan University.

Name the most important places in Massachusetts.—Which of them are celebrated in history, and for what?—How does Rhode Island compare in size with the other States?—What are the most important productions?—Name the capitals.—What are the principal productions of Connecticut?—Name the capitals.—The other principal places.



74 73 72 71 70 69 68 67

47 46 45 44 43 42 41

15 16 17 18 19

Longitude West from Greenwich

70 Pokenamook L. 69 Madawaska 68

EXTENSIVE
PINE FORESTS

A T L A N T I C

O C E A N

MAP OF THE NEW ENGLAND OR EASTERN STATES

STATUTE MILES 69.2 TO A DEGREE
Scale 45 miles to an inch.

Longitude East from Washington

QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF THE NEW ENGLAND OR EASTERN STATES.

POSITION.

What British Province lies north of New England?—What Province east of Maine?—What ocean washes the shores of these States?—What State and Province are upon the western borders?

AREA.

[For the answers to the following questions, refer to the Statistical Tables, page 108.]—Which of the United States is nearly the same size as all of the Eastern States?—Which is the smallest State in the Union?—The next in size?—Name the Eastern States in the order of their size, commencing with the largest.—Which one is nearly equal in extent to the other five?—Which is the larger: Vermont or New Hampshire?

OUTLINE.

What part of the coast of the Eastern States is rocky?—What part is low and sandy?—Which State has the most numerous bays and inlets?—Which of these bays lies between Maine and New Brunswick?—What large bay receives the waters of Penobscot River?—Upon what bay is Portland situated?

What two bays are east of Massachusetts?—What bay is south of the eastern part of Massachusetts?—What islands south of the peninsula of Cape Cod?—What cape on the north-eastern shore of Massachusetts?

What bay within Rhode Island?—What island south of the State?—What is the general character of the coast of Connecticut?—What sound on the coast?—What island is south of Connecticut?—What Point at the eastern extremity of Long Island?

SURFACE.

What mountains cross the western part of the Eastern States?—To what system do they belong?—What part of the boundary of New Hampshire do they form?—Of Maine?

Where are the White Mountains?—Name the highest peak.—Where is Mt. Katahdin?—Mars Hill?—Mt. Menadnock?—Wachusett?—Helyoke?—Tom?—Saddle Mountain?—To what system do all these belong?

To what Slope does most of New England belong?—What is the character of it: hilly, or level?—Is the flat coast-district an important feature in New England, as it is in the rest of the Atlantic Slope?—Why?—[See description of the Atlantic Slope, in the chapter on the United States.]

LAKES AND RIVERS.

In what mountain-chain do most of the rivers of the New England States rise?—To what system do most of the lakes and rivers belong?—How are the Atlantic rivers separated from the St. Lawrence System?

To what system does Lake Champlain belong?—By what river does it flow into the St. Lawrence?—Name the four rivers in Vermont which flow into Lake Champlain.—To what system do they belong?

To which system do all those lakes and rivers of the Eastern States belong, which flow southward into the Atlantic Ocean?—What river partly separates Maine from New Brunswick?—Maine from Canada?—Through what lake does the Penobscot first flow?—Into what does the Aroostook River flow?

What river receives the waters of Grand Lake, and the Schoodic Lakes?—Into what bay does the river flow?—What lake does Kennebec River drain?—In what State does the Androscoggin River rise?—What mountains turn its course eastward?

In what mountains does the Saco River rise?—What tributary does the Merrimac receive from Lake Winnipiseogee?—Through what States does the Merrimac flow?—For what is it chiefly valuable?

What river flows into the head of Narragansett Bay?—What three rivers flow into Long Island Sound?—What lake forms the source of the Connecticut River?—What States does that river separate, and through what ones does it flow?

Let each scholar describe some river in the Eastern States: stating the system to which it belongs, what is its source, what lakes it receives, what States it separates or crosses, in what direction, and into what waters it flows.

CLIMATE AND PRODUCTIONS.

[Refer to Climate and Vegetation, in the chapter on the United States.]—Describe the climate of the Eastern States.—How does it differ from that of the Southern States?—In what part of the New England States are the winters most severe: on the coast, or in the interior?—In the three northern, or the three southern States?

Is the vegetation of New England of a temperate, or of a tropical character?—What grains are raised there?—Is tobacco extensively grown?—Is cotton raised there?—Rice?—The sugar-cane?—Wheat?

What form the principal sources of wealth in the Eastern States?—Are the agricultural products raised in sufficient quantities for exportation?—What kinds of minerals are found there?

Which would be most likely to be engaged in the fisheries: Vermont, or the States on the coast?—Why?—Which States have a foreign commerce, or coast-trade?—Which are the manufacturing States?—Where are the forests most extensive?

Which State is most engaged in the lumber-trade, and in ship-building?—In which State are farming and grazing the principal sources of wealth?—Which is most engaged in manufacturing?—In commerce?—In the fisheries?

What are the principal sources of wealth in Maine?—New Hampshire?—Vermont?—Massachusetts?—Rhode Island?—Connecticut?

TOWNS.

On what river is the capital of Maine?—On what bay is the largest city?—On what river is the principal place for the shipment of lumber?—Where is Bath?—Rockland?—In what are the people of these places engaged?—Where is Lewiston?—Sace?—Biddeford?—What important business is done in these towns?—In what part of Maine are most of the towns situated?

What is the capital of New Hampshire?—On what river is it situated?—On what river is Portsmouth?—Dover and Great Falls?—What is the principal business of the two latter towns?—What manufacturing towns in New Hampshire upon the Merrimac River?—In what part of the State are the largest towns?

What is the capital of Vermont?—On what river is it situated?—What town near the mouth of that river?—On what river are Rutland and Middlebury?—What trade is carried on in the two latter towns?—On what river are Brattleboro and Norwich?—What can you tell about Bennington?—Where is it situated?

What is the capital and largest city of Massachusetts?—Where is it situated?—Which are the principal cities engaged in the whale-fishery?—In the cod and mackerel fisheries?—In cotton and woollen manufactures?—Where is Lynn?—Taunton?—Fall River?—What is the leading business in each of these places?—In what direction from Boston is Quincy?—Salem?—Cambridge?—Springfield?—Worcester?—Plymouth?—Concord?—Lexington?—Charlestown?—For what are these places noted?

Name the capitals of Rhode Island.—Which of them is at the head of Narragansett Bay?—Which is a fashionable watering-place?—Is it on an island, or on the main-land?—Where are Bristol and Smithfield?—For what are they noted?

Name the capitals of Connecticut?—On what river is Hartford?—Where is New Haven situated?—New London?—Stonington?—Norwich?—Middletown?—Which of these places contain colleges?—Which of them are on or near the coast?

MISCELLANEOUS.

What is the scale of the map of New England?—Of what use is the scale of a map?—What is the distance across the State of Vermont, from its northern to its southern boundary?—What is the distance, in a direct line, from Portland to Boston?

On what waters would you sail, to go from Hartford to New York?—From Providence to Boston?—From Bangor to Portland?—From Burlington to Plattsburg?

If a boat were set adrift in the Connecticut River, in what direction, and into what water would it float?—What two important rivers would you cross in going from Boston to Albany?

Bound each of the New England States.—Name three important towns in each.—Mention the principal rivers and mountains in each State.—Spell the name of each State.—Spell Passamaquoddy. Nantucket. Narragansett. Montauk. Katahdin. Monadnock. Wachusett. Richelieu. Missisque. Lamoille. Chesuncook. Schoodic. Kennebec. Androscoggin. Saco. Thames. Housatonic. Biddeford. Montpelier. Gloucester. Waterville. Winnipiseogee.—Give the meaning of the last name.

CHAPTER VI.

**THE MIDDLE STATES; MARYLAND, VIRGINIA,
AND THE DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA.**

I. THE Middle States are New York, Pennsylvania, New Jersey, and Delaware. Maryland, Virginia, and West Virginia, are Southern States. The District of Columbia was formerly a part of Maryland.

II. The agricultural and grazing products of this section are very important, and it possesses great advantages for manufactures and commerce.

The mines of coal and iron far exceed in value those of any other section. Manufacturing is promoted by the abundance of coal, and by the water-power of the rivers.

The commerce is immense. Numerous railroads and canals connect the Ohio River and the Great Lakes with the Atlantic coast, and bring hither the products of the Western States, which are exported through the great commercial cities of New York, Philadelphia, and Baltimore.

Commerce is also promoted by the Atlantic rivers, nearly all of which are navigable; and by Chesapeake and Delaware bays, which penetrate far into the interior.

III. Surface.—This region is crossed by the Alleghany Mountain System, which here attains its greatest breadth. The Catskill and Adirondack mountains are parts of the system.

The name of Alleghany Mountains is applied not only to the whole system, but separately to one of the principal chains. The eastern chain is called the Blue Ridge. Various local names are given to the other ranges.

IV. West of the mountains the surface is hilly, with the exception of some level tracts in New York. The country between the mountains and the sea consists of two regions: a low and generally sandy tract upon the coast, and a hilly district in the interior.

The boundary between the hilly and level country would be marked by a line drawn from New York city, through Newark, Trenton, Baltimore, Washington, Fredericksburg, Richmond, and Petersburg, to Weldon, in North Carolina; for these places are near the rapids or falls at the head of tide-water.

V. Lakes and Rivers.—These belong to three different systems: the Atlantic, Mississippi, and St. Lawrence.

VI. Owing to the hilly nature of the country, the rivers and lakes present many striking scenes of natural beauty.

The Hudson, Delaware, and Potomac rivers, force their way through narrow gorges in the eastern ridge of the Alleghanies—the mountains sometimes rising perpendicularly to the height of 1000 feet. The Highlands on the Hudson, the Delaware Water-Gap, and the passage of the Potomac at Harper's Ferry, are thus produced.

The Great Lakes pour their immense volume of water over a precipice 165 feet high, forming the unrivalled Cataract of Niagara. The Genesee River flows into Lake Ontario, over a series of magnificent falls: one of them, at Rochester, having a perpendicular descent of 97 feet. The Mohawk River and its tributaries have several beautiful cascades, of which Trenton Falls are the most celebrated.

NEW YORK.

VII. In wealth, population, and commercial importance, New York holds the first rank in the Union, and is therefore called the Empire State.

VIII. Productions.—The agricultural and grazing products, the minerals and manufactures, of New York, are all very important; but commerce is the leading interest.

Which are the Middle States?—Do Maryland and Virginia belong to the Middle or Southern States?—What are the chief resources of this section?—How is commerce promoted?—Describe the surface.—To what systems do the lakes and rivers belong?—Mention some of the scenes of natural beauty found here.

Salt is the most valuable mineral, and is found in greater quantities here than in any other State. Iron and building-stone are abundant.

The manufactures of New York now exceed in value those of any other State. The principal articles are cotton and woollen goods, and iron. Great quantities of flour are made.

IX. Towns.—Albany is the capital. No other State contains so many large towns and cities.

The city of New York is the largest on the Western Continent, and is next to London and Liverpool in commercial importance. Brooklyn is, next to New York, the largest city in the State.

The other important cities are situated on the lakes, or on the great routes of travel which centre towards the chief city. Immense quantities of produce from the Western States and Canada are received at Buffalo, Oswego, and Ogdensburg, and forwarded thence to the sea-coast.

Rochester has the most extensive flour-mills, and Syracuse the greatest salt-works, in the country. West Point is well-known as the seat of the U. S. Military Academy, and Saratoga as a fashionable watering-place.

X. There are many places in New York which have been the scenes of famous battles. Most of these are upon or near Lake Champlain and the Hudson River.

PENNSYLVANIA.

XI. Pennsylvania, the "Keystone State," is one of the wealthiest and most populous States in the Union.



PENNSYLVANIA RAILROAD BRIDGE, ACROSS THE SUSQUEHANNA RIVER.

XII. Productions.—Pennsylvania is principally a mining and manufacturing State; but it is also rich in grain and live-stock. Large quantities of wheat, rye, and Indian corn are raised here every year.

What rank does New York hold?—What is the leading interest of this State?—Name the principal cities and towns.—Which of them is most important?—Is Pennsylvania a commercial or a mining and manufacturing State?—What kinds of grain are raised in this State?

The mines of iron and coal far surpass those of any other State. The anthracite coal is found between the Delaware and Susquehanna rivers; the bituminous coal, in the western part of the State. Petroleum or coal-oil abounds in the north-western portion of the State.

Pennsylvania is the first State in the amount of iron manufactures. The other leading manufactures are cotton and woollen goods. Great quantities of flour are made.

XIII. Towns.—Harrisburg is the capital. Philadelphia is the principal city.

Philadelphia is the greatest manufacturing city in the Union. It has an extensive commerce, and is the principal port in the country for the export of coal.

Pittsburgh, surrounded by rich mines of coal and iron ore, is a great manufacturing city; and, from its position at the head of the Ohio River, commands an extensive inland commerce. The other places of most importance are Allegheny City, Lancaster, and Reading.

NEW JERSEY.

XIV. Productions.—New Jersey is principally an agricultural State, and supplies New York and Philadelphia with fruits and garden vegetables.

The manufactures of cotton, wool, leather, and India-rubber goods, are also important. The productions of New Jersey are principally sent to New York and Philadelphia.

XV. Towns.—Trenton, the capital, is celebrated for the capture of the Hessians, by Washington, in 1776.

Newark (the largest city), Paterson, New Brunswick, and Trenton, are the principal manufacturing places. Jersey City is opposite to New York, and Camden to Philadelphia. Princeton, the seat of Princeton College, was the scene of a victory gained by the Americans over the British, during the Revolution.



STATE NORMAL SCHOOL, TRENTON.

Cape May, Long Branch, and Atlantic City, are well-known resorts for sea-bathing.

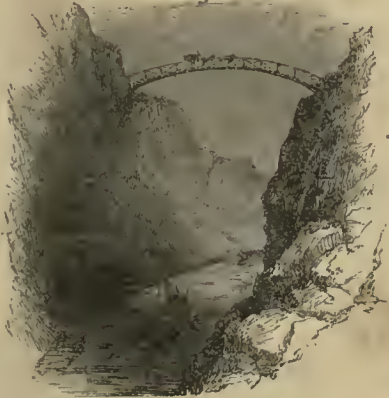
DELAWARE.

XVI. Delaware is, next to Rhode Island, the smallest State in the Union. This is the only State, the whole of which is included within the low district of the Atlantic Slope.

XVII. Productions.—Wheat and corn are the principal productions.

XVIII. Towns.—Dover is the capital. Wilmington is the largest city.

Many steamboats and other vessels are built at Wilmington; and in the vicinity there are numerous flour, powder, and paper mills.



DEEP CUT, CHESAPEAKE AND DELAWARE CANAL.

What is said of the mines of iron and coal?—Where is the anthracite and bituminous coal found?—What are the leading manufactures?—Which is the principal city?—What advantages of position has Pittsburgh?—What are the chief productions of New Jersey?—Name the large towns.—What is said of Delaware?—Name the productions.—The towns.

MARYLAND.

XIX. Maryland is divided by Chesapeake Bay into two sections; the portion east of the bay is called the Eastern Shore.

XX. Productions.—Wheat, corn, and tobacco, are the chief productions.

Iron and coal are abundant in the western districts. The manufactures of iron, cotton, and wool, are important.

XXI. Towns.—Annapolis is the capital, and contains a Naval School.

Baltimore is a great commercial and manufacturing city. Ship-building is an important branch of industry.

Cumberland is noted for its coal-trade. Frederick City and Hagerstown are flourishing places.



BATTLE MONUMENT, BALTIMORE.

DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA.

XXII. The District of Columbia is under the immediate government of Congress. It contains the cities of Washington and Georgetown, the former of which is the capital of the United States.

VIRGINIA.

XXIII. Virginia was settled in 1607, and being the earliest of the English Colonies, was styled the "Ancient Dominion."

XXIV. Productions.—Tobacco, wheat, and corn, are the most important productions. Iron and coal are the principal minerals.

XXV. Towns.—Richmond is the capital, and the principal commercial city. It has numerous flour-mills, and many tobacco factories.

Norfolk has one of the best harbors on the Atlantic coast. Yorktown is famous for the surrender of the British Army to Gen. Washington, in the year 1781. This event put an end to the war. Mount Vernon was the residence of Washington.

WEST VIRGINIA.

XXVI. West Virginia was admitted into the Union as a State, December 31st, 1862. It lies between the Alleghany Mountains on the East, and the Ohio and Big Sandy rivers on the West, and comprises about a third part of the old State of Virginia.



HARPER'S FERRY.

XXVII. Productions.—In climate, soil, and productions, it resembles the States of Ohio and Kentucky. Coal, iron, and salt abound. Petroleum exists in large quantities in the region adjacent to the Ohio River.

XXVIII. Towns.—Wheeling, the capital, is situated on the left bank of the Ohio River, which is here crossed by a handsome suspension bridge. Charleston, on the Great Kanawha River, is noted for its salt works. Parkersburg and Point Pleasant are smaller towns. Harper's Ferry, at the junction of the Potomac and Shenandoah rivers, is a well-known place.

By what Bay is Maryland divided?—What are the principal productions?—Name the important towns.—What is said of the District of Columbia?—Why is Virginia called the Ancient Dominion?—What are the most important productions? Name the capital, and the largest towns.—Describe the situation of West Virginia?—Name the large towns.

MAP OF THE MIDDLE STATES WITH MARYLAND & VIRGINIA.

STATUTE MILES 69.2 TO A DEGREE
Scale 65 miles to an inch



QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF THE MIDDLE STATES.

POSITION.

What country lies north of this section?—What three States and ocean upon the east?—What State upon the south?—What two States on the west?

AREA.

Name the three largest of these States.—The three smallest.—Which is the largest State in this section?—The smallest?—How many States of the size of Massachusetts would Virginia make?—How do New York and Pennsylvania compare in area?

OUTLINE.

What ocean washes the shores of this section?—What two bays indent the coast?—What island is south of Long Island Sound?—Where is Staten Island?—What two capes at the entrance of Delaware Bay?—Of Chesapeake Bay?—What two States have no sea-coast?—What States border upon the lakes?

SURFACE.

What mountain-system crosses this region?—In what direction does it extend?—What part of New Jersey does it cross?—What part of New York?—In what part of New York does it cross the Hudson River, and thence extend into New England?

Is the name of Alleghany Mountains applied to the whole system, or to a separate range?—What is the most eastern range called?—Name the chains in Pennsylvania, beginning at the east.—In Virginia.—Name the chains in New York.

Describe the surface of this section, west of the mountains.—Between the mountains and the sea.—Draw the boundary line between the hilly and the low country.—Where is the Valley of Virginia.

LAKES AND RIVERS.

To what three systems do the lakes and rivers of this section belong?—In what mountains do most of the rivers rise?—Why do the rivers present so many picturesque scenes?

To what system does the Ohio, with its tributaries, belong?—What gulf do its waters finally reach?—What two rivers unite to form the Ohio?—Describe the course of the Alleghany River.—Of the Monongahela.—Name the tributaries of the Ohio in West Virginia.

Into what gulf do the waters of the St. Lawrence and its tributaries flow?—By what river does Lake Erie flow into Lake Ontario?—Over what Falls?—What can you tell about this cataract?

What three rivers flow into Lake Ontario?—What is there interesting connected with the Genesee River?—The Oswego River drains a chain of lakes: name the three principal ones.—By what river does Lake Champlain flow into the St. Lawrence?—Into what lake does Lake George flow?—What river flows into Lake Champlain?

In what general direction do most of the rivers of the Atlantic System flow?—Through what mountains do many of them pass?—In what mountains does the Hudson River rise?—In what direction does it flow?—What tributary does it receive?—What States does the Hudson separate, in the lower part of its course?

Where are the Raritan and Passaic rivers?—By what river is Pennsylvania separated from New Jersey, and partially from New York?—In what State does it rise?—Into what bay does it flow?—What tributaries does it receive in Pennsylvania?

What river empties into the head of Chesapeake Bay?—In what State does its north branch rise?—The west branch?—What tributary does the Susquehanna receive?

Describe the Potomac River.—In what direction do its two largest branches flow?—On which side of the Blue Ridge do the York and Rappahannock rise?—The James River?—What two rivers of Virginia flow through North Carolina into Albemarle Sound?

Where are the Falls of Niagara?—At what city is one of the Falls of the Genesee?—On what river are Trenton Falls?—Where are the Highlands of the Hudson?—Where is the Delaware Water-Gap?—Harper's Ferry?—The Genesee and Alleghany rivers rise very near each other: if a log were thrown into the Genesee, into what gulf would it drift?—If into the Alleghany River?

What rivers of this section does Lake Ontario receive?—Delaware Bay?—Chesapeake Bay?—Let each scholar describe some river, in the manner proposed in the questions on the New England States—mentioning, also, whatever scene of natural beauty may be connected with it.

CLIMATE AND PRODUCTIONS.

Does New England, or this section, lie farther south?—Which, then, has the warmer climate?—Which has the warmest climate: New York, or Virginia?—Why?

Where are the winters colder: on the mountains, or low-lands?—In the interior, or near the coast?—Which State is in the same latitudes as New England?—Which, then, has a climate most nearly resembling that of New England?

Are the farming and grazing products more, or less, important in this section, than in New England?—These States lie in the northern and middle parts of our country, what, then, are the principal agricultural productions?—[Refer to Vegetation, in the chapter on the United States.]

How do these States compare with other sections in the amount of coal and iron obtained?—Between what rivers is the anthracite coal region of Pennsylvania?—In what part of the State is the bituminous coal region?—In what part of Maryland is the coal-field of that State?

What are the principal productions of New York?—What is the leading interest?—What are the principal productions of Pennsylvania?—Of New Jersey?—Delaware?—Maryland?—Virginia?

Which is the first commercial State in the Union?—Why is New York called the Empire State?—Which is the first State in the Union in its mines of coal and iron?—In the amount of iron manufactures?—What State supplies New York and Philadelphia with garden vegetables?—What minerals are found in West Virginia?

TOWNS.

What State contains the greatest number of large towns?—Where is the capital of New York?—The principal city?—The next in size?—Where are the other important cities of this State situated?—What can you say of the city of New York?—To what do Buffalo, Oswego, and Ogdensburg owe their prosperity?—Where are they situated?—Where is Rochester?—Syracuse?—West Point?—Saratoga?—For what are they noted?

Where is the capital of Pennsylvania?—The principal city?—Pittsburgh?—Allegheny City?—Lancaster?—Reading?—What can you say of Philadelphia?—What advantages has Pittsburgh from its position?

Where is Trenton?—Newark?—Paterson?—New Brunswick?—Jersey City?—Camden?—Princeton?—Cape Island?—Atlantic City?—Which of these are noted for battles in the Revolutionary War?—Which of them are manufacturing towns?

Where is Dover?—Wilmington?—Annapolis?—Baltimore?—Georgetown?—Washington?—Richmond?—Norfolk?—Wheeling?—Charleston?—Yorktown?—Mount Vernon?—What can you say of each of these places?

MISCELLANEOUS.

From what city would you ship a cargo of coal to Boston?—Of tobacco?—At what ports may a New England merchant purchase a cargo of grain?—Of flour?—Of iron manufactures?—Why does he leave his own section to obtain these articles?

What is the scale of this map?—What is the distance in a direct line of Richmond from Philadelphia?—Of Wheeling from New York?—Of Syracuse from Washington?—To which of the three Atlantic cities of New York, Philadelphia, and Baltimore, is Buffalo nearest, measuring the distance in a direct line?

On which bank of the Delaware is Philadelphia: the right or left?—Is Washington on the right or left bank of the Potomac?—If you wished to go from Washington to Mt. Vernon, would you cross the river?—On which bank of the river, then, is Mt. Vernon?

On what waters would a vessel sail, to go from New York to Philadelphia?—From Philadelphia to Richmond?—From Baltimore to Washington?—On what river would you sail, to go from Pittsburgh to Wheeling?—What lake would you cross, in going from Oswego to Toronto?

Bound each State of this section.—Name three important towns in each.—Give the principal rivers and mountains in each State.—Spell Philadelphia. Pennsylvania. Chesapeake. Catskill. Adirondack. Genesec. Annapolis. Monongahela. Alleghany. Seneca. Shenandoah. Oneida. Passaic. Susquehanna. Schuylkill.

CHAPTER VII.

THE SOUTHERN STATES, ARKANSAS AND TENNESSEE.

I. THE section described in this chapter includes most of the Southern States; together with Arkansas and Tennessee, which are Western States.

The Southern States are Maryland, Virginia, West Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, Florida, Alabama, Mississippi, Louisiana, and Texas. Maryland, Virginia, and West Virginia are described in connection with the Middle States; and Texas, with the Territories.

II. The Coast is low, and, in general, is either sandy or marshy. It is lined throughout with low and sandy islands, and contains few good harbors.

III. Surface.—A part of this section belongs to the Atlantic Slope; the remainder, to the Mississippi Valley.

The surface of the Atlantic Slope in these States resembles that of the Middle States. The boundary between the hilly and level country would be marked by a line drawn from Weldon, through Fayetteville, Augusta, Columbus, Wetumpka, and Tuscaloosa, to Aberdeen.

That part of this section included within the Mississippi Valley is, in general, very level. The only hilly regions of any importance are in Tennessee and Alabama, near the base of the Alleghany Mountains.

IV. Rivers belong to two systems: the Atlantic, and the Mississippi. They afford extensive navigation for steamboats.

The Valley of the Mississippi is, next to that of the Amazon, the largest in the world. The river rises in Lake Itasea, in Minnesota, and, after a course of 2800 miles, flows into the Gulf of Mexico by several mouths. It is navigable to the Falls of St. Anthony, a distance of 2200 miles.

In Louisiana, embankments, called *levees*, are built on both sides of the river, to prevent the waters from overflowing the land. Yet the river sometimes breaks through these defences, causing immense damage to the country.

V. Productions.—This is chiefly an agricultural region. Cotton is the great staple production, and forms the principal article of export.

The climate and soil of this section are particularly favorable to the cultivation of cotton. The value of the quantity exported in the year ending June 30th, 1860, exceeded \$190,000,000. Corn is raised in all the States. Rice is produced in the marshy districts of the coast, especially in South Carolina and Georgia.

Tobacco is an important product in Tennessee and North Carolina; and sugar, in Louisiana. The extensive pine forests, in the sandy parts of the coast-district, furnish lumber and naval stores; the latter consist of turpentine, resin, tar, and pitch, made from the sap of the trees.

The mineral wealth of this region is also very great. The coal-fields of North Carolina and Alabama are extensive, though as yet they are little worked. Copper is abundant in North Carolina, iron in Tennessee and North Carolina, and considerable quantities of gold are found in North Carolina and Georgia.

VI. The Commerce of this section is very extensive, and is carried on mainly through New Orleans, Mobile, Charleston, and Savannah.

VII. The Inhabitants are chiefly of English descent, except in Louisiana, where there are many French, and in portions of Texas which have been settled principally by Germans.

The negroes are much more numerous in this portion of the Union than in any other, and perform most of the labor.

Which are the Southern States?—What States form the section described in this chapter?—Describe the coast of this section.—The surface of that part of it belonging to the Atlantic Slope.—The Mississippi Valley.—To what two systems do the lakes and rivers belong?—What is the principal production of this region?—Name some of the other productions.—Through what cities is most of the foreign commerce carried on?—Of what descent are the inhabitants?—By whom is the labor chiefly performed?

NORTH CAROLINA.

VIII. Productions.—North Carolina derives her chief wealth from her pine forests: lumber and naval stores being the principal exports.

Cotton, corn, tobacco, wheat, and rice, are also important productions.

IX. Towns.—Raleigh is the capital. Wilmington is the principal city. Beaufort has the best harbor in the State. Fayetteville, on Cape Fear River, is a flourishing place.



STATE CAPITOL, AT RALEIGH.

SOUTH CAROLINA.

X. South Carolina is, next to Maryland, the smallest of the Southern States; but, in proportion to its size, it is one of the most populous and wealthy.

On account of the abundance of Palmetto trees growing in this State, it is often called the Palmetto State.

XI. Productions.—More rice is raised in South Carolina than in any other State, and the celebrated sea-island cotton is extensively grown on the islands along the coast. These articles, with lumber and naval stores, are the principal exports.

XII. Towns.—Columbia is the capital; Charleston, the largest city. More rice is exported from the latter city than from any other in the union. Georgetown, Camden, and Cheraw, are the other most important places.



THE PALMETTO TREE.

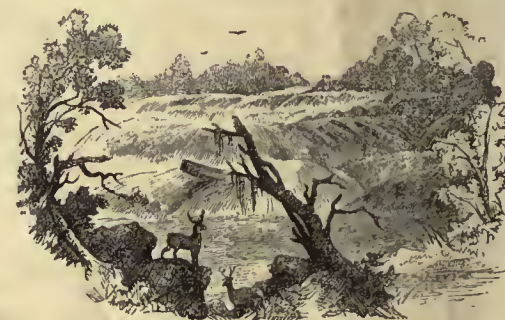
GEORGIA.

XIII. Georgia is second in population among the Southern States. It was the last settled of the thirteen original States.

XIV. Productions.—Georgia produces cotton and corn largely, is second in the amount of rice, and first in sweet potatoes.

The principal exports consist of cotton, rice, lumber, and naval stores.

XV. Towns.—Milledgeville is the capital; Savannah, the principal city. Augusta, Columbus, and Macon, are next in importance.



FALLS OF TOWALIGO.

From what does North Carolina derive her chief wealth?—What are the principal exports?—Name the capital.—The other important places.—What is South Carolina often called?—Why?—What are the principal productions?—Name the capital.—The largest city.—What rank does Georgia hold among the Southern States in population?—What rank in the production of rice?—Sweet potatoes?—Name other productions.—What are the principal exports?—Name the capital. The other principal places.

FLORIDA.

XVI. Productions — Cotton, rice, sugar, lumber, and naval stores, are the principal productions. The live-oak is of great value for ship-building.



A SCENE IN FLORIDA.

XVII. Towns.—Tallahassee is the capital. Key West is the largest town.

Key West is situated upon an island of coral formation, south-west of the main-land. It is the most southern town

in the United States, and has an excellent harbor.

Pensacola contains a United States Navy Yard. St. Augustine is the oldest town in the Union.

ALABAMA.

XVIII. Productions.—Alabama is one of the leading cotton-growing States. Indian corn, sweet potatoes, rice, and lumber, are the other principal productions.



STEAMBOAT LOADING WITH COTTON.

XIX. Towns.—Montgomery is the capital; Mobile is the largest city. Tuscaloosa contains the State University.

Mobile is second only to New Orleans in the shipment of cotton. It exports not only the productions of Alabama, but a large portion of those of Mississippi.

MISSISSIPPI.

XX. Productions.—Mississippi ranks first in cotton. Indian corn, rice, and sweet potatoes, are the other principal productions.

The productions of this State are chiefly forwarded for export to New Orleans and Mobile.



A COTTON FIELD.

XXI. Towns.—Jackson is the capital. The other principal towns are Natchez, Vicksburg, Aberdeen, Columbus, and Holly Springs.

What are the principal productions of Florida?—Name the capital.—The other important towns.—What rank has Alabama as a cotton-growing State?—Name the capital.—The largest city.—What of the productions of Mississippi?—Through what cities are its productions chiefly exported?—Name the capital.—The other important places.

LOUISIANA.

XXII. Louisiana was settled by the French, and purchased of them by the United States in 1803.

The chief productions are sugar and cotton. Nearly all the sugar made from the sugar-cane in the United States is produced in Louisiana.



A SUGAR PLANTATION.

XXIII. Towns.—Baton Rouge is the capital; New Orleans, the largest city.

New Orleans is the greatest cotton-mart in the world, and exports not only the productions of Louisiana, but of a considerable part of the Mississippi Valley. The city is built upon a bend in the Mississippi River, and is therefore called the Crescent City.

ARKANSAS.

XXIV. Productions.—The staple productions are Indian corn, cotton, and live-stock.

XXV. Towns.—Little Rock is the capital, and the largest town in the State.

The Hot Springs of Arkansas are regarded as a great natural curiosity. They are about eighty in number, situated fifty miles southwest of Little Rock, and are much resorted to by invalids.



STEAMBOAT TAKING IN WOOD.

TENNESSEE.

XXVI. The Cumberland Mountains and Tennessee River divide the State into East, Middle, and West Tennessee.

XXVII. Productions.—Indian corn, cotton, and tobacco, are the leading productions. The iron mines are also of great value.

XXVIII. Towns.—Nashville, the largest city of Middle Tennessee, is the capital.

Memphis is on the Mississippi River. It is the largest city on that river between St. Louis and New Orleans. Knoxville is the principal town in East Tennessee.



STATE CAPITOL, AT NASHVILLE.

By whom was Louisiana settled?—What are the most important productions?—Name the capital.—Why is New Orleans called the Crescent City?—What are the staple productions of Arkansas?—Name the capital.—What natural curiosity in this State?—Name the three divisions of Tennessee.—The chief productions.—The capital, and other towns.



MAP OF THE
SOUTHERN STATES
WITH
ARKANSAS & TENNESSEE.

STATUTE MILES 69.2 TO A DEGREE
Scale 300 miles to an inch

GULF OF MEXICO

ATLANTIC OCEAN

QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF THE SOUTHERN STATES.

POSITION.

By what three States is this section bounded on the north? — By what ocean on the east? — By what gulf on the south? — By what State and territory on the west?

Name the States bordering on the Atlantic Ocean, beginning with the most northerly. — Name these which border on the Gulf of Mexico. — The four States bordering on the Mississippi River.

AREA.

Which is the largest State of the section represented upon the map? — Which is the smallest? — Which of the Middle States has about the same area as Tennessee? — About how many States of the size of Massachusetts would Georgia make?

OUTLINE.

Describe the general character of the coast of this section. — Are good harbors numerous? — What reason can you assign for this fact? — What peninsula between the Atlantic Ocean and the Gulf of Mexico? — What is its most southern cape?

What islands are south and south-west of the peninsula of Florida? — What islands (forming a part of the West Indies) are south-east of this peninsula? — What three capes on the coast of North Carolina? — Where is Cape Canaveral? — Cape St. Blas?

What two sounds on the coast of North Carolina? — Where is Tampa Bay? — Apalachee Bay? — Mobile Bay? — Where is Lake Borgne? — Lake Pontchartrain? — The water of both these lakes is salt, and they are directly connected with the Gulf of Mexico: do you think they are properly called lakes? — Why?

SURFACE.

To what two sections do these States belong? — What is the boundary-line between the hilly and level country of the Atlantic Slope? — Where is Okefnokee Swamp? — The Everglades? — Are these swamps in the low-land or high-land districts?

What parts of North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia, are mountainous? — What part of Tennessee? — Of Alabama? — To what system do these mountains belong? — What is the general character of the surface of the Mississippi Valley?

RIVERS AND LAKES.

To what two systems do the rivers and lakes of this section belong? — All the rivers of this section flowing into the Atlantic Ocean, and all those east of the Mississippi flowing into the Gulf of Mexico, belong to the Atlantic System: state the general direction of those flowing into the Atlantic. — Into the Gulf of Mexico.

What two rivers flow into Albemarle Sound? — Into Pamlico Sound? — Name the other principal river of North Carolina. — Which are the two largest rivers of South Carolina? — Name the river which forms a part of the boundary between South Carolina and Georgia. — Between Georgia and Florida.

Name the rivers flowing into the Atlantic, between the Savannah and St. Mary's. — What two rivers unite to form the Altamaha? — In what State is the St. John's River? — Does it flow in the same general direction as the other rivers of the Atlantic Slope, or in a different one? — Where is the Suwanee River? — The Apalachicola? — What two rivers unite to form the Apalachicola? — Which of these constitutes a part of the boundary between Georgia and Alabama?

Where is the Mobile River? — Into what bay does it flow? — What two rivers unite to form the Mobile? — Which of them rises in Mississippi? — What rivers unite to form the other? — Of what river is the Black Warrior a tributary? — The Cahawba? — What river flows into Pensacola Bay? — What two rivers of Mississippi flow into the Gulf of Mexico?

What two rivers unite to form the Tennessee? — Describe the course of this river. — Of the Cumberland. — Into what do these two rivers flow? — What tributaries has the Mississippi in West Tennessee? — What two in Mississippi? — What are the three tributaries of the Mississippi in Arkansas? — The principal one in Louisiana? — Into what river does the Washita flow? — What river forms a part of the boundary between Louisiana and Texas? — Where is Lake Okechobee? — Lake George? — Catahoula Lake?

PRODUCTIONS.

What are the most important productions of these States: agricultural, manufacturing, or mineral? — Name the great staple. — What grain is abundant? — Where is rice produced? — Tobacco? — Sugar? — Where are the pine forests? — What articles are obtained from the pine-trees?

Which State produces the greatest amount of cotton? — Of rice? — Sugar? — What kind of timber, for ship-building, is obtained in Florida?

What can you say of the mineral wealth of this section? — Where is coal abundant? — Iron? — Copper? — Where is gold found? — From what cities are the products of these States chiefly exported?

TOWNS.

Name the capital of North Carolina. — On what river is Wilmington? — Fayetteville? — Where is Beaufort?

What is the capital of South Carolina? — Where is the largest city? — Where is Georgetown? — Camden? — Cheraw?

What is the capital of Georgia? — Where is the principal city? — On what river is Augusta? — Columbus? — Macon?

In what part of Florida is the capital? — Is Key West on an island, or on the main-land? — Where is Pensacola? — St. Augustine?

On what river is the capital of Alabama? — Where is the largest city? — Tuscaloosa? — Wetumpka?

Name the capital of Mississippi. — On what river are Natchez and Vicksburg? — Aberdeen and Columbus? — In what part of the State is Holly Springs?

On what river is the capital and largest city of Louisiana? — What can you say of New Orleans? — Name some of the articles exported from that city.

On what river is the capital of Arkansas? — Where are the Hot Springs of Arkansas? — What can you say of them?

In what part of Tennessee, and on what river, is the capital? — Name the principal city of West Tennessee. — Where is it situated? — Name the largest town of East Tennessee.

MISCELLANEOUS.

The following are the most important cities of this section: describe their situation, and tell what you know about them: New Orleans, Charleston, Mobile, Savannah, Nashville, Memphis. — Let each scholar describe the position of some town, and tell what he can about it.

In what mountain-system do most of the rivers of this section, flowing into the Atlantic, rise? — What rivers of the Mississippi System have their source in the same mountains? — Why do they flow in opposite directions?

Are Tennessee and Arkansas considered Southern or Western States? — Name all the Southern States. — By what class is most of the labor performed in the Southern States? — How does the climate of this section compare with that of other parts of the Union? — Do the people of New Orleans obtain ice in their own State, or do they send North for it?

In which State are many of the inhabitants of French descent? — Which is the Palmetto State? — What are the levees in Louisiana? — Why is New Orleans called the Crescent City? — In what State are the Hot Springs?

By what river does New Orleans receive the productions of the Mississippi Valley? — With what would you freight a vessel at New Orleans for Liverpool? — Ship a cargo from Charleston to Boston: what articles would you send? — What articles would you purchase for a return cargo?

To what cities of this section would you send a vessel to load with lumber and naval stores? — With rice? — Sugar? — Cotton? — What rivers would you ascend, to go from New Orleans to Little Rock? — On what rivers would you sail, going from Aberdeen to Mobile?

Go by water from Nashville to Charleston, and name all the different bodies of water on which you would sail. — What is the distance, in a direct line, from Charleston to Memphis? — From Savannah to Nashville? — From Augusta to New Orleans?

Bound each of these States. — Name three important towns in each. — Mention the principal rivers and mountains. — Spell Albemarle, Pamlico, Hatteras, Apalachee, Pensacola, Borgne, Tennessee, Arkansas, Washita, Pontchartrain, Tallapoosa, Savannah, Raleigh, Fayetteville.

CHAPTER VIII.

THE WESTERN STATES.

I. THE section described in this chapter includes the States of Kentucky, Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, Wisconsin, Missouri, Iowa, and Minnesota.

The nine States above mentioned, with Arkansas, Tennessee, California, Oregon, Kansas, Nevada, and Nebraska, comprise the Western States.

II. Surface.—This section belongs to the Central Plain of the United States, and is generally level. The only mountains are a branch of the Alleghany System, in Kentucky.

The greater part of Wisconsin and Illinois, and much of the country west of the Mississippi River, consists of prairie land.

III. Lakes and Rivers.—The principal lakes and rivers are the Mississippi River, and its numerous tributaries, and the Lakes of the St. Lawrence Basin.

The Red River of the North, between Minnesota and Dakota, flows through a chain of small lakes into Lake Winnipeg, in British America.

IV. Productions.—This is generally a farming and grazing country. The mines are also very rich.

It is the great grain-district of the United States, and the larger part of the wheat and corn exported from the country is raised here. Tobacco and hemp are important products in Kentucky and Missouri. There are extensive tracts of timber-land in Michigan, Wisconsin, and Minnesota.

Great numbers of cattle and swine are reared in this section, and beef and pork are among the most important exports.

The beds of coal are of immense extent, though not yet fully worked. The principal building-stone is limestone. Iron is abundant in Missouri, Michigan, and Ohio. The copper-mines on the shores of Lake Superior are of great value, and nearly all the lead found in the United States comes from Illinois, Wisconsin, Iowa, and Missouri.

V. Inhabitants.—A large part of the population of this section is composed of emigrants from the older States, and from Europe. Of the latter, the Irish and Germans are the most numerous.

KENTUCKY.

VI. Kentucky was formerly a part of Virginia. It was the first Western State admitted into the Union.



THE MAMMOTH CAVE.

This State presents a great variety of objects of interest to tourists. Among them is the Mammoth Cave, one of the most remarkable caverns in the world. It is said to have been explored a distance of ten miles from its mouth.

VII. Productions.—Kentucky is second only to Virginia in the production of tobacco. Large quantities of Indian corn, wheat, and oats, and also of hemp and flax, are raised here. The coal

mines and salt springs are very valuable.

VIII. Towns.—Frankfort is the capital. Louisville is the largest city, and the principal seat of commerce for the State.

Name the Western States.—Which of them are described in this chapter?—Describe the surface.—To what systems do the lakes and rivers belong?—What are the most important productions?—Name those (mentioned in the text) which are exported.—Whence came the inhabitants?—What remarkable curiosity in Kentucky?—Name the productions.

The rapids in the Ohio, at Louisville, are avoided by a canal two and a half miles long, cut through the solid rock.

The other most important cities are Covington, Lexington, and Newport.

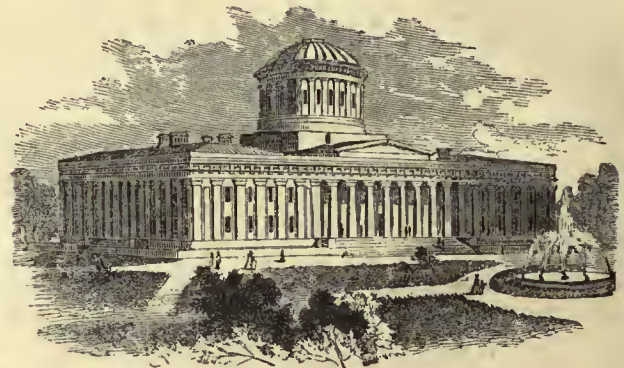
OHIO.

IX. Ohio is the most populous of the Western States, and ranks, in this respect, as the third State in the Union.

X. Productions.—More wine is made in Ohio than in any other State. It is also among the first in the production of wheat, corn, and wool.

The grazing products are very important; and great numbers of horses, cattle, and swine, are sent to the Atlantic States.

XI. Towns.—Columbus is the capital. Cincinnati is the largest city.



STATE CAPITOL, AT COLUMBUS.

Cincinnati (the Queen City) is the largest city west of the Alleghany Mountains. It is very extensively engaged in commerce and manufactures. The quantity of pork packed here is very large.

The other principal cities are situated on the great lakes, and on the Ohio River (which forms the southern boundary of the State), or at the junction of the various lines of railroads. Among these are Cleveland, Toledo, Sandusky, Dayton, Zanesville, and Steubenville.

INDIANA.

XII. Indiana is the smallest of the Western States, but is one of the most fertile and enterprising.

XIII. Productions.—The principal of these are the various grains and live-stock. In the southern part of the State there are extensive beds of coal, and considerable deposits of iron ore. These mines, however, are not yet extensively worked.

XIV. Towns.—Indianapolis, in the central part of the State, is the capital.



DEAF AND DUMB ASYLUM, AT INDIANAPOLIS.

The other principal places are New Albany, Evansville, and Madison, on the Ohio River. Terre Haute and Lafayette, on the Wabash River; Fort Wayne, on the Maumee; and Richmond, in the eastern part of the State, are also important towns.

What is the capital?—The most important commercial city?—What rank does Ohio hold in population?—In the production of wine?—Of wheat, corn, and wool?—Name the capital.—Describe Cincinnati.—Name some of the other important towns.—What is said about Indiana?—Name the most important productions.—The capital, and other towns.

ILLINOIS.

XV. Illinois is noted for the great rapidity of its growth. It consists mainly of prairie-land, and is one of the most fertile States in the Union.



ILLINOIS CENTRAL RAILROAD DEPOT, CHICAGO.

XVI. Productions.—Illinois far surpasses every other State in the production of wheat and Indian corn. Other grains are also extensively raised. The chief minerals are lead and coal.

XVII. Towns.—Springfield is the capital. Chicago is the principal city.

Chicago (the Garden City) is the greatest grain port in the world. Galena is situated among the lead mines. Peoria, Quincy, and Alton, are among the other most important places.

MICHIGAN.

XVII. Michigan consists of two peninsulas: a northern, and a southern one.



MONTREAL RIVER FALLS.

XIX. Productions.—Wheat and other grains, and lumber, are the leading products of the lower, or southern peninsula; copper and iron, of the upper one.

XX. Towns.—Lansing is the capital. Detroit is the largest city.

Detroit (the City of the Straits) is finely situated for commerce, and is one of the most important cities in the West. Ann Arbor contains the State

University. The State Normal School is located at Ypsilanti.

WISCONSIN.

XXI. Wisconsin was admitted into the Union, as a State, in 1848.



DALLES OF THE RIVER ST. CROIX.

XXII. Productions.—Wheat and corn are the most valuable agricultural products. Lumber is abundant in the northern part of the State. Lead is the chief mineral.

XXIII. Towns.—Madison, beautifully situated among a group of small lakes, is the capital. Milwaukee is the most important city.

Racine, Kenosha, and Janesville, are also thriving towns.

MISSOURI.

XXIV. Missouri is the most populous State west of the Mississippi River.

XXV. Productions.—Wheat, corn, tobacco, and hemp, are the most important productions. The mines of iron, lead, and coal, are of immense value, though not yet extensively worked.

XXVI. Towns.—Jefferson City is the capital; St. Louis, the largest city.



PUBLIC HIGH SCHOOL, ST. LOUIS.

St. Louis is the great centre of trade for the Upper Mississippi and its tributaries. It is also the depot for the fur-trade of the Rocky Mountains.

St. Joseph, Lexington, and Booneville, are important places.

IOWA.

XXVII. Iowa was admitted into the Union in 1845.

XXVIII. Productions.—Wheat and corn are the chief agricultural productions. Lead and coal are the principal minerals.



BRIDGE ACROSS THE MISSISSIPPI RIVER, AT ROCK ISLAND.

XXIX. Towns.—Des Moines is the capital. Dubuque is the largest city in the mining district.

Burlington, Keokuk, Muscatine, Davenport, and Iowa City, are the other most important places.

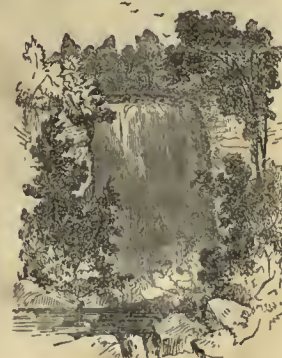
MINNESOTA.

XXX. By an Act of Congress, passed in 1857, Minnesota was authorized to adopt a State Constitution.

XXXI. Productions.—Wheat, corn, and potatoes, are the most important productions. Great quantities of lumber are cut in Minnesota.

XXXII. Towns.—St. Paul is the capital, and the largest city. It is nine miles below the Falls of St. Anthony, the head of navigation of the Mississippi River.

St. Anthony, Minneapolis, Stillwater, Winona, St. Peter's, and Hastings, are the other most important towns.



FALLS OF MINNEHAHA.

Of what does Illinois mainly consist?—Name the chief productions.—The capital, and principal towns.—Of what does Michigan consist?—What are the productions of the southern peninsula?—Of the northern one?—Name the capital.—The other important places.—What are the productions of Wisconsin?—Name the capital.—The chief towns.

What are the leading productions of Missouri?—Name the capital.—The largest city.—The other important towns.—When was Iowa admitted into the Union?—What are its principal productions?—Name the capital, and the largest towns.—What are the productions of Minnesota?—Name the capital, and other towns of considerable size.

MAP OF NINE OF THE WESTERN STATES

STATUTE MILES 69.2 TO A DEGREE.
10 20 30 40 50 100 150
Scale 100 miles to an inch.



QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF NINE OF THE WESTERN STATES.

POSITION.

Name the three northern States of this section.—The three eastern.—The two southern.—The three western.—What country is north of this section?—What three States are east of it?—What two States south?

Name the six States which border on the great lakes.—The four States bordering on the Ohio River?—What States border on the Mississippi?—Of what two States does the Missouri River form a part of the western boundary?

AREA.

Name the largest State of this section.—The smallest.—Which States are larger than New York?—Which are smaller than Pennsylvania?—How many States, of the size of New Jersey, would Missouri make?

SURFACE.

What is the general character of the surface of this region?—Where is the only mountain-range?—Of what system is this chain a part?

LAKES AND RIVERS.

To what two systems do the principal lakes and rivers belong?—In which of these river-basins is the larger part of this section situated?—Into what lakes do the rivers of Michigan flow?—In which basin, then, is Michigan situated: that of the Mississippi, or of the St. Lawrence?—Into what do all the rivers of Iowa and Missouri flow?—In what basin, then, are these States?

By what river does Lake Superior flow into Lake Huron?—In what direction do the waters of Lake Michigan flow?—Through what strait?—Does Lake Huron flow in the same, or in an opposite direction, from Lake Michigan?—Through what waters would a vessel sail, in going from Lake Huron to Lake Erie?

Name the lakes of which the following bays are a part: Green Bay.—Saginaw Bay.—Keweenaw Bay.—Georgian Bay.—Grand Traverse Bay.—Thunder Bay.—Through what river do the waters of the great lakes flow into the ocean?—Name three rivers of this section flowing into the great lakes, and the State in which each is situated.

What is the general course of the Ohio River?—Into what does it flow?—Name its four tributaries from the north.—Which of these forms a part of the boundary between Indiana and Illinois?—Name the seven tributaries of the Ohio flowing into it from the south.—Which of these forms a part of the boundary between Virginia and Kentucky?

The Mississippi River has its source in Lake Itasca: where is this lake?—Which is the principal tributary of the Mississippi in Minnesota?—What tributary of the Mississippi forms a part of the boundary between Minnesota and Wisconsin?—Name the rivers of Wisconsin flowing into the Mississippi.—Those of Iowa.—Of Illinois.

What is the general course of the Missouri River?—Across what State does it flow?—Into what river?—Name its principal branches in Missouri.—What river on the western border of Minnesota flows into Lake Winnipeg?

CLIMATE AND PRODUCTIONS.

Does the climate of this section most nearly resemble that of the Eastern and Middle States, or that of the Southern States?—Which is the colder country: the northern, or southern peninsula of Michigan?—Minnesota or Missouri?—Wisconsin or Kentucky?

What are the most important grains raised in this section?—In what States are tobacco and hemp produced?—Where are the timber-lands?—For what purpose are the cattle and swine chiefly reared?

What mines are found in this region?—Where is iron obtained?—Copper?—Lead?—What can you say about the coal-beds?—What is the principal building-stone?—Which State in this section raises the most tobacco?—Which holds the first rank in the Union in the production of wine?—Of wheat and Indian corn?

What rank among the United States has Kentucky as a tobacco-growing State?—What do you understand by live-stock?—To what part of the Union are many horses, cattle, and swine, sent from this section?

TOWNS.

On what river is the capital of Kentucky?—The largest city?—What important places are opposite Cincinnati?—Where is Lexington?

On what river is the capital of Ohio?—The largest city?—What important places are situated on the shores of Lake Erie?—On what river is Dayton?—Steubenville?—Zanesville?

Name the capital of Indiana.—The principal places situated on the Ohio River.—Those on the Wabash.—The one on the Maumee.—Where is Richmond?

Name the capital of Illinois.—On what lake is the largest city?—Name the river on which Peoria is situated.—Quincy.—Alton.—In what part of the State is Galena?

Name the capital of Michigan.—On what river is the largest city?—What can you say about Ann Arbor?—Ypsilanti?

Where is the capital of Wisconsin?—The largest city?—On what lake are Racine and Kenosha?—On what river is Janesville?

On what river is the capital of Missouri?—The largest city?—The other principal places mentioned in the text?

What is the capital of Iowa?—Name the river on which each of the following places is situated: Burlington.—Keokuk.—Muscatine.—Davenport.—Iowa City.

What is the capital of Minnesota?—On what river is it situated?—Describe the position of the other principal places mentioned in the text.

MISCELLANEOUS.

The following are the most important cities of this section; describe their situation, and tell what you know about them: Cincinnati. St. Louis. Chicago. Louisville. Milwaukee. Cleveland. Detroit.—Let each scholar describe the position of some town, and tell what he can about it.

A party in Cleveland chartered a steamboat to visit the Pictured Rocks of Lake Superior: name the bodies of water through which they passed.—What is the route of a person who goes by water from Chicago to the copper-region of Lake Superior?—On what rivers will you sail, to go from Cincinnati to the Falls of St. Anthony?

A party in St. Louis wish to visit the Mammoth Cave: what route shall they take?—What rivers will you ascend, to go from St. Louis to Council Bluffs?—What lake is very near Lake Travers?—After a heavy rain, the country between these lakes is often overflowed, so that boats can pass from one to the other; then an Indian with his canoe might make the passage from Hudson Bay to the Gulf of Mexico: name all the lakes and rivers he must navigate in the journey.

Which of the States in this section consists of two peninsulas?—What bodies of water enclose the lower one?—The upper?—In what part of this region are there numerous small lakes?—What part of this section is best adapted to the growth of grain: the northern, or southern?—Where are the products of the forests most valuable?

Is this section principally an agricultural and grazing country, or a manufacturing region?—Is it probable, then, that most of the wool produced in Ohio is manufactured into cloth there, or exported?—Is it likely that cotton is largely imported from the Southern States?—Where do the people of this section procure their manufactured goods?

The water-shed between the St. Lawrence and Mississippi Basins is, in general, a very slight elevation of ground, and there are houses so situated that the rain which falls on one side of the roof is drained into the St. Lawrence, and that which falls on the other is drained into the Mississippi: suppose a house to be so located between the Fox River of Wisconsin, and Rock River, and follow the course of the drops of rain which fall on each side of the roof, to the ocean.

What is the scale of this map?—In what direction, and across what States, would you travel, to go from Columbus to St. Louis?—What is the distance, in a direct line, between these places?—What is the distance from Cleveland to Chicago?—From Chicago to Iowa City?—From Iowa City to Council Bluffs?

Bound each of these States.—Name three important towns in each.—Mention the principal rivers.—Spell the following words:—Kentucky. Michigan. Milwaukee. Illinois. Keweenaw. Minnesota. Iowa. Keokuk. Chicago. Chippewa. Ontonagon. Marquette. Dubuque. Galena. Kaskaskia. Wabash. Mackinaw. Wisconsin.—Give the meaning of the following names:—Mississippi. Terre Haute. Ohio. Fond du Lac. Missouri.

CHAPTER IX.

TEXAS, CALIFORNIA, OREGON, KANSAS, AND THE ADJACENT STATES AND TERRITORIES.

I. THE section described in this chapter includes the States of Texas, California, Oregon, Kansas, Nevada, Nebraska, and the Territories.

These States are all Western States except Texas, which is a Southern State.

II. The Coast of this region lies partly upon the Pacific Ocean, and partly upon the Gulf of Mexico.

The shores of the Pacific are bold and rocky, being skirted by the Coast Range of the California Mountain System. The Bay of San Francisco, and the Strait of Juan de Fuca, are the only large inlets upon this part of the Pacific coast.

The coast of the Gulf of Mexico is low and sandy, like that of the other Southern States.

III. Surface.—This section belongs to two divisions: the Pacific Slope, and the Central Plain.

[For a full description of the mountains and general surface, see the article on the United States, Chapter IV., paragraphs IV., V., VIII., and IX.]

It will be perceived by an examination of this chapter, that this section embraces an extensive desert-plateau, from 2000 to 5000 feet high, which extends from the Cascade and Sierra Nevada Ranges, a distance of 200 to 400 miles east of the Rocky Mountains. This is the only barren tract of great extent in the United States.

IV. Lakes and Rivers.—These belong to four systems: the Pacific, the Mississippi, the Texas, and the Utah Systems. Great Salt Lake, in Utah, is the only lake of considerable size.

The rivers of the desert-plateau, owing to the small quantity of rain which falls there, are generally very shallow.

V. Climate.—The Pacific coast, and the highlands of the interior, have a different climate from that of any other part of the Union.

On the Pacific coast, the year is divided into a wet and a dry season, somewhat like those of the Tropics. The wet season occurs during winter and spring, the dry during summer and autumn. It is no uncommon occurrence, at places upon this coast, for entire months to pass, in the dry season, without the fall of a drop of rain. The summers are much cooler, and the winters warmer, upon the Pacific coast than on the Atlantic.

The year is also divided into a wet and dry season on the desert-plateau. Very little rain falls there during the entire year, but that which does fall is almost wholly during the winter and spring.

VI. Productions.—This section, as yet, is thinly settled, and the agricultural resources are but partially developed. They are, however, like those of the same latitudes in the other parts of the country.

The mineral wealth of this region is very great. The gold mines of California are immensely rich. Quicksilver and many other valuable minerals abound. Gold is also found throughout the central portion of Colorado and Idaho. There are valuable silver mines in Arizona and Nevada.

VII. Inhabitants.—The population is composed chiefly of emigrants from the other States, and from Europe.

There are many Mexicans in California and New Mexico, and a considerable number of Chinese in California.

Most of the Indians within the United States inhabit this section. Some of them are civilized, while others are still in a savage state. Several tribes maintain almost constant hostilities against the whites.

TEXAS.

VIII. Texas is the largest State in the Union. Only about one-half of it is settled. The western part is occupied by Indians, and supports large herds of wild horses and buffaloes.

Name the States described in this chapter.—Which of the States is a Southern State?—Which are Western States?—Describe the coast of this section.—The surface.—To what systems do the lakes and rivers belong?—How does the climate differ from that of the Atlantic States?—What can you say of the agricultural resources?—Of the minerals?—The inhabitants?—The Indians?—What part of Texas is settled?

IX. Productions.—Cotton, corn, sugar, tobacco, and rice, are the chief products. Oranges, lemons, and other tropical fruits, succeed well.



CAMELS IN TEXAS.

Camels were at one time introduced into Texas for the purpose of traversing the desert-plateau between this State and the Pacific Ocean.

X. Towns.—Austin is the capital. Galveston and Houston are the most important towns.

Galveston is situated upon Galveston Island, and has the best harbor in the State. Houston is the principal shipping-port for an extensive and very fertile section of country.

San Antonio is the oldest town. It contains the Alamo fortress, so renowned in the history of the State, where 150 Texans defended themselves for two weeks against 4000 Mexicans.

CALIFORNIA.

XI. California is the largest State in the Union except Texas. This State has great commercial advantages. It has nearly eight hundred miles of coast, and many excellent harbors.

San Francisco Bay is one of the finest harbors in the world. Except the outlet to the sea through the Golden Gate, a mile wide, it is entirely surrounded by land, and is securely sheltered from storms. Its waters are deep enough for the largest vessels, and its anchorage very firm. The climate in the vicinity of this bay and that of the valleys west of the Coast Range, being tempered by the ocean breezes, is remarkably uniform. At San Francisco the difference of temperature between the average of the coldest month of the year and that of the warmest is only nine degrees. The mountains and streams of California are rich in gold and silver; and emigrants in search of these precious metals have crowded to its shores from all parts of the world. The wealth of the gold mines has contributed in a remarkable degree to the prosperity of the United States. The quicksilver mines of New Almaden, in Santa Clara county, are the richest in the world.

XII. Surface.—The surface of California consists of mountains and valleys. The great valley of the Sacramento and San Joaquin, 500 miles long and from 50 to 100 miles wide, lies between the Sierra Nevada and Coast Mountains. Most of the gold mines of the State are in this valley, along the western base of the Sierra Nevada.

This valley is very fertile, as are also many little valleys west of the Coast Mountains formed by spurs extending from this range towards the ocean. The

What are the principal productions of Texas?—For what purpose are camels used in this State?—Name the capital.—Describe the most important towns.—How does California compare in size with other States?—What is said of its commercial advantages?—What of San Francisco Bay?—Of the climate?—What can you say of the gold and silver?—Of the quicksilver mines?—Describe the surface of California.—Where are most of the gold mines in the State?

remaining surface of the State, with few exceptions, is either rugged or sterile; and that part comprised in the great interior basin and the Colorado Desert is almost destitute of vegetation. The Colorado Desert is below the level of the Gulf of California, the waters of which probably once covered it.

XIII. The scenery of California is scarcely surpassed, for grandeur and variety, by that of any other part of the United States.

Yosemite Valley, a narrow gorge or rift in the Sierra Nevada Mountains, in Mariposa county, surrounded by precipitous rocks from two thousand to four thousand feet high, contains Yosemite Falls, one of the most magnificent cataracts in the world, besides several smaller cascades of romantic beauty.

XIV. Productions.—The soil in the valleys west of the Sierra Nevada yields great crops of wheat and barley. The vine and olive flourish in the southern part of the State. Large quantities of wine are made in Los Angeles and other counties.



VIEW OF THE QUICKSILVER MINES OF NEW ALMADEN.

Many of the forest trees are of gigantic size. The celebrated Grove in Calaveras county contains trees one hundred feet in circumference and more than three hundred feet high, and even larger trees have been found in Tulare county.

XV. Towns.—Sacramento, on the Sacramento River, is the capital. It is finely situated for commerce, the river being navigable to this point for vessels and steamers of large size at all seasons of the year.

San Francisco, on San Francisco Bay, is the great commercial mart of California, and the most important city on the Pacific coast of America. Its growth has been most extraordinary; and its commercial position is so favorable, that it can hardly fail to become one of the great cities of the globe.

Marysville, Nevada, and Stockton, are the other large towns in the interior of the State; and Benicia, San José, Monterey, and San Diego, are smaller places upon or near the coast. Los Angeles is noted for grapes.

XVI. The great lines of railroad now being constructed across the country, connecting the shores of the Atlantic with those of the Pacific Ocean will doubtless add greatly to the prosperity of Cali-

What portions of the State are sterile?—What is said of the scenery?—Describe Yosemite Valley.—Where are wheat and barley produced?—Name some other productions.—What is said of the great trees?—Name the capital of California.—What is said of it?—What is said of San Francisco?—Name some of the large towns in the interior of the State.—Some of those upon or near the sea-coast.—For what is Los Angeles noted?—How will the new Pacific Railroads affect California?

fornia, as well as of the other States and Territories through which they pass.

OREGON.

XVII.—Oregon was admitted into the Union in 1859.

The section west of the Cascade Mountains contains many fertile valleys. Most of the white inhabitants live in this part of the State.

XVIII. Towns.—Salem is the capital. Portland is the largest town.

KANSAS.

XIX. Kansas became the thirty-fourth State of the Union in 1861.

The soil in the eastern part of Kansas is exceedingly fertile, and this portion is being populated rapidly by emigration from the other States.

XX. Towns.—Topeka is the capital, and Leavenworth the largest city.

NEVADA.

XXI. Nevada was formed from a portion of Utah in 1861. In 1864 it was admitted into the Union as the thirty-sixth State.

A large portion of Nevada is a barren desert, and its lakes are nearly all salt. It is more abundant in silver than any other part of the Union. The mines extend nearly to the eastern boundary of the State.

XXII. Towns.—Carson City is the capital. Virginia City and Genoa are next in importance.

NEBRASKA.

XXIII. Nebraska became the thirty-seventh State in 1867.

In climate, soil, and productions, it resembles the adjoining State of Iowa.

XXIV. Towns.—Lincoln is the capital. Omaha, Plattsmouth and Nebraska City are the principal towns.

THE WESTERN TERRITORIES.

XXV. The Territories of the United States are ten in number, viz.: Washington, Idaho, Montana, Dakota, Utah, Colorado, Arizona, New Mexico, Wyoming, and Indian Territory.

XXVI. Washington.—This territory borders on the Pacific Ocean.

Nearly all the white inhabitants live west of the Cascade Mountains. The eastern and central parts are inhabited by various tribes of Indians.

XXVII. Towns.—Olympia is the capital. Steilacoom is one of the most important places.

XXVIII. Idaho.—This territory, organized in 1863, extends east of Oregon and Washington.

It is inhabited chiefly by Indians; but the rich gold mines, recently discovered, are attracting many white emigrants thither. Boise City is the capital.

XXIX. Montana.—Montana was organized in 1864. It lies on both sides of the Rocky Mountains, and abounds in gold.

XXX. Towns.—Virginia City is the capital.

XXXI. Dakota.—Dakota was organized in 1861, and is the largest territory. It contains but few white inhabitants.

XXXII. Towns.—Yankton is the capital. Pembina is the oldest town.

In what section of Oregon do most of the inhabitants live?—When did Kansas become a State?—What can you say of the eastern part of Kansas?—Name the capital.—The largest city.—From a part of what territory was Nevada formed?—Name the capital.—What State does Nebraska resemble?—Give the number and names of the Western Territories.—On what ocean does Washington Territory border?—By what are many emigrants attracted to Idaho?—What abounds in Montana?—Which is the largest Territory?



MAP OF THE
STATE OF CALIFORNIA
 ENGRAVED TO ILLUSTRATE
WARREN'S
INTERMEDIATE GEOGRAPHY.

Statute Miles 69.2 to a Degree.
 Scale 75 Miles to an inch.

EXPLANATION.
 State Capital *
 County Towns •
 Common do. ○
 The Overland Mail Route from
 St. Louis to San Francisco 2,765
 miles, thus

THE ENVIRONS
 OF
SAN FRANCISCO
 AND
SACRAMENTO CITY.
 Scale 25 miles to an inch.

XXXIII. Utah.—Utah contains the Great Salt Lake, and the principal portion of the Fremont or Great Basin, the most desolate region in the United States.

This basin is about four thousand feet above the level of the sea, and its rivers have no outlet to the ocean. They either empty into inland lakes or are swallowed up in the sand.

The white inhabitants of Utah are mostly Mormons, a peculiar religious sect. The Great Basin is inhabited by a degraded tribe of Indians, called "Diggers," who subsist chiefly upon roots.



A SANTA FE TRAIN FORDING THE ARKANSAS RIVER.

Most of the manufactured articles used in New Mexico and Utah are brought hither across the plains from the towns of Western Missouri. For protection against the Indians, and to aid each other on the way, the traders usually travel in companies, and form their wagons into what is called trains.

What does Utah contain?—What can you say of the Great Basin?—Who are the white inhabitants?—By whom is the Great Basin inhabited?—Describe the method of conveying manufactured articles to Utah and New Mexico.—Name the capital of Utah.—The principal towns.—When was Colorado organized?—For what is it famous?—Name the capital and largest town.—When was Arizona made a separate

XXXIV. Towns.—Salt Lake City is the capital. Fillmore City and Paragoona are smaller towns.

XXXV. Colorado.—This territory was organized in 1861, and extends from Kansas to Utah.

It is famous for its gold, which was first discovered near Pike's Peak, and the mining of which gives employment to most of the white inhabitants.

XXXVI. Towns.—Denver is the capital and largest town.

XXXVII. Arizona.—Arizona was formerly a part of New Mexico, but was made a separate territory in 1863.

Valuable gold and silver mines abound in nearly all parts of the territory.

XXXVIII. Towns.—Prescott is the capital. Tucson and Tubac are the chief towns.

XXXIX. New Mexico.—This territory is occupied chiefly by Indians. The white inhabitants are Mexicans and Americans.

XL. Towns.—Santa Fe is the capital. Albuquerque and Socorro are the places of next importance.

XLI. Wyoming was formed from a part of Dakota in 1868.

XLII. Towns.—Cheyenne is the principal town.

XLIII. Indian Territory.—This tract of country has been set apart as a permanent home for various tribes of Indians, who were either natives of the soil, or have been removed from the States east of the Mississippi River.

Some of these tribes have made considerable advance in agriculture and the useful arts, and have churches, school-houses, and mills.

XLIV. Towns.—Tahlequah, a Cherokee town, is the most important place in the territory.

territory?—What is said of its gold and silver mines?—Name the capital?—The chief towns.—By whom is New Mexico chiefly inhabited?—What is the capital?—When was Wyoming formed?—Name the principal town.—For whom has the Indian Territory been set apart?—What is said of some of these tribes?—Name the most important town.

QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF CALIFORNIA.

By what State is California bounded on the north?—By what State and Territory on the east?—By what country on the south?—What ocean on the west?—Where is Humboldt Bay?—San Diego Bay?—Where are the Santa Barbara Islands?—Where is Cape Mendocine?—Where are the Farallone Islands?

What is the area of California?—How many States of the size of Virginia would it make?—How many of the size of Massachusetts?

Name the two principal mountain-chains in California.—Which of them is nearest the coast?—What great valley lies between these mountain-ranges?—Where is Mount Shasta?—Mount San Bernardino?—Mount San Geronimo?—What is the character of the surface west of the Coast Range?

What river forms part of the boundary between California and Arizona?—What river flows into the Colorado at the extreme southern boundary of California?—What two rivers empty into the Bay of San Francisco?—In what general direction does the Sacramento River flow?—The San Joaquin?—Name some of the principal tributaries of each of these rivers.—Into what bay does the river Salinas flow?—Where is the Klamath River?—Where is Tulare Lake?—What rivers flow into it?—Name two lakes that are situated partly in California and partly in Nevada.—Where are the Yosemite Falls?

Through how many degrees of latitude does California extend?—Is the climate more uniform upon the coast or in the interior?—Why?—What is the difference between the average temperature of the warmest and coldest months of the year at San Francisco?

What portions of California are the most fertile?—Where are gold and silver principally found?—In what part of the State are large quantities of wine made?

Where is San Francisco?—On what river is Sacramento?—Marysville?—Stockton?—On what bay is San Diego?—Monterey?—Where is Nevada?—Benicia?—San José?—Name all the waters on which you would sail to go from Sacramento to San Diego.—From Stockton to Crescent City.

Sketch a map of California, locating the principal mountain-ranges, the rivers and towns. If you wished to forward a quantity of gold dust from California to the Mint at Philadelphia, how would you send it; across the country by land, or by sea?—What are the principal obstacles to the transportation of merchandise from New York to San Francisco by a direct land route?—By what triumph of human skill and ingenuity are these obstacles about to be overcome?

QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF THE ENVIRONS OF SAN FRANCISCO AND SACRAMENTO.

What is the direction of Sacramento from San Francisco?—What is the distance between these places by a direct line?—In what direction from San Francisco is Stockton?—On what rivers would you sail, to go from Stockton to Sacramento?

Through what strait must vessels sail from the Pacific Ocean to enter the Bay of San Francisco?—What reason do you perceive for the name given to this strait?—What is the distance from the Golden Gate to the southern extremity of San Francisco Bay?—Name all the bodies of water through which you would pass, sailing from San Francisco to Sacramento.—What mountain about midway between San Francisco and Stockton?

Spell the following names:—California.—San Francisco.—Sacramento.—San Joaquin.—Benicia.—Monterey.—San Diego.—Calaveras.—Yreka.—Klamath.—What is the meaning of Sierra Nevada?

QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF THE TERRITORIES, TEXAS, CALIFORNIA, ETC.

POSITION.

What country upon the north of this section?—What States on the east?—What country upon the south?—What gulf on the south-east?—What ocean on the west?

What two States border on the Pacific Ocean?—What State borders on the Gulf of Mexico?—What territory borders on the Pacific Ocean?—What mountain range forms part of the eastern boundary of California?—What territories join Mexico?—Which territory is situated between Texas and Kansas?—What State has the Missouri River for its eastern boundary?—What river forms part of the western boundary of Idaho?

AREA.

How many States does this section contain?—Which of them is the largest?—How many territories does this section contain?—Which of them is the largest?—The smallest?—How many States of the size of Virginia would Texas make?—Of the size of Massachusetts?

OUTLINE.

What ocean washes the western coast?—What gulf upon the south-east?—Where is the Strait of Juan de Fuca?—Where is the Bay of San Francisco?

What is the character of the coast of the Gulf of Mexico?—Of that of the Pacific Ocean?—On which coast would you expect to find the best harbors?—What group of islands on the coast of California?—What island north-west of Washington Territory?

SURFACE.

To what two divisions does this region belong?—By what two mountain-systems is the surface crossed?—Which of these is upon the east?—By what name, in New Mexico, is the principal range of the Rocky Mountain System known?—Where is the South Pass?—The Spanish Peaks?—Long's Peak?—Pike's Peak?

What coast does the California System follow?—What range of this system is nearest the coast?—What range, in California, lies east of the Coast Mountains?—What State and territory do the Cascade Mountains cross?

There are several intervening chains between the California and Rocky Mountain Systems: mention the one in Oregon.—The principal one in Utah.—What chain in New Mexico, east of the Sierra Madre?—Describe the general surface of the country, from the Sierra Nevada and Cascade Range, to a distance of 200 or 400 miles east of the Rocky Mountains.

The Llano Estacado (Staked Plain) is a desert region, on which there are no trees; it derives its name from the stakes driven into the ground as a guide across it: where is this plain?—Where is Fremont Basin?—Mt. Shasta?—Mt. St. Helen's?—What hills branch off in a north-east direction from the Rocky Mountains?

CLIMATE.

What are the two seasons on the Pacific coast?—When is the rainy season?—The dry season?—Is it likely to rain much there in February?—In July?—Are the summers cooler on the Atlantic or Pacific coast?—On which coast are the winters warmest?—What are the seasons on the desert-plateau of the interior?

PRODUCTIONS.

Give the extent of the desert-plateau of this section.—What is a plateau?—Name the States and territories which are wholly or partly included in this desert region.—What part of Kansas is fertile?—Is Nevada a fertile country?

What is the character of the soil in the country west of the Sierra Nevada and Cascade Mountains?—Name the productions of Texas.—The vegetable productions of California.—The minerals.—In what portion of Colorado was gold first discovered?

Where is the gold of California found?—What can you say of the quicksilver mines?—Of the great trees?—What caused the first settlement of California: its vegetable, or mineral wealth?

LAKES AND RIVERS.

To what four systems do the lakes and rivers of this section belong?—Into what do the rivers of the Mississippi System flow?—Of the Texas System?—The Pacific System?—The Bear, Jordan, Humboldt, and Sevier, are the principal rivers of the Utah System: do they flow into the ocean?

The Missouri, Arkansas, and Red Rivers are the most important of the Mississippi System: in what mountain-chain do they rise?—In what general direction do they flow?—Name the most important branch of the Missouri, in Nebraska.—The one in Kansas.—The most important branch of the Arkansas, in Indian Territory.

What river separates Texas, in part from Louisiana?—Texas from Indian Territory?—From Mexico?—Name the principal rivers of Texas, between the Sabine and Rio Grande.—In what general direction do these rivers flow?—What river of Texas is a tributary of the Rio Grande?

What large river of the United States flows into the Gulf of California?—What two rivers unite to form the Colorado?—What tributary does the Colorado receive near its mouth?—What are the two principal rivers of California?—Into what do they flow?

What river drains the greater part of Oregon and Washington?—Into what does it flow?—Where is Great Salt Lake?—Humboldt Lake?—Tule Lake?

Are the rivers of the desert-plateau shallow or deep?—Why?—Are these rivers, then, probably of much use for navigation?—Between what two mountain-chains of New Mexico does the Rio Grande flow?—The Missouri and Columbia Rivers rise in the same mountain-chain: why do they flow in opposite directions?

TOWNS.

What is the capital of Texas?—Of California?—In what part of Texas are most of its towns situated?—Where is Galveston?—What can you say of San Antonio?—In what river-valleys are most of the principal towns of California?—Where is San Francisco?—Nevada?—Stockton?—Marysville?—Benicia?

What is the capital of Kansas?—Nebraska?—On what rivers are these places situated?—Near what river is the capital of New Mexico?—In what river-valley are nearly all the towns of this territory situated?—What is the capital of Utah?—Near what lake is the largest city?

Are the towns of Oregon and Washington situated east or west of the Cascade Mountains?—On what river are the capital and the chief town of Oregon?—What is the capital of Washington?—Where is it situated?

MISCELLANEOUS.

Who chiefly compose the population of this section?—In what State and territory are Mexicans numerous?—In what State are there a considerable number of Chinese?—In what territory are most of the inhabitants Mormons?

Who inhabit Indian Territory?—Where are the Diggers found?—Are there Indians in any other States or Territories of this section?—What is their condition?—Where is the Alamo fortress?—For what is it celebrated?

Whence do the inhabitants of Utah and New Mexico receive their manufactured goods?—What dangers are sometimes encountered by the traders in the transportation of them?—What measures do they take for their protection?

Where does the most rain fall: on the region east or west of the Sierra Nevada and Cascade Mountains?—Trace the passage of an emigrant train from Omaha City on the Missouri River to Great Salt Lake City: through what pass will they go?—What river forms a convenient route to this pass?

What is the scale of this map?—In what direction, and what distance, is Salt Lake City from St. Louis?—In what direction, and what distance, is San Francisco from Salt Lake City?—What is the distance, in a direct line, from Santa Fe to Fort Smith, on the western borders of Arkansas?—From Santa Fe to San Diego?—In what Territory is Mt. Baker?—Where is Fremont's Peak?—Mt. Hood?—Where is the town of Tahlequah?—To what tribe of Indians do the inhabitants of this town belong?—What can you say of the Indian tribes of this section?

Bound each of these States and Territories.—Mention the principal rivers and mountains.—Spell Missouri, Prairie, Colorado, Sierra Nevada, Sierra Madre, Nebraska, Kansas, Llano Estacado, Dakota, Utah, Omaha, Wasatch, Willamette, Sacramento, Arkansas.

COMMERCE OF THE UNITED STATES.

CHAPTER X.

COMMERCE OF THE UNITED STATES.

I. COMMERCE (Lesson XXV., page 17) is the exchange of goods. It may be either foreign or domestic.

II. Foreign commerce is the trade which one country carries on with another. Domestic commerce is the trade between the inhabitants of the same country.

III. The foreign commerce of the United States is very extensive, and reaches almost every country upon the globe. It is principally carried on by vessels which cross the ocean.

IV. The domestic commerce of the United States is even more extensive than the foreign. It is carried on either by inland communication, or by vessels which sail between the various ports along the coast. The latter is, therefore, called the coasting-trade.

V. Inland communication is made either by natural or artificial routes. The natural routes for inland commerce are rivers and lakes; the chief artificial routes are railroads and canals.

Thus, the merchant at St. Louis, who ships a quantity of wheat to New Orleans, avails himself of the Mississippi River, a *natural* channel of communication; while the merchant at Boston, who sends a quantity of manufactured goods to Chicago by railroad, forwards them by an *artificial* route.

VI. Commerce between the various States bordering upon the Atlantic Ocean and Gulf of Mexico, is carried on by steamers and sailing-vessels, and by lines of railroad which extend from Bangor, in Maine, to all the chief commercial cities of this section.

VII. The commerce between the Atlantic States and the Western States is chiefly carried on by means of the Great Lakes, the Ohio River, and by various railroads and canals.

By reference to the map it will be seen that the principal commercial cities upon the Atlantic coast are connected by railroads with the chief commercial cities upon the Mississippi and Ohio

rivers, and the Great Lakes. Thus, Charleston and Savannah are connected with Nashville and Memphis; Philadelphia and Baltimore with Pittsburg, Cincinnati, St. Louis, and Chicago; New York and Boston with Buffalo, Detroit, Cleveland, Chicago, and St. Louis.

VIII. Commerce between the different portions of the Mississippi Valley is chiefly conducted by means of the Mississippi River and its tributaries, and by various railroads.

IX. Commerce between the Pacific ports and those of the Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico, is chiefly conducted by vessels which sail around Cape Horn, in South America, and by lines of steamers which connect with the railroad across the Isthmus of Panama. (See page 56.)

Three lines of railroad to the Pacific are now being constructed, and a reference to the preceding map will show the route taken by each of them. The building of these roads is one of the grandest enterprises of modern times, and their completion will doubtless cause important changes in the commerce of the world.

X. The productions of the United States, which form the chief staples of her commerce, are agricultural and mineral, and manufactured goods.

The Southern and Western States are chiefly agricultural. Minerals are found in various parts of the country. Most of the manufactured goods are made in the Eastern and Middle States.

QUESTIONS.

What is commerce?—What is foreign commerce?—What is domestic commerce?—How is the foreign commerce of the United States generally carried on?—What do you understand by the coasting-trade?—What kind of trade is the shipping of goods by a sailing-vessel from Boston to New York?—What kind of commerce would it be to ship goods from Philadelphia to the West Indies?—From San Francisco to the Sandwich Islands?—From Chicago to St. Louis?—From Baltimore to Cincinnati?

By what two kinds of communication is the inland trade of our country carried on?—Suppose a merchant were to forward a quantity of goods from Albany to Buffalo, by the Erie Canal, would they be sent by a natural or artificial channel of communication?—Suppose these goods to be sent from Buffalo to Detroit, across Lake Erie, what mode of communication would then be adopted?

How is commercial intercourse between the various States along the Atlantic coast, and that of the Gulf of Mexico, carried on?—Suppose you wished to ship a cargo of cotton from Charleston to

New York, how would you send it?—If you wished to go from Washington to Boston, how would you travel?

How is the commerce between the Atlantic States and the Western States carried on?—How must the commerce between these sections be carried on in winter, when the Ohio River and the harbors of the great lakes are frozen over?—Name any cities on the Ohio, or its tributaries, or on the Mississippi, which are connected by railroad with Charleston or Savannah.—Name any others connected with Philadelphia or Baltimore.—New York or Boston.—Name any cities upon the great lakes connected by railroad with the Atlantic cities already named.

How is the commerce between the different portions of the Mississippi Valley chiefly conducted?—Indianapolis is in the Mississippi Valley, and is not upon a navigable river: how would you send a box of sugar from New Orleans to that city?—Columbus, Ohio, is on a river which is not navigable: how would you send a package from that city to Memphis?

How is most of the commerce between the ports on the Pacific coast, and those upon the Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico, conducted?—What important enterprise is now in progress west of the Mississippi River?—What will be its probable effect?

What productions of the United States form the chief staples of her commerce?—Which are the agricultural States?—The manufacturing States?—Name some of the articles sent from New England to the Southern States.—What products are sent to New England in return?—Mention some of the products of the Western States which are forwarded to the cities on the Atlantic coast.—What articles are sent in return?

Name the principal places through which you would pass, going by railroad from Portland to Chicago, through Canada.—Select a route for a party of emigrants from Boston to Kansas: to what place may they go by railroad?—By what river can they travel the remainder of the distance?

Across what States, and through what principal places, would you pass, to go by railroad from New York to Dubuque, Iowa?—What river would you ascend, to go thence to St. Paul?—Describe the route from Philadelphia to St. Louis.—From Baltimore to St. Louis.—What mountains must you cross by these last two routes?

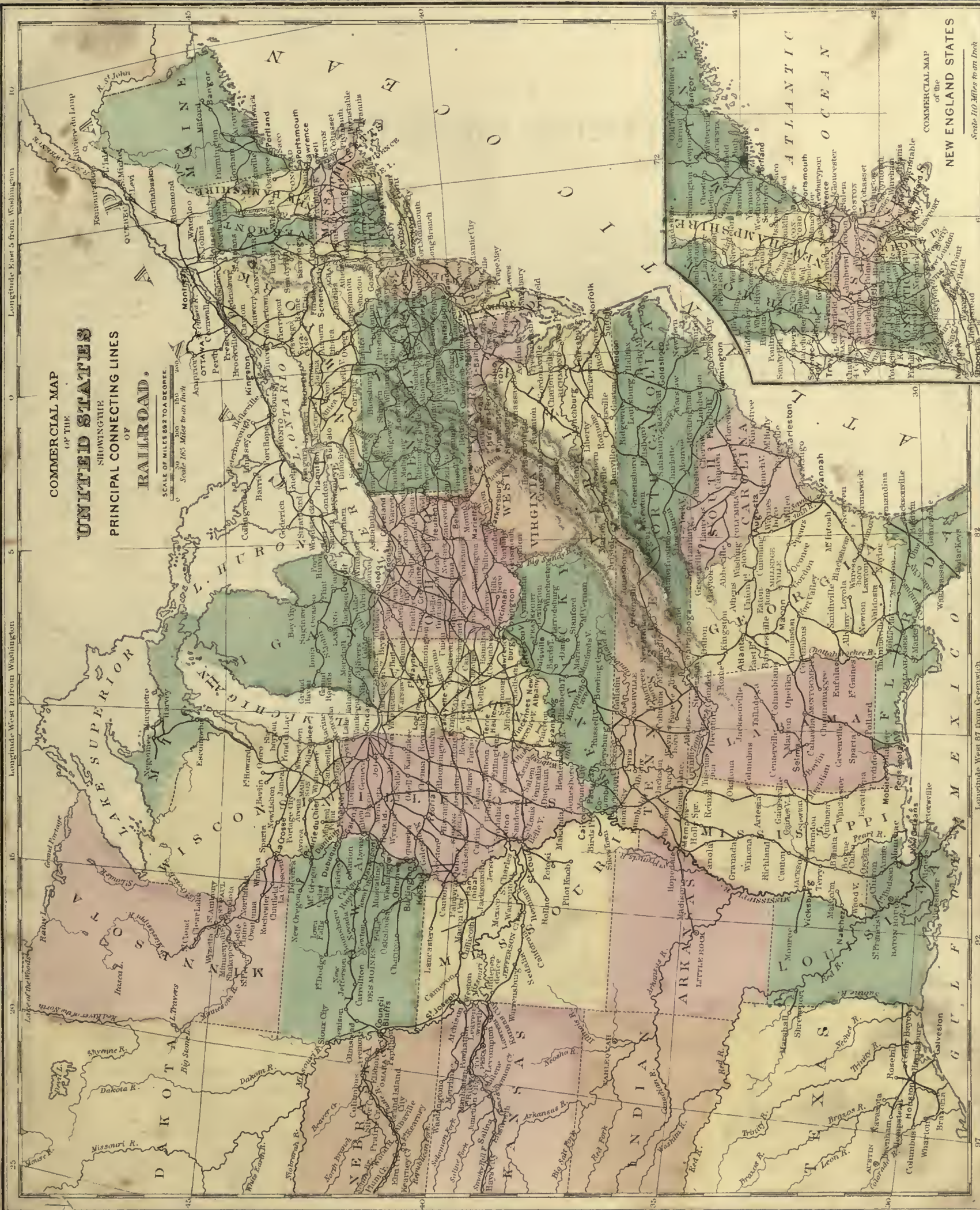
Name the States you would cross, and the principal places through which you would pass, going by railroad from Charleston to Memphis.—What States must be crossed by the Northern Railroad from New Orleans to join the Central Railroad of Illinois at Cairo?

What great natural obstacle is encountered by the Pacific railroads?—Follow the proposed railroad route from St. Louis to San Francisco, which passes near Pike's Peak, and name the States and territories you would cross.

COMMERCIAL MAP
OF THE
UNITED STATES
SHOWING THE
PRINCIPAL CONNECTING LINES
OF
RAILROAD.

SCALE OF MILES 892 TO A DEGREE.

Scale 1/63 Miles to an Inch



QUESTIONS FOR REVIEW.

Which of the United States is most extensively engaged in manufactures?—Which in commerce?—Between what degrees of latitude and longitude is the United States situated?—Which State produces the most cotton?—Which one has the greatest number of square miles?—Which one has the largest population?—Which State produces the most sugar?—What States and Territories are intersected by the 40th parallel?—What is the length of a degree of longitude?

What lands and waters on the map of the Western Hemisphere are intersected by the meridian of Boston?—Name the principal mountain-ranges of North America, and the general direction of each.—Give the proofs that the earth is round.—Name the great circles of the earth.—Give the latitude and longitude of Boston.—Of London.—Where are the principal coal and iron mines in the United States?

Name some of the principal exports of the United States.—Some of the principal imports.—What is the horizon?—Name the circles which bound the zones.—Can you go farther north than the North Pole?—Why is the length of a degree of longitude on the 40th parallel less than the length of a degree on the equator?—What is the width of the North Temperate Zone in degrees?—In miles?—On what circumstances does the climate of a place depend?

Name some of the principal islands that lie near the Atlantic coast of North America.—On what does the change of seasons depend?—What proportion of the earth's surface is covered with water?—Of how many States and Territories does the United States consist?—What is the latitude of the North Pole?—Of the Tropic of Capricorn?—Of the Equator?—What rivers unite to form the Ohio, and what city is at their junction?

Where is the Bay of Fundy, and for what is it remarkable?—What is the right bank of a river?—What is the distance in degrees between the Tropics and Polar Circles?—In miles?—Of what States does the Mississippi River form the boundary?—What building-stones are exported from Massachusetts?—From Connecticut?—Bound the Great Central Plain of North America.—Has the northwest passage from the Atlantic to the Pacific Ocean ever been made?

To what race do the Esquimaux belong?—How wide is Behring Strait?—What were the area and population of the United States at the time of the Revolutionary War?—What are they now?—Where in the United States is salt found?—Name some of the fashionable watering-places in the United States.—What State lies wholly between the upland country and the Atlantic Ocean?—What is the latitude of Charleston, South Carolina?

What islands in the Atlantic lie about the same latitude as Charleston?—Which of the Western States has the largest population?—What parallel bounds the United States on the north, from the Lake of the Woods to the Pacific Ocean?—What is the largest grain port in the world?—What lake in Central America?—What lake in California?—Are despotic governments found among savage or civilized people?—How many seasons are there in California?

Name four branches of the Ohio.—What are the latitude and longitude of New Orleans?—What is the largest city west of the Rocky Mountains?—Name four rivers which flow into Hudson Bay.—What is the largest lake that lies wholly within the United States?—How many miles is it from the centre of the earth to the surface?—Name three branches of the Missouri River.—Two ships are, at the equator, 20° apart, and sailing directly north at the same rate: on reaching 10° north latitude, will they be more or fewer degrees apart?—More or fewer miles?

Into how many departments is Geography divided?—Define each.—In what direction does the earth revolve on its axis?—Which is longer, the polar or the equatorial diameter of the earth?—How many miles longer?—Where is British Columbia?—What point on the earth has neither latitude nor longitude?—What is a plateau?—An oasis?—A watershed?—How do the animals of the Torrid differ from those of the Temperate Zone?

What are the three departments of the government of the United States?—Name the principal rivers in Virginia.—Name the principal rivers of North America flowing into the Pacific Ocean.—What are the four chief branches of industry?—What is the second commercial city in the United States?—What is the character of the harbors of the Southern States?—In travelling from the mouth of the Mississippi to the mouth of the Mackenzie River, would you meet any high elevations of land?

In what direction is Quito, in South America, from Charleston, South Carolina?—In what direction, then, is South America from North America?—Name the principal commercial cities in the United States.—What is the difference between domestic and foreign commerce?—Into what sections is North America divided by its mountain systems?—What is the latitude of Cape Sable (Florida)?—Does Iceland belong to the Eastern or the Western Hemisphere?

In what zone is it?—Name the principal branches of Hudson Bay.—Of the Gulf of Mexico.—Caribbean Sea.—Go by water from the largest city in Michigan to the largest city in Illinois.—What point of North America approaches nearest to Asia?—What point approaches nearest to Europe?—What is the largest city in the State of Missouri?—Which is farther west, Havana or Buffalo?

Where are the settlements in Greenland?—What rivers drain Texas on the east?—What island at the mouth of the St. Lawrence River?—Name the three largest cities in the Middle States.—In the Southern States.—In the Western States.—What group of islands on the coast of California?—Where are the Wind River Mountains?—What celebrated pass near these mountains?—What points of resemblance do the outlines of the two continents present?

What active volcano near the South Pole?—What is an active volcano?—Name the two largest cities on the Mississippi River.—On what river is the capital of Kansas?—What countries of the Western Continent does the Arctic Circle cross?—What group of islands connect the continent of America with Asia?—What is the largest city on the Western Continent?—How many meridians are there?—What is a first meridian?

What is the distance in a straight line from Lake of the Woods to Galveston?—From Cape Mendocino to the mouth of the Hudson River?—What climate is the most favorable for agriculture?—Name the rivers flowing into Long Island Sound.—Where is Southampton Island?—What peninsulas on the east coast of North America?—What ones on the west coast?—Tell where you find the following mountain-peaks: Mitchell's Peak; Mount Baker; Mount San Bernardino; Mars Hill; Mount Brown.—Are icebergs formed on the land, or on the sea?

Name five rivers flowing into the Gulf of Mexico east of the mouth of the Mississippi.—What parts of the earth move at the rate of a thousand miles an hour?—What parts at the rate of a thousand miles a minute?—Name the rivers flowing into Hudson Bay on the east.—What mountains on the east and west bound the Great Interior Basin of the United States?—Name the rivers of the United States flowing into Lake Erie.—Into Lake Ontario.

What mineral is chiefly used for making glass?—What bodies of land do you find near the South Pole?—In what direction does the great mountain system of the Western Continent extend?—In what direction does that of the Eastern Continent extend?—What town at the head of Winnebago Lake?—At the head of Lake Superior?—What are Geysers?—What is the principal settlement of the Russian Fur Company?

What separates Vancouver Island from the mainland?—Where are the Tortugas Island?—Where is Gettysburg?—Chattanooga?—Fortress Monroe?—Harper's Ferry?—Vicksburg?—Fort Sumter?—For what are these places noted?—What is the chief staple of the States bordering on the Gulf of Mexico?—What strait separates Florida from the West Indies?—How wide is the equator?—What are the most necessary manufactures?—On what waters will you sail in going from the capital of Kansas to the capital of Nebraska?

CHAPTER XI.

THE BRITISH PROVINCES OF NORTH AMERICA.

I. **THE British Provinces** are:—The Dominion of Canada (which includes the Provinces of Quebec, Ontario, New Brunswick, and Nova Scotia), Prince Edward Island, Newfoundland, and British Columbia. All of these, with the exception of British Columbia, which lies on the Pacific Ocean, are situated within or near the Basin of the St. Lawrence.

II. **Surface.**—In surface, climate, and productions, these provinces resemble the adjacent parts of our own country.

Thus, the south-western districts of Canada are like the States on the opposite shores of the lakes; and New Brunswick and Nova Scotia resemble Maine.

III. The Alleghany Mountain-System extends into Canada, and terminates in low hills on the Gulf of St. Lawrence. A chain of hills, called the Wotehish Mountains, separates the Basin of the St. Lawrence from that of Hudson Bay.

IV. **Lakes and Rivers.**—The River St. Lawrence drains the waters of the five great lakes—Superior, Michigan, Huron, Erie, and Ontario. They are said to contain more than half the fresh water upon the globe.



A VIEW AMONG THE THOUSAND ISLES.

The Basin of the St. Lawrence is famous for the grandeur and beauty of its natural scenery. Niagara Falls, the Thousand Isles and Rapids of the St. Lawrence, the Falls of Montmorenci (near Quebec), and the grand scenery of the Saguenay River, are the admiration of thousands of tourists.

The St. Lawrence and the Lakes form the great natural highway of the country. By means of canals, they have been made navigable throughout their entire length. In winter the water-communication is frozen up.

What are the names of the British Provinces?—Where are they situated?—Describe the surface of the country.—The mountain systems.—What lakes are drained by the St. Lawrence?—For what is the Basin of the St. Lawrence famous?—How far is the river navigable for ships?—What are the obstacles to navigation above Montreal?—How are they overcome?—What obstacle is there to the winter navigation of the St. Lawrence?

The river admits ships from the Gulf to Montreal. Between that point and Lake Ontario there are rapids. These are avoided, in *ascending* the river, by canals on the left bank; but the *downward* passage, though perilous, is made by the river itself. Lake Ontario is also connected with the Ottawa River by the Rideau Canal.

The Falls of Niagara are avoided by the Welland Canal, which connects Lakes Erie and Ontario. The Falls in the River St. Mary (which flows from Lake Superior to Lake Huron) are the only other natural obstruction, and are passed in a ship canal.

V. **Climate.**—The climate of the Provinces, though it has a general resemblance to that of the adjoining parts of the United States, is subject to great extremes.

The summers are very hot, while the winters are long and exceedingly cold. The interior has a dry and clear atmosphere, but the coast is often visited by thick fogs. In those districts which border upon the sea or the great lakes, the winters are much milder, and the heat of summer is less intense.

VI. **Government.**—The British Government appoints a Governor for each of the provinces. Every province, however, elects its own legislature, and is wisely permitted to be in a great measure independent. The Governor of Canada is Governor-General of the whole of British America.

THE DOMINION OF CANADA.

VII. The Dominion of Canada was formed in 1867 by the confederation of the provinces of Quebec (Canada East), Ontario (Canada West), New Brunswick, and Nova Scotia.

VIII. **QUEBEC** contains many descendants of the early French settlers. They speak a corruption of the French language, and maintain the politeness and gayety of their race; but are averse to improvement, and jealous of English rule.

Canada was once in possession of the French, who built Quebec, Montreal, and other towns in the lower part of the province. In the years 1759 and 1760, it was conquered by the British.

IX. **ONTARIO** has been settled chiefly since the American Revolution. The inhabitants are principally of British origin, and profess the Protestant religion; while in Lower Canada, the majority of the people are Catholics.

X. **Productions.**—Besides immense wealth in forests, Canada has the same vegetable productions that belong to the neighboring States of our own country: grain, hemp, flax, and potatoes.

Towards the mouth of the St. Lawrence the climate is too severe, and the land too poor to admit of much cultivation; but in the south-western districts the soil is very rich, and produces great crops of wheat and other grains.

XI. **Towns.** The principal towns of Quebec are Quebec and Montreal; of Ontario, Toronto, Hamilton, Kingston, Ottawa, and London.

Ottawa was selected as the capital of Canada some years ago, but the necessary public buildings were not completed until 1867. It is now the residence of the Governor-General, and the Canadian Parliament meets there.

Quebec consists of an upper and a lower town. The upper town is built upon a bold promontory which rises abruptly from the river. It is the only walled town in America, and is one of the strongest fortresses in the world. The lower town lies at the foot of this steep rock, and is the seat of commerce.

Montreal, the chief city of British America, is built upon the island of that name in the River St. Lawrence. Toronto is the largest city in Ontario.

What is the climate of the Provinces?—Describe the Government.—Of what does the Dominion of Canada consist?—What is the character of the descendants of the French settlers?—Where are they found: in Quebec, or Ontario?—Who settled Ontario?—Name some of the productions of Canada.—Which are the principal towns?—Name the newly-selected capital.—Describe Quebec.—Where is Montreal?

XII. **New Brunswick.**—The people of New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, and the other provinces bordering upon the Gulf, are extensively engaged in the fisheries, which form one of their principal sources of wealth.

XIII. **New Brunswick** is north-east of the United States. Its shores are washed by the Gulf of St. Lawrence and the Bay of Fundy.

The Bay of Fundy is remarkable for having the highest tides in the world.

XIV. **Towns.**—Fredericton, the capital, is at the head of sloop navigation on the River St. John, 80 miles from its mouth. The city of St. John, however, at the mouth of the river, is the largest in the province, and is the principal seat of commerce.

XV. **Nova Scotia and Cape Breton Island** form together a single province. The coast contains a great number of fine harbors, promoting the extensive commerce and fisheries, which form the chief business of the people.

XIV. **Towns.**—Halifax, the capital, has a magnificent harbor, and is the principal British naval station in this part of the world.

The chief exports of Nova Scotia and New Brunswick are lumber, fish, coal, grindstones, gypsum (or plaster), grain, potatoes, and hay.

XVII. **Prince Edward Island.**—Like all the other regions in or upon the Gulf, this province has valuable fisheries. Farming and grazing, however, form the chief occupation of the people. Charlottetown is the capital.

XVIII. **Newfoundland.**—The *Surface* is generally rocky and barren. The coast is bold, and indented by deep inlets, which form many excellent harbors. St. John's is the capital, and the only town of any note upon the island.

XIX. **Climate.**—The winters are very cold, but the summers are hot. Dense fogs hang over the coast during a large part of the year.

XX. **Productions.**—The fisheries form almost the sole wealth of Newfoundland. The exports are fish, oil, and seal-skin.

The fish are taken along the shores of the island, and upon shallow places in the sea, called the Banks of Newfoundland. The Grand Bank, which lies farthest to the eastward, is more than 600 miles long, and 250 broad.

XXI. The authority of the Governor of Newfoundland extends over the adjoining coast of Labrador.

XXII. **British Columbia.** (*See Map of North America.*)—This is a new province which lies between the Pacific Ocean and the Rocky Mountains. It is a rugged, uncultivated region, covered with thick forests.

Fraser River is the principal stream, upon whose banks, and those of its tributaries, gold abounds.

XXIII. **Vancouver and Washington Islands** are situated on the coast, westward of this province.

XXIV. **Towns.**—New Westminster is the capital of British Columbia. Victoria is the principal town on Vancouver Island.

FRENCH ISLANDS.

XXV. The small islands of St. Pierre and Miquelon, south of Newfoundland, belong to France, and serve for fishing-stations.

These islands, a part of Guiana (in South America), and a few small islands among the West Indies, are all that remain to France of the immense territory which she once possessed in America.

In what are many of the people of the Gulf provinces engaged?—Where is New Brunswick?—For what is the Bay of Fundy remarkable?—What is the capital of New Brunswick?—Nova Scotia?—Newfoundland?—What are the chief exports of these provinces?—What is the climate of Newfoundland?—What can you say of British Columbia?—Where are Vancouver and Washington Islands?—Which are the French Islands?—Are the present possessions of the French in America greater or less than formerly?

QUESTIONS ON THE MAP.

Which of the provinces belong to the main-land of North America?—Which of them are islands?—Which one is a peninsula?—Name the largest of the provinces.—The smallest.

What country joins Canada on the north?—South?—What does the Dominion of Canada comprise?—Name the four States bordering on Quebec.—What rivers and lakes are between Ontario and New York?—What lake separates Ontario from Ohio?—What three lakes are between Ontario and Michigan?

What mountains has Canada?—To go from the mouth of the Saguenay River in a direct course to Hudson Bay, what mountains would you cross?—What mountains would you cross, to go from the same point to the Bay of Fundy?

Which is the principal river of Canada?—In what direction, and into what gulf, does it flow?—What is its principal tributary on the north?—What other rivers flow into it from the north?—What rivers flow into it from the south?

What great lakes does the St. Lawrence drain?—Through what river do the waters of Lake Champlain flow into the St. Lawrence?—From what does the Saguenay River flow?

What are the obstacles to the navigation of the St. Lawrence in winter?—Are there any impediments to its summer navigation?—Can a steamboat descend the St. Lawrence from Lake Ontario?—Is there any peril in the descent of the river?—Why cannot steamboats ascend the river?—How do they return?

Does Lake Ontario flow into Lake Erie, or Lake Erie into Ontario?—Why cannot steamboats go by the Niagara River from one lake to the other?—Vessels frequently pass from Lake Erie into Lake Ontario: how is it done?

What lakes are connected by the River St. Mary?—What obstructions are there to the navigation of this river?—How, then, do vessels pass from one lake to the other?

Through what two rivers and lake must a vessel sail, to go from Lake Erie to Lake Huron?—Where is Georgian Bay?—Of what lake is it a part?

What is the capital of Canada?—Where is Quebec situated?—Montreal?—Kingston?—On what river is London?—Across what lake would you sail, to go from Port Stanley to Cleveland?—From Kingston to Oswego?—Toronto to Rochester?

On what waters would a vessel sail, to go from Hamilton to Quebec?—From Quebec to Halifax?—From Halifax to St. John?—From St. John to Boston?

What river separates New Brunswick from Quebec?—What river flows through the province into the Bay of Fundy?—What bay lies between Nova Scotia and New Brunswick?—For what is this bay remarkable?—What two bays on the eastern coast of New Brunswick?—What strait between Nova Scotia and Cape Breton Island?—Between Newfoundland and Labrador?

What is the capital of New Brunswick?—Where is it situated?—In what province is St. John?—St. John's?—On what waters would you sail, to go from St. John to St. John's?—Where would you find the highest tides: at St. John, or at Halifax?—Where is Halifax?

Where is Sable Island?—(The only inhabitants of this island are a few persons employed by the Government to succor wrecked vessels.)—Where is Anticosti Island?—(This island belongs to Canada East; its only inhabitants are two families—keepers of light-houses upon the coast.)

What two small islands are south of Newfoundland?—To what country do they belong?—Where are the Grand Banks?—For what purpose do vessels resort there?—To which of the United States do most of the American vessels, engaged in the fisheries, belong?—Which of the provinces are most engaged in the fisheries?

(*See Map of North America.*) Which one of the British Provinces lies on the Pacific Ocean?—What name is given to the territory lying between this and the other provinces?—What islands are west of this province?—What river flows through British Columbia?—What is found upon its banks?—What is the probable occupation of most of the inhabitants?

Between what degrees of latitude are most of the British Provinces situated?—What part of the United States is in the same latitude?—Do the climate and productions, then, of this part of the United States resemble those of the Provinces?

Mention some of the most important productions of Canada.—Why are not cotton, rice, and the sugar-cane cultivated there?

Spell the following words:—Canada, Newfoundland, Erie, Ontario, St. Lawrence, Saguenay, Montmorenci, Montreal, Quebec, Ottawa, Cape Breton, St. Pierre, Miquelon, Toronto, Richelieu, Richibucto, Belleisle, Anticosti.—Give the meaning of Niagara.



**MAP OF THE
BRITISH PROVINCES
OF
NORTH AMERICA**

STATUTE MILES 69.2 TO A DEGREE.
50 100 150 200 250 300 350

Scale 150 miles to an inch.

Longitude West from Washington 0 5 10 15 20

CHAPTER XII.

MEXICO, CENTRAL AMERICA, AND THE WEST INDIES.

I. THESE countries are included within Spanish America, or that part of the American Continent which was first settled by the Spaniards, and is still occupied by their descendants.

[Note.—The extent of Spanish America, and the character of the people, are described in the History of the United States, page 27.]

II. The greater part of Spanish America lies within or near the Torrid Zone. All that portion which borders upon the Pacific contains mountains and table-lands, and therefore exhibits an extraordinary variety of vegetable products. The mineral wealth, particularly in gold and silver, is also very great.

Yet such is the indolence of the people, that agriculture is almost wholly neglected, and the mines are imperfectly worked. The rearing of live-stock better suits the idle habits of the people, and many horned cattle, horses, and mules, are raised. The cattle are slaughtered principally for their hides, horns, and tallow.

III. The only portions of Spanish America now in possession of the mother country are Cuba and Porto Rico. The other colonies threw off the yoke in the first quarter of the present century, and established themselves as independent republics.

Most of them, however, are wretchedly governed; one revolution following another, in endless succession.

IV. Mexico, Central America, and the Isthmus of Panama, occupy the narrowest portion of the Western Continent, and afford the most convenient route between our Atlantic coast and that of the Pacific.

A new interest was awakened in these routes by the vast emigration to California, caused by the discovery of gold.

There were three routes projected: one by the Isthmus of Tehuantepec, in Mexico; another by the way of the river San Juan and Lake Nicaragua, in Central America; the third and most important across the Isthmus of Panama.

The latter has become the great channel of communication between the oceans by means of the Panama Railroad, which was completed in 1855. (*Far Panama, see Map of South America.*)

V. Inhabitants.—The inhabitants of Spanish America are whites, blacks, Indians, and the mixed races. By far the greater part of the population of Mexico and Central America belong to the Indian and mixed races.

MEXICO.

VI. Coast.—Upon the Gulf of Mexico (as we have seen in the United States), the coast is flat and sandy, and therefore deficient in good harbors. The shores of the Pacific, however, are more bold, and abound with fine harbors, which admit ships of the largest size.

VII. Surface.—The interior consists of table-lands, from 4000 to 9000 feet high. They rise abruptly from the Pacific coast, but there is a considerable interval of low land between them and the Gulf of Mexico.

From the Gulf, the table-lands are only accessible by two carriage-roads: one by Jalapa, from Vera Cruz; the other by Saltillo, from Matamoras and Monterey. Both these routes were made the points of attack by the United States Army, in the recent war between the two countries.

What do you understand by Spanish America?—Within what zone does it principally lie?—What, then, is its climate?—What are some of the productions? What part of Spanish America is still in possession of Spain?—What three routes were projected from the Atlantic to the Pacific?—Which has become the great channel of communication?—Who inhabit this country?—What is the character of

The Sierra Madre crosses the table-land from north to south, and forms a continuation of the Rocky Mountains. The highest mountains in Mexico are a line of single peaks (many of them volcanoes), which cross the southern part of the plateau from east to west.

VIII. Climate.—The rainy season continues from May till October; the dry season from October to May. Like all tropical countries which contain high and low lands, Mexico exhibits a great variety of climate.

In ascending from the coast to the surface of the plateau, we find three regions in succession:—the hot, swampy, and pestilential lowlands; the temperate regions, which enjoy a healthful and delightful climate; and the cold, desolate plains above.

IX. Productions.—The vegetable productions vary with the climate—passing through gradual changes, from the lowlands to the surface of the plateau.

Thus, Mexico possesses, in the same latitude, the vegetation of all the zones. The oak and pine are found here, as well as the mahogany, ebony, and palm. Wheat and barley are produced in the cooler regions; and cotton, tobacco, the sugar-cane, and many fruits and spices, in the plains and valleys below. Indian corn grows both on the high and low-lands.

The *Maguey* plant furnishes an intoxicating drink, called *pulque*, of which the Mexicans consume a great quantity. One plant often yields 150 gallons.

The mines of Mexico once yielded immense quantities of gold and silver, but they are now less productive. Iron, copper, and other useful metals have since been discovered, and are worked to a limited extent.

X. Towns.—Mexico, the capital, is situated upon a table-land, 7000 feet above the sea. The capture of this city by General Scott, in 1847, was the closing event of the war with the United States.



VIEW OF THE CITY OF MEXICO.

[This view represents, in the foreground, one of the magnificent aqueducts which supply the city with water. On the left of the centre is the Cathedral, and on the right the two convents of San Augustine and San Francisco. In the distance are represented the volcanoes of Popocatepetl ("Smoking-mountain") and Iztaccihualt ("White Lady")]

Most of the towns in the interior are situated on the table-lands, where the climate is much more healthful than on the swampy regions of the coast. Guanajuato and Zacatecas, on the highlands, are rich in mines of gold and silver.

Vera Cruz and Tampico are the principal ports on the Gulf of Mexico; Acapulco, San Blas, Mazatlan, and Guaymas, are the principal ones on the Pacific coast.

the coast of the Gulf of Mexico?—Which is the principal mountain-chain of Mexico?—Describe the climate of the country.—What are some of the productions?—Are they of more than one climate?—What is *pulque*?—How does the present productiveness of the mines compare with that of the past?—Describe the city of Mexico.—Which are the principal mining towns?—Name the principal ports.

XI. Commerce.— Though Mexico is so rich in natural productions, every branch of industry is neglected. Commerce is, therefore, very limited, and the exports consist of the simplest productions: gold, silver, cattle, hides, and cochineal.

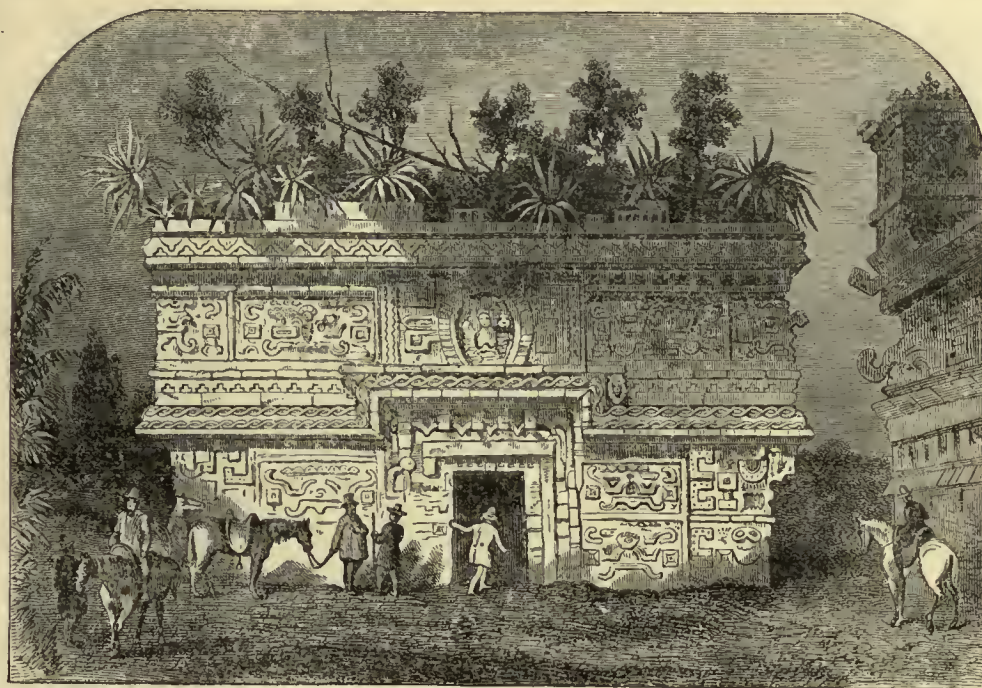
The cochineal is an insect which feeds on a species of cactus. When killed, and dried in the sun, it yields a brilliant crimson dye.

XII. History.— Fernando Cortez, a Spanish adventurer, conquered the country in 1521.

He found there an extensive kingdom, with regular laws, and with cities, temples, public roads, and many of the arts of civilized life. After the conquest, the cruelty of the Spaniards drove the Indians back into a state of barbarism.

In 1821, Mexico became independent of Spain, and established first an empire, then a republican form of government. By the war with the United States, which ceased in 1848, she lost Upper California and New Mexico.

XIII. The Peninsulas of Yucatan and Old California are parts of Mexico but little known. The former is noted for its ruins of ancient temples and cities. Belize, or Balize, (a part of Yucatan,) belongs to the British.



RUINS OF CHICHEN, YUCATAN.

CENTRAL AMERICA.

XIV. Central America comprises the five States of Guatemala, Honduras, San Salvador, Nicaragua, and Costa Rica. In surface, climate, and productions, the country bears a general resemblance to Mexico.

The height of the table-lands gradually decreases towards the Isthmus of Panama, where the surface is varied by a chain of low hills. Along the south-western edge of the plateau is a line of volcanoes, which form a part of the great volcanic chain on the Pacific coast of America.

XV. Towns.— The largest city in Central America is New Guatemala, the capital of the State of Guatemala.

Comayagua is the capital of Honduras; San Salvador, of San Salvador; Leon, of Nicaragua; and San José, of Costa Rica.

WEST INDIES.

XVI. The West India Islands form three divisions: the Greater Antilles, the Lesser Antilles, and the Bahamas.

The Greater Antilles consist of Cuba, Hayti, Jamaica, and Porto Rico. The Lesser Antilles include the chain of islands which extend from Porto Rico to South America. The Antilles are mountainous, and are supposed to be the remains of a mountain-chain, which, at some remote period, connected North and South America.

The Bahamas are low islands, of coral formation. Guanahani, one of the Bahama Islands, was the first land, of the New World, discovered by Columbus.

XVII. The climate and productions of the West Indies are tropical.

The climate is generally healthful, except in the rainy season. The islands are subject to terrific hurricanes. Sugar, molasses, rum, coffee, tobacco, mahogany, spices, and tropical fruits, form the chief exports.

XVIII. Inhabitants.— The population of the West Indies consists principally of whites, free negroes, and slaves.

What are the exports of Mexico?—What is cochineal?—Who first conquered Mexico?—When did it become independent?—For what is Yucatan noted?—Where is Balize?—To what country does it belong?—Name the Political Divisions of Central America.—Which is the largest city of Central America?—Name the capital of each of the States of Central America.—What divisions do the West Indies form?

About one sixth of the inhabitants are white. The negroes were once all slaves, but, except in Cuba and Porto Rico, they are now free. A considerable number of Chinese, called *Coolies*, have been taken to some of the islands, to labor upon the plantations.

XIX. Most of the West India Islands are in possession of European nations.

Cuba and Porto Rico belong to Spain; Jamaica, the Bahamas, and most of the Lesser Antilles, to Great Britain; Hayti is independent; and the remaining islands are owned by France, Denmark, Holland, Sweden, and Venezuela.

Cuba, the "Queen of the Antilles," is the richest of Spain's possessions. It is about as large as the State of Kentucky, and nearly equal in area to all the rest of the West Indies. The extensive foreign commerce of the island is chiefly carried on through Havana and Matanzas.

Jamaica is a very beautiful and fertile island; but, like the rest of the British West Indies, the amount of her productions and commerce has of late years greatly decreased. Kingston is the largest town.

XX. Hayti embraces two distinct States: the Republic of Dominica and the Republic of Hayti.

The island once belonged to France and Spain. In 1791, the slaves in the western, or French division, rose against their masters, and, after a bloody and cruel war, succeeded in establishing themselves, first as an empire, then as an independent republic.

In 1849, Soulouque (who was then President) proclaimed himself Emperor, with the title of Faustin I. After a reign of ten years, Soulouque was deposed, and, in 1859, a republican form of government was again adopted. In 1821, the eastern division revolted from Spain, and formed a republican government.

Hayti is noted for its beautiful scenery and for the fertility of its soil, which is capable of producing every variety of tropical vegetation.

XXI. The Bermuda Islands are situated in the Atlantic Ocean, north of the West Indies. They belong to Great Britain.

There are about 400 of these islands. Most of them are so small and barren that they have neither name nor inhabitants. [For location, see map of N. America.]

Which are the Greater Antilles?—The Lesser Antilles?—Are they level or mountainous?—Are the Bahama Islands high or low lands?—Name some of the productions of the West Indies.—In which of the islands are there slaves?—In whose possession are most of the islands?—Which belong to Spain?—Great Britain?—Which is independent?—Where are the Bermuda Islands?—To whom do they belong?



QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF MEXICO, CENTRAL AMERICA, AND THE WEST INDIES.

STATISTICAL.

Which of these divisions are parts of the mainland of North America?—Which one consists entirely of islands?—How many States of the size of Missouri would Mexico make?—What Southern State has about the same area as Hayti?—Which is the larger: Cuba, or Kentucky?—Jamaica, or Connecticut?

MEXICO AND CENTRAL AMERICA.

OUTLINE.

Between what gulf and ocean is Mexico?—What country bounds it on the north? What gulf indents its western coast?—Name the peninsula between this gulf and the Pacific Ocean.—Between what two bays is the peninsula of Yucatan?

Between what sea and ocean is Central America?—What channel separates Yucatan from Cuba?—Where is the Mosquito Coast?—Between what two bodies of water is the Isthmus of Tehuantepec?—Is it in Mexico or Central America?

What cape at the southern extremity of the peninsula of California?—What one on the eastern coast?—Where is Cape Gracias a Dios?—Cape Roxo?—Cape Tetaz?—Cape Corrientes?—Which coast of these countries has the best harbors: the Pacific, or that of the Gulf of Mexico and Caribbean Sea?

SURFACE.

Of what does the interior of Mexico and Central America consist?—What is the general height of these table-lands?—Does the elevation increase, or diminish, towards the Isthmus of Panama?—On which coast do the table-lands rise most abruptly from the sea?

Near which coast is there most low land?—By what carriage-roads is the Mexican plateau accessible from the Gulf of Mexico?—What use was made of these roads by the United States army during the late war between the two countries?

What mountain-chain crosses the Mexican Plateau from north to south?—Where is the volcano of Popocatepetl?—Jorullo?—Where are the volcanoes of Central America?

LAKES AND RIVERS.

What river partly separates Mexico from the United States?—What large river of the United States flows into the head of the Gulf of California?—What large lake in Central America?—What river flows from it into the Caribbean Sea?—Name four rivers which flow down the western declivity of the Sierra Madre Mountains.—Two that flow down the eastern declivity.—What lake in Mexico near the parallel of 20°?

CLIMATE AND PRODUCTIONS.

In what zones is Mexico?—In what zone is Central America?—Why do these countries exhibit such a variety of climate and vegetation?

In what part of these countries is the climate hot and unhealthy?—What are the productions of the low lands?—Describe the climate of the more elevated regions.—Name the productions raised there.

Does Indian corn grow on the high or low lands?—Where do the fruits and spices grow?—Wheat and barley?—The sugar-cane?—What intoxicating drink is made in Mexico?—What dye from the cochineal insect?

What precious metals are found in Mexico and Central America?—How does the present productiveness of the mines compare with that of the past?—What useful minerals are found in Mexico?

POLITICAL DIVISIONS AND TOWNS.

To what division do the peninsulas of California and Yucatan belong?—Name the five States of Central America.—Which is the most northern of these States?—The most southern?—The most eastern?—Where is the Balize?—To what country does it belong?

Why are the towns of the interior of Mexico more healthful than those upon the coast?—What is the capital of Mexico?—Name the principal seaports upon the Gulf of Mexico.—Why did the American army march through Jalapa on its way from Vera Cruz to Mexico?

Near the mouth of what river is Matamoras?—What town in the United States is on the opposite bank of the river?—Name some of the largest towns of the mining districts.—Where is Tampico?—Which is farther north: Tampico, or Vera Cruz?

Name the principal ports on the Pacific coast.—Which two of them are situated on the Gulf of California?—Where is the town of Balize?—Where is Greytown?—On what State of Central America is San José the capital?—Comayagua?—Leon?—New Guatemala?

THE WEST INDIES.

Name the three divisions of the West India Islands.—Which are the Greater Antilles?—Where are the Lesser Antilles?—How do the Bahama Islands differ in surface from the Antilles?

Name the bodies of water by which the West Indies are surrounded.—Which group extends farthest to the north?—To the east and south?—What island is farthest west?—Name the largest one of the West India Islands.—Which is next in size?

Which of the West India Islands is independent?—Which of them belong to Spain?—To Great Britain?—To what European and South American countries do the others belong?

In what zone are most of these islands?—What, then, is the climate?—Is it generally healthful?—What are the principal exports?—What proportion of the inhabitants are whites?—In which of the islands are there slaves?

Which of the West Indies was first discovered by Columbus?—In what direction is this island from Cuba?—Where is Havana?—Kingston?—Matanzas?—St. Domingo?—St. John?—Port-au-Prince?—Where are the Bermuda Islands?—To what country do they belong?—What are the two divisions of the island of Hayti?

What passage between Cuba and Hayti?—What one between Hayti and Porto Rico?—Name three of the Leeward Islands.—Name three of the Windward Islands.—What does Florida Strait connect?—What does it separate?—In what direction from South America are the Greater Antilles?—From the United States?—What cape at the western extremity of Cuba?—What cape at its eastern extremity?—What large island south of the western part of Cuba?—What cape on the eastern coast of Hayti?—What large town in eastern central Cuba?—Where is Cienfuegos?—Aux Cayes?—Cape Haytien?—In what part of Cuba are the Copper Mountains?

Cuba imports from the United States fish, butter, cheese, pork, lard, lumber, machinery, Indian corn, ice, flour, &c.—Mention some of the articles the United States receives in return.

MISCELLANEOUS.

What do you understand by Spanish America?—What parts of Spanish America are now in possession of Spain?—When did their other colonies become free?—What is the present condition of those republics?—Which do you think the more prosperous countries: those settled by the Spaniards, or by the English?—What reasons can you assign for this difference?

Name the islands, two peninsulas, and divisions of the mainland, which form the principal boundaries of the Gulf of Mexico.—What bay forms the southern part of this gulf?—Which division of the West Indies is north of the Caribbean Sea?—Which is east?—What land bounds this sea on the south?—On the west?

Name some articles with which you would freight a vessel at Havana for New York.—What would you ship from New York in return?—Between what islands would you sail, to go by the windward passage from the Caribbean Sea into the Atlantic Ocean?

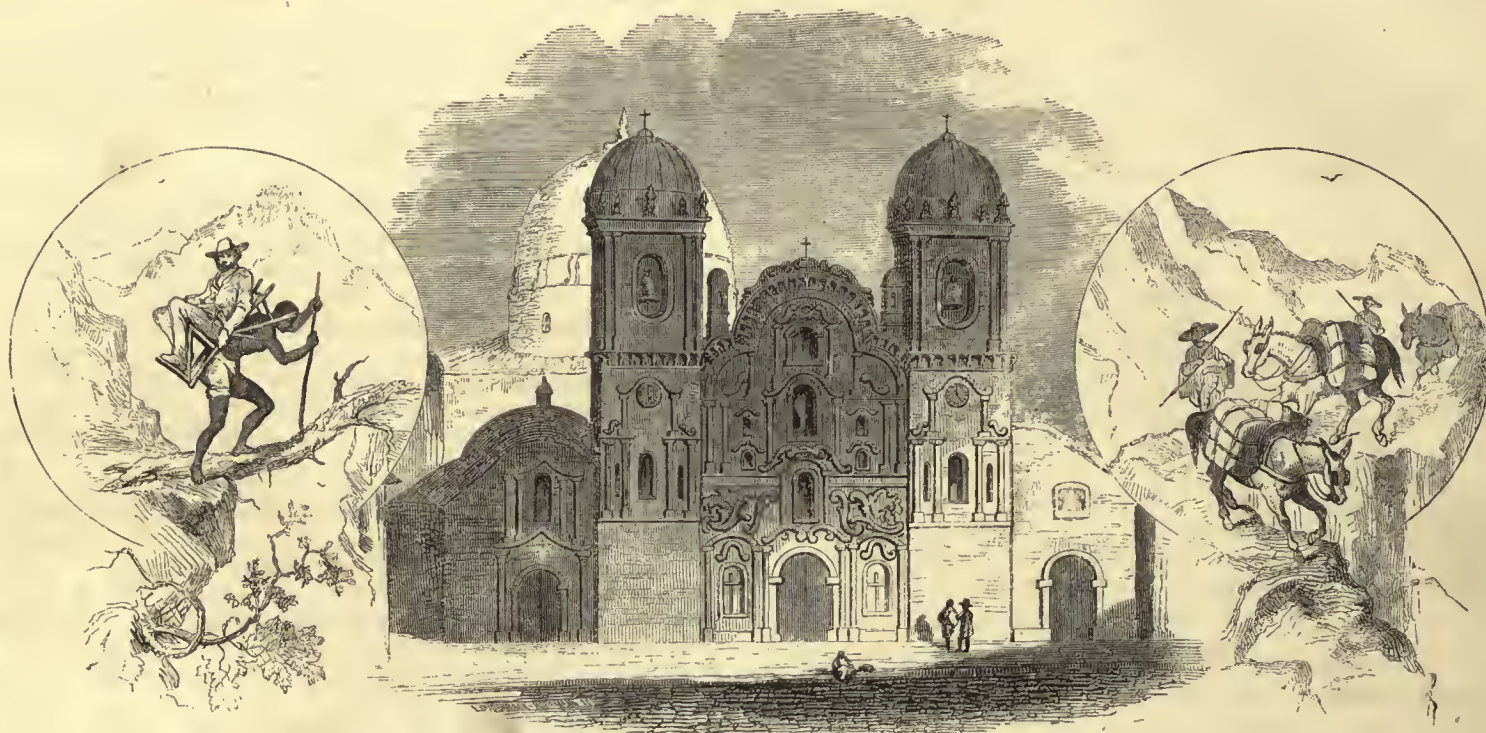
Give the history of Mexico.—What can you say of Yucatan and California?—To which division of the West Indies does the first land discovered by Columbus belong?—Is it a mountainous or a low island?

What two important cities of the West Indies are very nearly on the Tropic of Cancer?

What three regions do you find in Mexico, in ascending from the coast to the surface of the plateau?—Why are there so many varieties of vegetation in the same latitude?—What vegetable products grow in the cooler or upland region?—What in the valleys?

Which do you think is the healthier city, Vera Cruz, or Mexico?—Why?—Does the Gulf of Mexico or the Pacific coast present the best harbors?—Why?

Bound Mexico; Central America.—Name the principal mountain-chains, rivers, and towns.—Sketch a map of the West Indiae.



SILLERO AND TRAVELLER.

CHURCH OF THE JESUITS, AT CUZCO.

DESCENDING THE ANDES.

CHAPTER XIII.

SOUTH AMERICA.

PHYSICAL FEATURES.

I. Outline.—South America is a great peninsula, connected with North America by the Isthmus of Panama. Unlike North America, the coast is indented by no large bays and gulfs.

This is one of the principal reasons why the interior is not better known to Europeans, and more thickly settled by them.

II. Surface.—South America contains three principal mountain-systems: the Andes, Parime, and Brazilian Mountains.

III. The Andes are a part of the great mountain-system of the Western Continent. They form one of the grandest mountain-ranges in the world.

They commence in low hills on the Isthmus of Panama, and terminate in the island of Cape Horn, which is a black and naked rock, rising 3500 feet from the sea. In Patagonia, they rise abruptly from the shore; but further north, they retreat to the distance of 60 or 100 miles from the coast.

The Andes consist generally of parallel ranges of lofty mountains, with high valleys and table-lands between them—the whole mass being from 30 to 400 miles wide.

The region of the Andes is subject to earthquakes and volcanic eruptions. The towns among the highlands and along the coast are, therefore, liable to be destroyed by these convulsions of nature; and, indeed, many splendid cities have been laid in ruins. This is true, also, of Mexico, Central America, and the West Indies.

The table-lands of the Andes are great plains far above the level of the sea, surrounded by ramparts of snow-capped heights and smoking volcanoes. The Great

How does the coast of South America differ from that of North America?—What effect has this had upon the settlement of the country by Europeans?—What are the three mountain-systems?—Describe the Andes.—The Great Plateau of the Andes,

Plateau, in the centre of the system, is about a thousand miles long. It contains Lake Titicaca, 12,800 feet above the sea, and supports some of the loftiest mountains of the Andes.

The southern part of the Great Plateau is called *Despoblado* (“uninhabited”). This is a desert plain, a large portion of which is covered with salt. The Plateaus of Bogota, Quito, and Pepayan, are from 7000 to 10,000 feet high.

IV. The Parime system comprises several parallel ranges, extending from east to west, between the Orinoco and Amazon rivers. They have an average elevation of 3000 or 4000 feet.

V. The Brazilian Mountains (or Brazilian Andes) extend along the south-east coast of Brazil for more than 2000 miles. Their average elevation is about 3500 feet.

VI. The whole country east of the Andes, with the exception of the Parime and Brazilian Mountains, is a vast plain. It is generally so level, that in the rainy season, when the rivers overflow their banks, vast tracts of country are laid under water, presenting the appearance of large inland seas.

VII. This great plain comprises the basins of the Orinoco, the Amazon, and the La Plata.

The Llanos (Plains) of the Orinoco, at the close of the wet season, are covered with rich grass; but in the dry months, the lakes and pools are dried up, the vegetation is withered, and the hot winds sweep clouds of dust over the parched and desolate plain.

The Silvas, or “forest plains,” cover the lower part of the valley of the Amazon, and extend along the banks of that river for 1500 miles from its mouth. They are copiously watered throughout the year.

The Pampas, or “treeless plains” of the La Plata, are covered with thistles and coarse grass. South of the Pampas is the stony desert of Patagonia. This includes all the country east of the Andes, and south of the River Negro.

What does *Despoblado* mean?—Describe the Parime system?—The Brazilian Mountains?—What part of South America is a great plain?—Where are the Llanos?—Silvas?—Pampas?—How do these plains differ?—What kind of country is south of the Pampas?

VIII. Rivers and Lakes.—The three principal rivers of South America are the Orinoco, the Amazon, and the La Plata.

Owing to the flatness of the country, the water-shed between these great rivers is sometimes only a gentle rise in the ground, so slight as to be imperceptible to the eye; and, in the rainy season, the head-waters of the Amazon mingle with those of the Orinoco and La Plata.

The River Cassiquiare connects the Orinoco with the River Negro, a tributary of the Amazon. It sometimes flows from the Orinoco into the River Negro, and sometimes in the opposite direction—as the water is high or low in the rivers which it connects.

The Valley of the Amazon is the largest river-basin in the world; it is two-thirds as large as the United States. Some of the tributaries of this mighty stream are longer than the largest rivers of Europe. The mouth of the Amazon is so wide, that in crossing it you would be as completely out of sight of land, as if you were sailing on the ocean.

The Rio de la Plata, next to the Amazon and Mississippi, drains the largest extent of country of any river in America. Only one river of the Eastern Continent (the Obi) has a larger basin than the La Plata.

A recent exploration of several of its tributaries, by Lieutenant Page, of the U. S. Navy, shows many of them to be navigable nearly to their sources, and the country which they drain to be one of extraordinary productiveness.

Many other rivers of South America are of great importance, and admit an extensive navigation: such as the Magdalena, the rivers of Guiana, and of Brazil.

IX. There are but few permanent lakes of large size in South America. With the exception of Lake Titicaca and Lake Maracaybo, they are more like vast morasses than lakes.

Lake Titicaca is a saltish lake, about half as large as Lake Erie. Its waters do not flow into the ocean. Lake Maracaybo is, more properly speaking, a bay, being connected by a strait with the Caribbean Sea.

X. Climate.—South America lying principally within the Torrid Zone, has, for the most part, a tropical climate.

In the low lands, within the Tropics, the heat is intense; but as we go southward, or ascend the mountains, the climate gradually changes to that of the Temperate Zone. In Patagonia, the cold becomes severe; and, in the Strait of Magellan, snow falls almost every day.

XI. Productions.—In no other country do we find more luxuriance, and a greater variety of vegetation, than in South America.

The forests yield many kinds of rare and valuable wood: as the rosewood, mahogany, logwood, and caoutchouc tree (from the sap of which India-rubber is made). Medicinal plants of great value are also found here: as sarsaparilla, ipecacuanha, and the cinchona tree (from which Peruvian bark is obtained).

The forests cover a large portion of the country; and are frequently so dense, and so entangled by shrubs, twining-plants, and sharp-edged grasses, that an axe is necessary to clear the way.

The immense herds of horses and cattle that roam over the great plains are among the chief sources of wealth to the inhabitants. The slaughter of oxen, for their hides, is the principal business in many parts of the country. Gold, silver, copper, and diamonds, are found in abundance.

XII. Animals.—The beasts of prey, though numerous and formidable, are much inferior, in size, strength, and ferocity, to those of Asia and Africa.

The jaguar, or South American tiger, and the condor of the Andes, are among the largest animals of South America. The vampire-bat is a singular creature, which lives by sucking the blood of animals. The Llama is much used in the mountain regions as a beast of burden.

No part of the world contains a greater number and variety of reptiles and insects than are found in the low lands of South America. Huge alligators and water-

Which are the three principal rivers of South America?—Is the water-shed between them high or low land?—Into what does the Cassiquiare flow, when the Orinoco is high and the Rio Negro low?—What is said of the Basin of the Amazon?—The La Plata?—Are there any other rivers of importance in South America?—Describe the lakes.—Is it, in general, a hot or cold country?—What are some of the productions?

snakes swarm in the rivers and marshes of the tropical regions; the boa-constrictor attains a monstrous size; and many venomous snakes lie coiled under the leaves.

Scorpions, centipedes, and spiders, in some sections, keep the traveller in constant alarm; while the incessant stinging of flies, mosquitoes, and other insects, renders life miserable,—indeed, some places are so infested with these plagues as to be quite uninhabitable even by the Indians.



SOUTH AMERICAN SCENERY.

XIII. Inhabitants.—The population of South America consists of whites, Indians, negroes, and mixed races.

The whites, who form but a small proportion of the population, are chiefly the descendants of Spanish and Portuguese. They are, in general, an idle people, fond of swinging in their hammocks, and smoking cigars. The negroes were brought into the country for slaves: but most of them have been freed, except in Brazil.

The Indians of the settled States are an inoffensive people, and in some places perform most of the labor of the country. In the interior, however, there are many fierce and savage tribes.

XIV. History.—Columbus landed at the mouth of the Orinoco River, in 1498. The European nations soon took possession of the country. Brazil was settled by the Portuguese; Guiana, by the Dutch and French; and Spain claimed the rest.

In the first quarter of the present century, the Spanish colonies, after a long and severe struggle, threw off the yoke of Spain, and established themselves as independent republics. Brazil, in 1822, effected a peaceable separation from Portugal.

XV. Religion.—The people of South America are chiefly Roman Catholics; except in British and Dutch Guiana, where the Protestant religion prevails.

POLITICAL DIVISIONS.

XVI. The countries embraced within the limits of South America are nine Republics, namely: Venezuela, United States of Colombia, Ecuador, Peru, Bolivia, Chili, the Argentine Confederation, Uruguay, and Paraguay; the Empire of Brazil; the colonies of British, Dutch, and French Guiana; and the unsettled country of Patagonia.

Name some of the animals.—How do they compare with those of the tropical regions of the Old World?—What is said of the reptiles and insects?—What classes does the population comprise?—What is the character of the whites?—By whom was South America first settled?—To what religion are the principal part of the inhabitants attached?—Name the Political Divisions of South America.

**VENEZUELA, UNITED STATES OF COLOMBIA, ECUADOR,
PERU, BOLIVIA.**

XVII. These States are much alike in the character of their surface, climate, and productions. Each of them is divided into three distinct regions: the narrow plain on the coast; the mountains and plateaus in the centre; and the great plains which stretch from the Andes into the interior.

The coast of Venezuela, Ecuador, and the United States of Colombia, is very wet; which fact, combined with the intense heat, makes the climate exceedingly unhealthy. The coast of Bolivia and Peru is dry and barren, for the lofty mountains in these States intercept the rain-clouds in their passage to the Pacific. The Bolivian coast, indeed, is an absolute desert.

XVIII. The largest towns in this region are in the interior, and are generally situated on the table-lands, where the climate is cool and healthy.

Owing to the mountainous character of the country, communication between the towns of the coast and of the interior is difficult, and commerce very limited. Traveling among the mountains is often extremely difficult and dangerous.



There are scarcely any carriage-roads; travellers and goods are carried by mules, or on the backs of men. The traveller sits in a chair which is slung upon the back of the Indian porter; and in this manner they cross the most frightful chasms, upon the slippery trunk of a tree, where a single false step would be fatal.

XIX. Venezuela.—The greater part of this State is included within the Llanos, or plains of the Orinoco.

No white man has ever reached the source of this great river, which flows through a wilderness of forests and plains. Upon the banks dwell a tribe of savages, who partially subsist upon balls of clay. They are called the "dirt-eaters of the Orinoco."

La Guayra is the principal sea-port. Caraccas, the capital, is among the mountains. Margarita, a small island of the West Indies, near the coast, belongs to Venezuela. Margarita (which means "a pearl") was once famous for its pearl-fisheries.

Which of the States resemble each other in surface, climate, and productions?—Into what regions is each divided?—What is the character of the coast of Venezuela, Ecuador, and the United States of Colombia?—Bolivia and Peru?—Where are the principal towns situated?—Where is Venezuela?—What kind of people live on the banks of the Orinoco?—Name the principal sea-port of Venezuela?—What is the capital?

XX. United States of Colombia.—The Andes are divided, in this Republic, into three chains. Down the valleys between them flow the Magdalena and Cauca, the principal rivers of the country.

Cartagena is the principal sea-port. Aspinwall and Panama, on opposite shores of the Isthmus of Panama, are connected by a railroad. Bogota (the capital) and Popayan are on lofty table-lands in the interior, several thousand feet above the sea.

XXI. Ecuador is crossed by the Equator, and derives its name from that circumstance. It contains Chimborazo, Cotopaxi, and several more of the most famous volcanoes of the Andes.

Quito, the capital, is situated on an elevated plain, almost directly under the Equator. Guayaquil, on the gulf of that name, is the principal sea-port.

XXII. Peru, though now of little importance among nations, is remarkable for its history.

At the time of the discovery of the New World, Peru, like Mexico, was inhabited by Indians, who were considerably advanced in civilization. They were governed by a race of princes, called Incas, whose empire extended along the Andes, from the United States of Colombia to the southern boundary of Chili.

Pizarro, a bold Spanish adventurer, had heard of the wealth of Peru, and the great abundance of its gold and silver. With a small band of fierce and brave followers, he entered the country, took possession of the empire and treasure of the Incas, and Peru thus became a part of the Spanish possessions.

The Chincha and Lobos Islands, which lie on the coast, belong to Peru. They are of great value for the immense quantity of guano found upon them. It is exported to Europe and the United States, for manure.

Lima, the capital of Peru, is a large city, six miles from the coast, and is situated in a fine river valley. Callao is the principal sea-port. Among the mountain towns are Cerro Pasco, famous for its silver mines; Cuzco, the capital of the ancient Peruvian monarchy; Arequipa, and Huamanga.

XXIII. Bolivia was named in honor of General Bolivar, under whose guidance the people threw off the yoke of Spain.

The Bolivian coast is a narrow strip of barren country, and contains no sea-port of any importance. The foreign trade is carried on through Peru and La Plata; but communication is so difficult, that few of the products will pay the cost of transportation to the coast.

Potosi stands on the side of a mountain of the same name, at the height of 13,350 feet above the level of the sea, and is said to be the highest city in the world. The silver-mines of Potosi are estimated to have yielded the value of sixteen hundred millions of dollars since their discovery; but though they are nearly as rich as ever, they are not now worked, for want of proper enterprise.

Sucre, the capital, and La Paz, the largest town, are on the high table-lands of the interior.

XXIV. The exports of this section of South America are made principally from La Guayra and Cartagena on the Caribbean Sea, and Guayaquil and Callao on the Pacific Ocean.

From La Guayra are shipped coffee, cotton, sugar, cacao, indigo, and hides; from the other ports, gold and silver, hides, some tobacco, cotton, and Peruvian bark.

CHILI.

XXV. Chili lies wholly upon the western side of the Andes. The greater part of the country is covered with hills, which branch off from that great chain, and diminish in height as they approach the coast.

The most fertile districts of Chili are in the southern half of the country. Towards the north, the hills become more naked and barren, and finally merge into the Desert of Atacama on the Bolivian coast.

Describe the United States of Colombia.—What is the capital?—From what does Ecuador derive its name?—What is the capital?—For what is Peru remarkable?—Name the capital.—In honor of whom was Bolivia named?—Through what countries does it carry on its foreign trade?—For what is Potosi noted?—What is the capital of Bolivia?—The largest town?—Where is Chili?—What is the character of the surface.

XXVI. One of the Juan Fernandez Islands, 400 miles from Chili, is famous for having been the solitary residence of Alexander Selkirk, a Scotch sailor. His life and adventures in this lonely spot are supposed to have given rise to the story of Robinson Crusoe.

XXVII. The climate of Chili is temperate, and remarkably healthy. The rains fall in the winter months, from June to September, and the country is soon covered with wild flowers and verdure.

XXVIII. The Chilians are more active and intelligent than the other inhabitants of Spanish America, and are making considerable advancement in their state of society.

The Araucanians are a bold and warlike tribe of savages, inhabiting a distinct territory in the southern part of Chili. They are a noble race; and, by their singular valor, have always maintained their independence of Spanish rule.

Santiago is the capital of Chili. Valparaiso is the principal sea-port, and the most important city on the western coast of South America. Copper and other metals are exported in considerable quantities from Copiapo and Tongoy. Wheat is also an important article of export.

THE ARGENTINE CONFEDERATION.

XXIX. The Argentine Confederation consists of a number of States united under a government modelled after that of the United States.

XXX. Buenos Ayres, the most important State of the Republic, for a long time maintained an independent government, and was frequently at war with the other States. It is now, however (1867), again a member of the Confederation.

Buenos Ayres, the capital, is the largest city in the Basin of the La Plata, and one of the most important commercial cities in South America. Parana is rapidly increasing in population. Rosario, on the Parana River, has of late years become a commercial mart of much importance. Mendoza is the centre of trade between Buenos Ayres and Chili.

URUGUAY.

XXXI. This republic has, from its position, and the fertility of its soil, many natural advantages; but the wars, which it has been forced to carry on with Buenos Ayres, have checked the commerce and industry of the country.

Since the navigation of the La Plata has been made free, however, it is probable that commerce will increase. Montevideo is the capital, and the only town of importance.

PARAGUAY.

XXXII. This country, situated far in the interior, has hitherto had but little communication with foreigners. Assumption is the capital.

Maté, or Paraguay tea, is the dried leaf of an evergreen tree which grows in great abundance in Paraguay. A beverage made from this tea is a favorite drink in South American countries.

XXXIII. Uruguay and Paraguay were formerly members of the Argentine Confederation. Paraguay was for many years governed by the dictator, Dr. Francia, who obliged the people to be educated, and to engage in some useful employment. It is only since his death, in 1840, that the country has been opened to strangers.

The exports of the countries occupying the basin of the Rio de la Plata are principally made from the cities of Buenos Ayres and Montevideo. They consist mainly of hides, horns, bones, tallow, and wool.

For what is one of the Juan Fernandez Islands famous?—What is the climate of Chili?—Who are the Araucanians?—Name the most important towns of Chili.—What can you say of the Argentine Confederation and Buenos Ayres?—What has prevented the advancement of Uruguay?—Where is Paraguay?—What is *Maté*?—Through what cities are the products of the La Plata countries exported?

BRAZIL.

XXXIV. The central and eastern regions of this immense empire form a table-land of moderate elevation, crossed by hills, which in general rise to only a trifling height above its level.

The low lands of the interior and on the coast are excessively moist and hot. The table-lands and the provinces of the south have a milder and drier climate.



FAMILY CONVEYANCE IN BRAZIL.

Brazil is one of the richest countries in the world, in its natural productions. Its commerce is very extensive. The gold mines are productive, and most of the diamonds now in use come from Brazil.

Rio Janeiro, the capital, has one of the finest harbors in the world, and is a place of great trade. Bahia, Pernambuco, Maranhão, and Pará, are also large and important commercial cities. The towns in the interior are small, and of but little note.

The exports of Brazil are coffee, hides, sugar, rice, cotton, rosewood, caoutchouc (or India-rubber), Peruvian bark, and many other articles. Caoutchouc and Peruvian bark are brought down the Amazon, and are principally shipped from Pará. The greatest quantity of coffee is sent from Rio Janeiro.

GUIANA.

XXXV. Guiana is a low and fertile region, with a climate and productions wholly tropical. The heat is very great.

It is divided into British, Dutch, and French Guiana. Georgetown is the capital of the British; Paramaribo, of the Dutch; and Cayenne, of the French portion. The exports are sugar, rum, coffee, cocoa, indigo, and tropical fruits.

PATAGONIA.

XXXVI. Patagonia is a sterile country, inhabited only by native tribes of Indians. The Patagonians are a tall and muscular people, many of whom are more than six feet in height. They subsist upon their herds of cattle, and by hunting.

Terra del Fuego is the most southern part of the inhabited world, and is peopled by a race of miserable savages, who live chiefly by fishing.

The *Falkland Islands*, off Patagonia, belong to Great Britain. Great numbers of wild cattle find pasturage there, and seals are hunted for their fur. A British colony has been established, but the population is very small.

Describe the surface of Brazil.—Its climate.—Name some of its productions.—What is the capital?—What are the principal sea-ports?—What are some of the exports?—What kind of country is Guiana?—To what European nations does it belong?—What are the exports?—Who inhabit Patagonia?—Where is *Terra del Fuego*?—To what country do the *Falkland Islands* belong?—Where are they?



CARIBBEAN S.E.A. Minas L. Patuxia
 ASPINWALL Chagres Gatun R. Frijol
ISTHMUS OF PANAMA
 Chagres R. Barbacons Panama R.
 Route of THE RAILROAD FROM ASPINWALL TO PANAMA.
 EQUATOR

MAP OF SOUTH AMERICA.

STATUTE MILES 69.2 TO A DEGREE.
 50 100 200 300 400 500 600 700 800 900 1000 1100 1200
 Scale 470 miles to an inch.

QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF SOUTH AMERICA.

OUTLINE.

How does the outline of South America differ from that of North America?—Which has the greatest number of large islands near the coast?—What ocean is east of South America?—What ocean is west?—What sea is north?—Are the West India Islands included in North or South America?—By what country in South America is the island of Margarita owned?—By what strait is Terre del Fuego separated from Patagonia?

Where are the Falkland Islands?—To what country do they belong?—Where are the islands of Juan Fernandez?—For what are they famous?—To what country does the island of Chiloe belong?—Where are the Lobos and Chinchu Islands?—To what country do they belong?—For what are they valuable?

What is the most northern cape of South America?—Where is Cape Parina?—Cape St. Roque?—Cape Horn?—What is Cape Horn?—What bay south of the Isthmus of Panama?—What gulf on the coast of Ecuador?

SURFACE.

What three mountain-systems in South America?—Which of these skirts the western coast?—Through how many degrees of latitude does it extend?—What is the character of this system on the Isthmus of Panama?

How far are the Andes from the Pacific coast?—Do they generally consist of one or of several chains?—What is the breadth of the system?—To what convulsions of nature is the region of the Andes liable?—What effect have these upon the towns?—What other parts of Spanish America are subject to the same disasters?

How high is the loftiest summit of the Andes?—In what country is it situated?—Where is Chimborazo?—Sorata?—Cotopaxi?—Potosi?—Which of these are volcanoes?—Is any mountain of North America as high as Aconcagua?

Where are the Brazilian Mountains?—Between what rivers do the Parime Mountains lie?—What is the character of the surface of South America, east of the Andes, with the exception of these two systems?—In what general direction does the land slope?

RIVERS AND LAKES.

Into what ocean do the principal rivers of South America flow?—Why are those on the east side of the Andes the largest?—Name the three principal rivers.—Why do their head-waters sometimes mingle?—In what season does this occur?

Which is the largest river in South America?—What is the area of its basin?—Has any other river a larger basin?—In what three mountain-systems do the waters of this basin rise?—Which of these systems is on the west?—On the north?—The south-east?

The Amazon is formed by the union of the Tunguragua and Ucayale: in what mountains do they rise?—In what country?—Over what kind of surface do they flow?—What is the length of the Amazon?—What kind of surface is drained by the Amazon, east of the Andes?—What island at the mouth of the Amazon?

What is the largest tributary of the River Amazon on the north?—How is it connected with the Orinoco?—Name the largest tributary on the south.—Which of the southern tributaries discharges itself near the mouth of the Amazon?—Name the two tributaries between the Tocantins and the Madeira.

Between what two mountain-chains is the Basin of the Orinoco situated?—What are the plains of the Orinoco called?—In what general direction does this river flow?—Between what two mountain-systems is the La Plata Basin situated?—Which of these partly separates it from the Basin of the Amazon?

Which has the most numerous lakes: North or South America?—What is the general character of the South American lakes?—In what countries is Lake Titicaca situated?—How high is it located?—Do its waters flow into the sea?—Where is Lake Maracaybo?

In what country is the Magdalena River?—What is its principal tributary?—Name the bodies of water through which you would pass, sailing from the mouth of the Cauca to that of the Madeira.—In what country is the Essequibo River?—Into what does it flow?

Down what rivers would you float from Lake Xarayes to reach the Ocean?—In what mountain-system do the Parana, Paraguay, Uruguay, and San Francisco rivers rise?—Why does the San Francisco flow in an opposite direction from the others?—What river separates Patagonia from the Argentine Confederation?

CLIMATE.

On which side of the Equator is the greater part of South America situated?—Would you find the climate growing warmer or colder, in going southward from the Equator?—In what zones is South America?

Which zone contains the greatest extent of South America?—What, then, is the prevailing character of the climate: temperate or tropical?—Where will you find (in the tropical portion of the country) a mild and temperate climate?

How many seasons are there in the tropical region?—In what months is the wet season, in the northern half of the Torrid Zone?—In the southern half?—If you should cross the Llanos of the Orinoco in July, would you find them clothed with verdure, or parched with heat?

What is the season, in Rio Janeiro, in July?—Is December one of the rainy or dry months at that place?—Do the seasons in the South Temperate Zone occur in the same months as in the North Temperate? (See lesson on Zones, page 8.)—What is the season in Chili, then, in July and August?—In December and January?

POLITICAL DIVISIONS.

Name the countries bordering on the Pacific, beginning at the north.—Which of these are in the Torrid Zone?—In the Temperate?—What unsettled territory at the south?—Name the four divisions on the northern coast.—Name all those on the Atlantic coast between Guiana and Patagonia.

Which is the largest of the South American countries?—Which has the smallest extent of sea-coast?—What is the character of that coast?—Describe the climate of the Peruvian coast.—Of the coast of Ecuador, United States of Colombia, and Venezuela.

What is the government of Brazil?—To what country does Guiana belong?—What is the government of the other countries?—From what European nation is the white population of Brazil descended?—The whites of the Spanish republics?—By whom is the interior of South America chiefly inhabited?

What countries are partly included within the Basin of the La Plata?—In what confederation were Uruguay and Paraguay once included?—Between what two rivers is Paraguay situated?

What was the extent of the empire of the Incas?—Where is Araucania?—Why is it independent?—Where is the Desert of Atacama?—What kind of a country is Patagonia?—Describe the Patagonians.

MISCELLANEOUS.

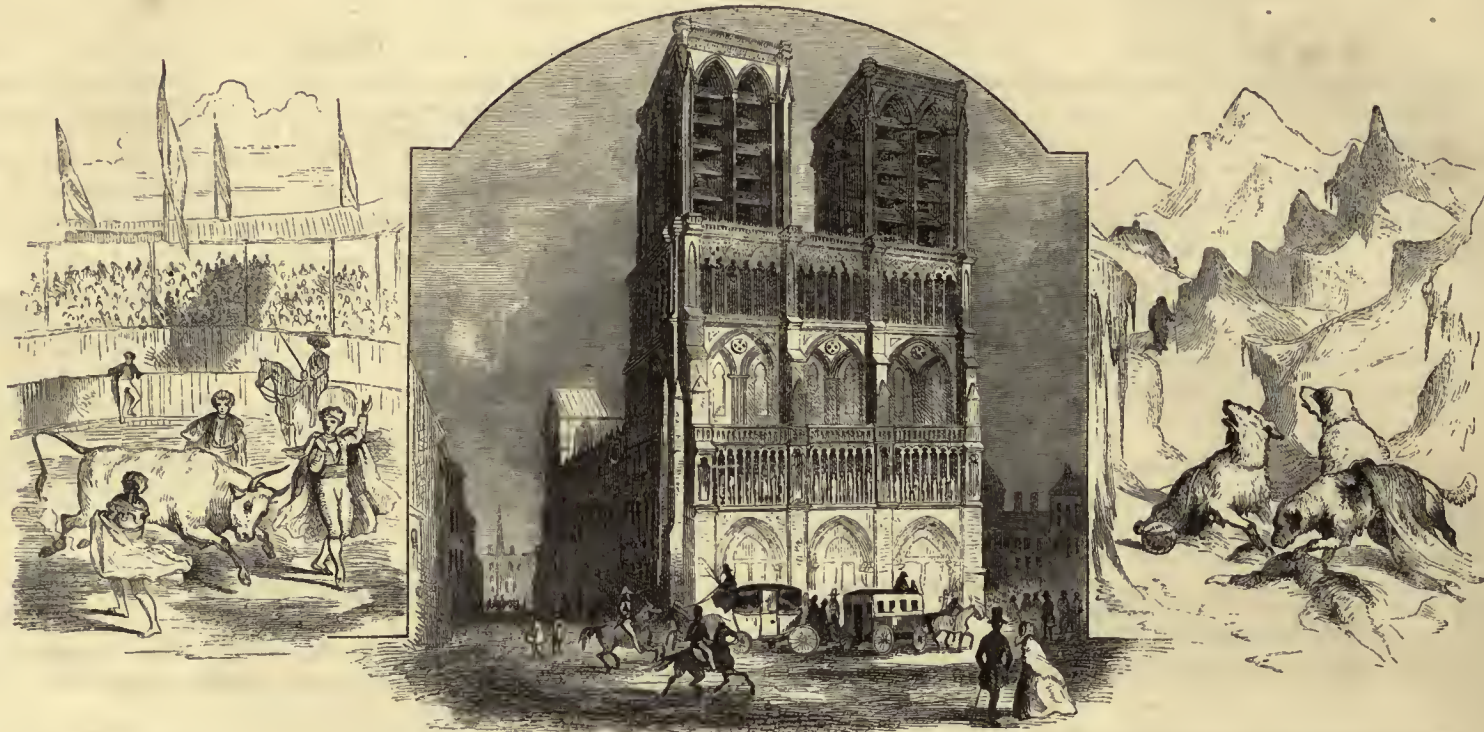
Why are many of the towns in South America situated among the mountains?—Why are the towns on the coast of Venezuela, United States of Colombia, and Ecuador, unhealthy?—Why are the coasts of Peru and Bolivia so dry?

Are the following towns on the coast, or among the mountains: La Guayra, Bogota, Cayenne, Caracas, Aspinwall, Panama, Popayau, Quito, Guayaquil, Cuzco, Potosi, Callao, Lima, Valparaiso, Sucre, Arequipa, Huamanga, Tongoy?—Let each scholar describe the situation of one of these towns.

Ship a cargo of goods from Para to New York: what articles would be sent, and across what ocean?—From Rio Janeiro to Baltimore?—From the Chinchu and Lobos Islands to Philadelphia?—From Valparaiso to San Francisco?

From what ports would tin and copper be exported?—Diamonds?—Gold?—Hides?—Coffee?—Cocoa?—Rum?—Sugar and molasses?—Peruvian bark?—From what country is Yerba Maté obtained?—Where is it principally consumed?

Bound each of the divisions of South America.—Sketch a map of South America, locating the principal mountains and rivers, and the chief towns.—Spell the following words:—Quito. Cassiquiare. Guiana. Maracaybo. Magellan. Venezuela. Rio Janeiro. Uruguay. Paraguay. La Guayra. Caracas. Chimborazo. Cotopaxi. Guayaquil. Callao. Cuzco. Arequipa. Huamanga. Araucania. Montevideo. Bahia. Paramaribo. Cayenne. Falkland. Chiloe. Aconcagua. Tunguragua. Ucayale. Madeira.



BULL-FIGHT.

CHURCH OF NOTRE DAME, AT PARIS.

CONVENT OF ST. BERNARD.

CHAPTER XIV.

EUROPE.

PHYSICAL FEATURES.

I. THE outline of Europe is more irregular than that of any other division of the earth. Large seas and gulfs penetrate far into the interior, affording unequalled advantages for commercial intercourse.

II. Surface.—Europe is crossed from west to east by a great mountain-system, which is continued, in Asia, to the Pacific Ocean.

The principal parts of this system, in Europe, are the Cantabrian Mountains, the Pyrenees, the Cévennes, the Alps, the Balkan Mountains, and the Caucasus.

Southward from this great chain (both in Europe and Asia) extend a number of peninsulas, each penetrated by a branch of the principal system. Thus, in Spain we find the Sierra Morena and Sierra Nevada; in Italy, the Apennines; and in Greece, the chain of Mount Pindus.

The Carpathians, and the mountains of Germany, are also branches of the central chain. The only mountains of any importance, not connected with the principal system, are those of the Scandinavian Peninsula, and the Ural Mountains.

III. Northward from this mountain-system extends a great plain, which stretches from the Pacific to the Atlantic Oceans.

The European division of this great plain extends from the Ural Mountains to the western shores of France. It includes Russia, Northern Germany, Denmark, Holland, Belgium, and part of France. A large portion of this plain is remarkably level, often extending many hundred miles with scarcely a rise in the ground.

In some cases the surface of this plain is lower than the level of the ocean. Thus, the country around the Caspian Sea is many feet below the surface of the Mediterranean; and the coasts of Holland and Belgium are protected from the encroachments of the waves by banks of earth, called *dykes*.

Describe the outline of Europe?—What ranges form its principal mountain-system?—What chains extend from it to the south?—What other mountains in Europe?—What is the character of the country north of this system?—Describe the great northern plain.

IV. Lakes and Rivers.—Europe contains no such extensive plains as are found in America. The rivers, therefore, are smaller than those of the Western Continent.

The lakes consist of two groups: one of which is situated in the country around the Baltic Sea—the other is in the valleys among the Alps.

Most of the former flow into the Baltic Sea. Being in a level country (part of the Great Plain), they are shallow, and of considerable extent. The Alpine lakes, on the contrary, lying in high mountain valleys, are small and deep. They are famous for their magnificent scenery.

V. The Climate of Europe exhibits the usual varieties of the Temperate Zone—passing from the almost tropical character of the southern shores, to the intense cold of the Arctic coast.

The shores of the Mediterranean, protected by mountain-chains from the cold winds of the north, enjoy a delightful climate; though occasionally suffering from the burning winds which sweep across the sea from the Desert of Sahara.

The climate of Eastern Europe is very different from that of the countries bordering on the Atlantic Ocean. In Eastern Europe the winters are excessively cold, even as far south as the Black Sea; while the summers are very hot.

On the shores of the Atlantic, however, the westerly winds and warm ocean-current render the climate mild and moist. Thus, in England the grass is green throughout the year; while in Russia, in the same latitude, the country is buried in snow in winter, and parched by fervent heat in summer.

VI. Productions.—Europe is rich in the various productions of the Temperate Zone, and is well supplied with useful minerals.

On the shores of the Mediterranean, the olive (from which sweet oil is obtained), the fig, lemon, and orange, are very abundant. The sugar-cane is also cultivated. The mulberry-tree (whose leaves feed the silk-worm) grows here luxuriantly. Silks, therefore, is one of the most important productions of Southern Europe.

Great quantities of wine are made in the southern and central districts; and beet-root sugar is very extensively manufactured, especially in France.

Why are not the rivers of Europe as large as those of America?—Where do you find the shallow lakes?—Where the deep ones?—Why is one group shallow, and the other deep?—What difference in climate is there between the various sections of Europe?

The usual grains of the Temperate Zone are abundant, though Indian corn is not so generally cultivated as in the United States. Rye, oats, barley, and potatoes are raised even north of the Arctic Circle. Hemp and flax are important productions in Eastern and Central Europe.

Gold and silver are found in limited quantities; but there is an abundance of iron, lead, tin, zinc, copper, coal, and salt.

VII. Religion.—Most of the inhabitants of Europe profess the Christian religion. The Turks, and some of the tribes of Southern Russia, are Mohammedans; and, scattered throughout the country, there are about two millions of Jews.

The people of Russia and Greece are principally adherents of the Greek Church. The greater part of the inhabitants of Southern Europe, Austria, Belgium, and Ireland, and about one-half of the Germans, Prussians, and Swiss, are Roman Catholics. Protestants are most numerous in Great Britain, Holland, and the other countries of Northern Europe.

POLITICAL DIVISIONS.

VIII. Europe comprises forty-three States, of which four are empires, and twelve are kingdoms. Among the smaller States are four republics and three free cities.

Great Britain, France, Russia, Prussia, and Austria, are the most important countries of Europe. These are called the five Great Powers.

IX. Europe may be divided into three sections: Northern and Eastern Europe, Western Europe, and Central Europe. Northern and Eastern Europe comprise Sweden and Norway, and Russia.

THE KINGDOM OF SWEDEN AND NORWAY.

X. Sweden and Norway occupy the Scandinavian Peninsula. They form two distinct States, with separate governments, but are united under one king.

XI. Surface.—The western part of Sweden, and nearly the whole of Norway, are mountainous. The south-eastern part of Sweden is a level plain, resembling that on the opposite shores of the Baltic Sea.

The mountains of the peninsula rise abruptly from the Atlantic coast, but they descend more gradually towards the east.

XII. Productions.—The chief wealth of the country is in its mines of iron and copper, its forests, and its fisheries. The principal exports are iron, lumber, and fish.

The greater part of the peninsula is too barren for cultivation, yet rye, oats, and barley are raised in Norway, 1400 miles further north than on the opposite coast of America. Great quantities of fish are caught off the shores of the Loffoden Islands.

Towns.—Stockholm is the capital of Sweden, and the chief commercial city. Christiania is the capital of Norway. Hammerfest is the most northern town of Europe.

Islands.—The islands of Gothland and Oland, in the Baltic Sea, and St. Bartholomew, one of the West Indies, belong to Sweden. The Faroe Islands, west of Norway, belong to Denmark.

XIII. Lapland.—The country north of the Arctic Circle, between the White Sea and Atlantic Ocean, is called Lapland. It belongs to Russia, Sweden, and Norway.

The chief wealth of the Laplanders consists in their numerous herds of reindeer. These supply them with food, clothing, and the means of travelling.

Name some of the important productions of Europe.—What different forms of religion do the inhabitants profess?—Name the five great European Powers.—Into what three sections may Europe be divided?—What are the countries of Northern and Eastern Europe?—Describe the surface of Sweden and Norway.—Name the principal productions.—What is the capital of Sweden?—Norway?—What islands belong to Sweden?—To what country do the Faroe Islands belong?—Where is Lapland?

RUSSIAN EMPIRE.

The Russian Empire is the largest in extent in the world. It comprises fully one half of Europe, and more than a third of Asia.

XV. European Russia is, for the most part, very level. The only mountainous section is the region north of the Caucasus Mountains.

XVI. Productions.—The principal wealth of Russia consists in its forests, and in the products of agriculture and grazing. Iron, gold, and platinum, are found in abundance in the Ural Mountains, principally on the Asiatic side.

The forests cover two-fifths of the country. Great quantities of wheat are raised in the central and south-western regions, and exported to Western Europe. Hemp, flax, tallow, hides, leather, and timber, are also important articles of export.

XVII. Inhabitants.—The people are divided into four classes:—1. the nobles; 2. the clergy; 3. the merchants; 4. the lately emancipated serfs. The government is an absolute monarchy.

On the outskirts of Russia there are many tribes belonging to the Mongolian race: such as the Finns and Laplanders, the Semoides, and the Cossacks. The Cossacks inhabit the *Steppes*, or treeless plains in the south-east, and are of great service in the Russian army as light cavalry. The Circassians, a bold and hardy people who long resisted the Russians, belong to the Caucasian race.



MONUMENT TO THE EMPEROR ALEXANDER I., AT ST. PETERSBURG.

XVIII. Towns.—St. Petersburg, the capital of the Russian Empire, is situated at the mouth of the River Neva.

Moscow, the ancient capital, was burnt by the inhabitants, to prevent its falling into the hands of Napoleon, during his invasion in 1812. Warsaw was the capital of Poland. Sebastopol is famous for the siege which it sustained for a year, against the English, French, Turkish, and Sardinian armies. It was finally taken.

The principal ports for foreign commerce are St. Petersburg, Cronstadt, Riga, Archangel, and Odessa. The principal centres of trade in the interior are Moscow and Niznei Novgorod. At the latter place a great fair is held every year, which is attended by many thousands of people, who come from different parts of Europe and Asia to buy and sell goods.

Is there any other empire larger than the Russian?—Describe the surface of European Russia.—Name the principal productions.—What are the principal exports?—Into what classes are the people divided?—Name some of the tribes on the outskirts belonging to the Mongolian race.—To what race do the Circassians belong?—What is the capital of Russia?—Which are the principal ports for foreign commerce?—Name the principal centres of the inland trade.



MAP OF EUROPE

STATUTE MILES 69.2 TO A DEGREE
50 100 200 300 400 500

Scale 330 miles to an inch

40 35 30 25 20 15 10 5 0 5 10 15 20 25 30 35 40 45 50 55 60 65 70 75 80

Longitude West from Greenwich
Longitude East from Greenwich

72 77 82 87 92 97 102 107 112 117 122

Longitude East 97 from Washington

QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF EUROPE.

AREA.

State the area of Europe.—How does Europe compare, in size, with Asia?—Africa?—The United States?—Name the largest country.—What proportion of Europe does Russia occupy?

OUTLINE.

What ocean upon the western coast?—Upon the northern?—What great sea on the southern coast?—What sea on the north is a branch of the Arctic Ocean?—What branches of the Atlantic Ocean between Sweden and Russia and Prussia?—What sea is east of England and Scotland?—What channel between England and Ireland?—Between England and France?—What bay west of France?

What strait connects the Mediterranean Sea with the Atlantic Ocean?—The Adriatic Sea with the Mediterranean?—What sea is connected with the Mediterranean by the Strait of Dardanelles, the Sea of Marmora, and the Strait of Bosphorus?—What strait connects the Sea of Azov with the Black Sea?—Name all the straits and seas on which you would sail, going from the Sea of Azov into the Atlantic Ocean.

What Peninsula lies between the Atlantic Ocean, and the Baltic Sea and Gulf of Bothnia?—Between the Atlantic Ocean and the Mediterranean Sea?—Between the Mediterranean and Adriatic Seas?—Which is the most northern cape of Europe?—The most western?

What great inland sea, not connected with the ocean, on the south-east of Russia?—Name the countries, the coasts of which are washed by the Arctic Ocean.—The Caspian Sea.—The Black Sea.—The Bay of Biscay.—The Gulf of Bothnia.

SURFACE.

In what general direction does the principal mountain-system extend?—Name the principal parts of this chain, commencing with the Cantabrian Mountains.—In what country are the Cantabrian Mountains?—What countries are separated by the Pyrenees?—What parts of the system are in France?

Name the mountains on the north of Italy.—The chain which forms a continuation of the Alps.—By what mountains into Asiatic Turkey is the mountain-system of Europe continued into Asia?—The Caucasus Mountains form part of the principal European System: between what seas are they situated?

Name the branches of the principal system in the Spanish Peninsula.—In France.—Italy.—Turkey and Greece.—Austria and Germany.—Name the two mountain ranges of Europe not connected with the chief system.—Which of these forms a part of the boundary between Europe and Asia?

Describe the general surface of Europe, north of the principal mountain-system.—What is the extent of the Northern Plain of Europe?—What countries are included within it?—In what general direction does it slope?

LAKES AND RIVERS.

Why are the rivers of Europe smaller than those of America?—Which are the four largest rivers of Europe? (See Statistical Tables, page 105.)—Into what seas do they flow?

What rivers flow into the Arctic Ocean?—The Caspian Sea?—The Black Sea?—What river flows into the Sea of Azov?—The Adriatic Sea?—What river of France flows into the Mediterranean Sea?—Of Spain?—What two rivers of the Spanish Peninsula flow into the Atlantic Ocean?

Into what does the Loire flow?—The Seine?—What rivers flow into the North Sea?—The Baltic?—Into what two groups are the lakes of Europe divided?—Which is the largest lake of the Baltic group?

CLIMATE.

In what zone is the greater part of Europe situated?—What countries are partly included within the Frigid Zone?—What change in climate is experienced in passing from the south to the north?—Why have the shores of the Mediterranean a milder climate than the regions north of the principal mountain-system?—How does the climate of Eastern Europe differ from that of Western Europe?—Why?

PRODUCTIONS.

Name the leading productions on the shores of the Mediterranean.—What is made from the fruit of the olive-tree?—Of what use is the mulberry-tree?—Where is most of the wine made?—What is made from the beet-root?—What grains are raised in Europe?—What articles of food are grown north of the Arctic Circle?—Where are hemp and flax cultivated?—What are the most important minerals?

SWEDEN AND NORWAY.

What kingdom is included within the Scandinavian Peninsula? What mountains traverse the western part of the country?—Describe the surface of Norway.—What part of Sweden is mountainous?—What part of Sweden is level?

Which country, Norway or Sweden, has the greatest extent of level surface?—In which, then, would you expect to find the rivers the largest?—Into what waters do most of the lakes and rivers of Sweden flow?

How does the climate of this peninsula differ from that of Southern Europe?—How do the productions differ?—In which section is vegetation most luxuriant?—Why is the coast of Norway warmer, and more moist, than that of Russia, in the same latitudes?

How much farther north is grain raised in Norway, than on the opposite coast of America?—What are the chief productions of the Scandinavian peninsula?—The chief exports?—Why does not grain form one of the principal exports?—As the forests in England are not very extensive, is it probable that timber would be exported thither from Norway?

Where is the capital and chief commercial city of Sweden?—Of Norway?—Where is the most northern town in Europe?—What islands belong to Sweden?—Where are the Loffoden Islands? Where is the North Cape?—Where is Lapland?—Within what three countries is it included?—What constitutes the chief wealth of the Laplanders?

RUSSIA.

Describe the general surface of Russia.—What range of mountains is east of Russia?—What range is south?—Where are the Valdai Hills?—What and where are the Steppes?—Name the principal rivers flowing north.—South.—These two sets of rivers are connected together by canals: can the water-shed, then, between them have any great elevation?

Is the climate of Russia subject to greater, or less, extremes than that of Western Europe?—In what part of Russia are the winters coldest?—The summers warmest?—Where does the winter last longest: near the Black Sea, or the Arctic Ocean?—Where is vegetation most luxuriant, in the northern, or the southern section?

Name the vegetable productions of Russia.—The animal.—The mineral.—To which of these do the forests belong?—Hemp, flax, and wheat?—Tallow, hides, and leather?—Name the principal exports.—On which side of the Ural Mountains are gold, iron, and platinum, chiefly found?

In what part of Russia do the Circassians live?—The Cossacks?—Where is the capital of the Russian Empire?—Moscow?—Warsaw?—Tell what you know about each of these cities.

What are the principal commercial cities upon the Baltic Sea, and its inlets?—Upon the White Sea?—The Black Sea?—What town near the Caspian Sea?—Where are the two chief centres of trade in the interior?—What can you say of Niznei Novgorod?—Of Sebastopol?

MISCELLANEOUS.

Ship a cargo of wheat from Odessa to Marseilles (in France): through what waters must you pass?—With what articles would you load a vessel at Riga for London?—Through what waters must the vessel pass?—Would the people of Norway and Russia be likely to exchange timber?—Why?

Down what river would you float, to go from Niznei Novgorod to Astrachan?—Across what sea would you sail, and in what direction, to go from Stockholm to Dantzic?—What mountains would you cross, proceeding in a direct line from Stockholm to Bergen?—What sea, in going from Bergen to Edinburgh?

Bound each of the divisions of Europe.—Sketch a map of Europe, locating the chief mountains and rivers and some of the principal towns.—Spel Mediterranean. Azov. Gibraltar. Dardanelles. Enikale. Moscow. Finisterre. Pyrenees. Cévennes. Apennine. Elbe. Seine. Loire. Bordeaux. Duero. Dniester. Dnioper. Stockholm. Hammerfest.

CHAPTER XV.

GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND.

I. THE British Islands comprise Great Britain, Ireland, and many smaller adjacent islands.

The island of Great Britain includes England, Scotland, and Wales. The monarchy is styled "The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland." The entire kingdom, with its colonies, constitutes the British Empire, which is generally called Great Britain.

II. The sea-coast is very irregular, and abounds in fine harbors and roadsteads.

III. Surface. — England and Ireland are generally level or undulating. Scotland and Wales are rugged and mountainous.

The surface of Scotland is divided by the Grampian Mountains into the Highlands and Lowlands, — the Highlands lying north, and the Lowlands south, of the mountains.

IV. Climate. — The climate is moist and mild. The winters even of Scotland are rarely severe. The soil of England and Ireland, by careful culture, has been rendered fertile and productive.

The moisture of the climate gives the fields a continually fresh and verdant appearance; but it sometimes prevents the ripening of the crops. Ireland contains over 3,000,000 acres of turf bog, from which *peat*, the chief article of fuel, is obtained.

V. Productions. — The chief wealth of Great Britain consists in her commerce and manufactures, and in products of her mines.

Great Britain surpasses every other country in the world in the amount of her manufactures; of which the most important are those of cotton, wool, and iron.

VI. Commerce. — In the extent and importance of her commerce, Great Britain holds the first rank among nations. She imports from other countries such materials as her own soil or mines do not furnish, and, in return, sends her manufactured products to every market in the world.

The trade with the United States exceeds that with any other nation, the amount of exports to this country being nearly double that which she sends to any other.

Great Britain requires a large navy to protect her extensive commerce and distant colonies. She accordingly ranks among the first naval powers in the world. She has also established lines of steam packets to all the principal ports of the world.

Minerals. — The tin mines of Cornwall have been famous from remote antiquity. Rich mines of pit coal, copper, iron, and slate are found in Wales.

What do the British Islands comprise? — What is the British Empire? — Describe the surface. — Climate and soil. — What are the chief productions? — What can you say of the commerce of Great Britain? — Of the navy? — Of the minerals?

QUESTIONS ON THE MAP.

In what direction from the mainland of Europe are the British Isles? — In what direction from the United States? — What branches of the Atlantic separate them from the mainland? — What sea between England and Ireland? — By what channel may it be entered from the south? — From the north? — What strait separates England from France? — The island of Anglesea from Wales? — What does the island of Great Britain comprise? — What groups of small islands near it? — Where is the Isle of Wight? — The Isle of Man?

Where are the Grampian Hills? — What is the portion of Scotland north of these hills called? — South of them? — What hills separate England and Scotland? — Mount Snowdon (3571 ft. high) is the highest point of land in England and Wales: where is it?

Name three principal rivers flowing into the North Sea. — Which of them is most important? — Where is the Severn? — The Mersey? — The Solway? — The Clyde? The Liffey? — The Shannon? — Name two of the Channel Islands.

Which is farther north, Great Britain or New England? — Which of these countries has the milder winters? — Why? — Which has the warmer summer, London or St. Petersburg? — Why? — How does Great Britain compare with other countries in the amount of her manufactures? — What is commerce?

In the year 1865 Great Britain produced about 70,000,000 tons of coal, and about 4,200,000 tons of iron.

VII. Towns. — London, the capital of the British Empire, is the largest city in the world, and the first in commercial importance. It has a population, according to the census of 1865, of 3,015,000, and covers an area of about one hundred and twenty-two square miles. The city is situated on both banks of the Thames, which is crossed by nine bridges.

Liverpool is the second city in population, and is the great port of the manufacturing districts. It is the city through which the most of the commerce with the United States is carried on. Its fine docks on the river Mersey cover more than four hundred acres. Portsmouth, Plymouth, and Chatham are the three principal naval stations. Manchester is noted for its cotton manufactures — the most extensive in the world; Leeds and Bradford, for their manufactures of wool; Birmingham, for hardware; Sheffield, for cutlery and plated ware. Edinburgh is the metropolis of Scotland. Glasgow is the largest city, and the chief seat of commerce and manufactures. Dundee and Aberdeen are noted for manufactures and ship-building.

Dublin is the capital and largest city in Ireland. Belfast is the first commercial city, and the seat of the linen manufacture. Cork is the third city in Ireland, and has an extensive commerce. Limerick is noted for the manufacture of gloves, lace, and fish-hooks. Galway is the principal seaport on the western coast.

Merthyr Tydvil, the largest town in Wales, is noted for its iron-works. Swansea is the principal seat of the copper trade of Great Britain, and is much resorted to for sea-bathing.

VIII. Great Britain has colonies in every quarter of the globe, and unites under one sovereign a greater number of people than are ruled by any other government.

The principal foreign possessions of Great Britain are as follows: —

<p><i>In Europe.</i> Gibraltar, in Spain. Malta and Gozo, in the Mediterranean.</p> <p><i>In Asia.</i> British India, including Ceylon, Hindoostan, a part of Farther India, and Singapore. The island of Hong-Kong (China). Aden (Arabia).</p> <p><i>In Africa.</i> Sierra Leone, and other settlements on the western coast. Cape Colony and Natal, in South Africa. St. Helena and Ascension Islands. Mauritius and Seychelle Islands.</p>	<p><i>In Oceanica.</i> Part of Borneo, and the island of Labuan. Australia. Tasmania. Norfolk Island. New Zealand.</p> <p><i>In America.</i> British America. The Bermuda Islands. Balize. Jamaica, and other islands in the West Indies. British Guiana. The Falkland Islands.</p>
---	---

Describe London. — Liverpool. — Name and describe the principal towns in Scotland. — In Ireland. — In Wales. — Let each scholar name one of the foreign colonies of Great Britain and say what he can about it.

Does Great Britain export or import cotton? — Broadcloth? — Tea? — Razors? — With what country is she most extensively engaged in trade? — Which divisions have a fertile soil?

Where is peat found? — Is it a vegetable or mineral product? — Cornwall is the southwestern county of England: what celebrated mines there? — What mines in Wales? — Are minerals generally found in mountainous or level districts?

To what city in England would you go to buy cotton goods? — Hardware? — Woollens? — Cutlery? — Which is the largest city in Scotland? — In Ireland? — What town in England opposite Calais in France? — From Dover to Calais is twenty-one miles: across what strait would you sail? — What is the most southwestern point of the island of Great Britain? — What is the chief town in Wales? — What channels separate Ireland from Great Britain? — What is the latitude of London? — Longitude? — Where is Menai Strait? — What city has a population nearly equal to that of all New England? — Where is Valentia Harbor? — What is the seat of the linen manufacture in Ireland? — Where is Cork? — What articles are manufactured at Limerick? — Which is farther west, Ireland or the Spanish Peninsula? — On what river is Dublin? — Give the boundary, capital, and two other important towns, of each division of the British Isles. Name, also, the principal rivers and mountains.

Sketch from memory, if you can, a map of each division, locating the chief towns, mountains, and rivers.

MAP OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

STATUTE MILES 69.2 TO A DEGREE.
5 15 25 50 75 100 125
Scale 70 miles to an inch.





THE CRYSTAL PALACE.

CHAPTER XVI.

WESTERN EUROPE.

I. WESTERN EUROPE comprises Denmark, Holland, Belgium, France, Spain, and Portugal.

II. Surface.—With the exception of the Spanish Peninsula, these countries are mostly included in the Great European Plain, and have, therefore, a level surface.

III. Climate.—The climate of Western Europe is much more mild and moist than that of the Atlantic coast of America in the same latitudes. The winter is warmer, and the heat of summer less intense.

This is owing chiefly to the influence of the Gulf Stream, a warm ocean-current which issues from the Gulf of Mexico, and, crossing the Atlantic, bathes the western shores of Europe.

Thus, Copenhagen has a warmer winter than Washington, though the latter place is about eleven hundred miles farther south; yet the summer of Denmark is much cooler than that of Canada.

In the Spanish Peninsula, the summers are dry and hot, but the winters on the table-lands are cold.

IV. Coast.—The coast-line is much indented, thus furnishing excellent advantages for commerce.

V. The greater part of this section belongs to the Atlantic declivity, and is drained by several large rivers, the principal of which are the Rhine, the Scheldt, the Seine, the Loire, the Garonne, the Douro, the Tagus, the Guadiana, and the Guadalquivir.

The rivers of France, Belgium, and Holland, are navigable the greater part of their course. They are connected with each other by numerous canals. The Languedoc Canal, more than one hundred and fifty miles long, joins the Garonne River to the Mediterranean Sea, thus furnishing an inland passage from the Atlantic to the Mediterranean.

VI. Productions.—Agriculture is the chief occupation of much the larger portion of the inhabitants of these countries. The manufactures, those of France and Belgium especially, are of great value, and celebrated for their delicacy and beauty. The commerce, both foreign and domestic, is extensive.

What does Western Europe comprise?—Describe the surface.—How does the climate compare with that of the Atlantic coast of the United States?—What is the cause of this difference?—Give an example to illustrate this.—Describe the coast-line.—Name the chief rivers which drain this section.—Describe the Languedoc Canal.—What is said of agriculture?—Of manufactures?—Of commerce?

Spain and Portugal, though among the most fertile countries of Europe, have, until within a few years, given but little attention to commerce. Their agriculture and manufactures are also comparatively unimportant.

VII. Minerals.—Western Europe abounds in valuable minerals. Belgium, next to England, furnishes more coal than any other country in Europe. Over eight hundred iron-works are in operation in France. The quicksilver-mines of Almaden, in Spain, are among the richest in the world.

DENMARK.

VIII. This kingdom comprises the peninsula of Jutland and several islands near the entrance of the Baltic Sea.

The duchies of Sleswick, Holstein, and Lauenburg were formerly a part of Denmark; but in 1864 the armies of Austria and Prussia took forcible possession of them; and in 1866 they were annexed to Prussia.

IX. The surface of the country is perfectly flat; some portions of the northern coast are below the level of the sea, from which they are defended by dikes.

X. The climate is moist, and milder than that of the northern German States. The soil is well fitted for cultivation, and affords excellent pasturage.

XI. The productions are chiefly agricultural. Raising live-stock, grazing, and the dairy, are the chief occupations of the inhabitants.

XII. Towns.—Copenhagen is the capital, and one of the finest cities in Northern Europe.

The foreign possessions are Danish America, the Faroe and Nicobar Islands, and three small islands of the West Indies.

HOLLAND AND BELGIUM.

XIII. Surface.—These countries are included within the Great European Plain. The coast is so low that, in many places, dikes are necessary to prevent the land from being overflowed.

XIV. Productions.—Holland is a grazing country, and the products of the dairy are largely exported. Belgium is an agricultural and manufacturing country, and has extensive mines of coal and iron.

Among the most celebrated manufactures of Belgium are the laces of Brussels and Mechlin.

XV. Commerce.—The position of these countries, and their numerous navigable rivers, give them remarkable facilities for commerce.

Internal communication is promoted by numerous canals. In Holland, especially, the canals run through the streets of the towns, and form a complete network over the country.

XVI. Inhabitants.—The Dutch are a very industrious people, and are generally better educated than the inhabitants of any other parts of Europe, except Prussia and some of the smaller German States. The Belgians are not less industrious; but education is much neglected.

What minerals are found in Western Europe?—What does Denmark comprise?—What is said of the duchies?—Describe the surface.—Climate.—Productions.—What is the surface of Holland and Belgium?—Which of them is a grazing country?—Which agricultural?—What are manufactured in Belgium?—Of what use are canals in Holland?—What commercial advantages have these countries?—What is the character of the Dutch?—Of the Belgians?

XVII. Towns.—The Hague is the capital of Holland; Brussels, of Belgium. Amsterdam, Antwerp, and Rotterdam, are the chief commercial cities of the two countries.



VIEW OF THE TOWN HALL, BRUSSELS.

The foreign possessions of the Dutch are Java, the Spice Islands, part of Sumatra, Borneo, Celebes, and many other small islands in the East Indies; some parts of the coast of Guinea, in Africa; and a part of Guiana, and some of the smaller West India Islands, in America. Belgium has no foreign possessions.

FRANCE.

XVIII. France is one of the richest and most powerful empires in the world. The position of the country and the fertility of its soil give it great commercial and agricultural advantages.

XIX. Surface.—France is separated from Spain on the south by the Pyrenees; from Italy and Switzerland on the east by the Alps and the Jura Mountains; the Cévennes, Auvergne, and Vosges Mountains extend in nearly a continuous chain across the eastern central portion of the country. The rest of the surface belongs to the European Plain. In the southwest are the Landes, extensive plains of shifting sands, which the inhabitants cross on stilts.

XX. Climate and Soil.—No country in Europe possesses a more favorable climate than France, and no one surpasses it in the value and variety of its vegetable products.

XXI. Productions.—Agriculture and manufactures are the principal branches of industry. The olive, the mulberry-tree, and the orange are cultivated in the provinces bordering on the Mediterranean: grain, hemp, and flax are raised in the middle and northern provinces.

What is the capital of Holland?—Of Belgium?—Name the principal commercial cities.—What foreign possessions has Holland in Asia?—In Africa?—In America?—What can you say of the position of France?—Describe the surface of France.—The climate and soil.—What are the chief branches of industry?

France exports more wine, brandy, and silk goods, than any other country. The French are noted for their manufactures of jewelry, gloves, toys, perfumery, and other articles of finery, many of which are brought to the United States.

XXII. Inhabitants.—The French are distinguished for their gayety, politeness, and love of military glory.

XXIII. Towns.—Paris, the capital of France, is the most splendid city in the world, and is the great centre of refinement and civilization.

The French language is spoken by the upper classes of Europe, and the influence of Paris is felt throughout the civilized world, in all that concerns taste and fashion.

Havre is the port of Paris. Marseilles and Bordeaux are the principal commercial cities; most of the wine is exported from the latter city.

Versailles contains one of the most magnificent palaces in the world. Rouen is the great seat of the cotton, and Lyons, of the silk manufactures.

The foreign possessions of France are Algeria, in Northern, and Senegal, in Western Africa; the Island of Bourbon, and some smaller islands in the Indian Ocean; Pondicherry, and a few other places in India; New Caledonia, Tahiti, and the Marquesas Islands, in Oceania; and French Guiana, two small islands in the Gulf of St. Lawrence, Martinique, Guadeloupe, and a few other small islands of the West Indies in America.

Corsica, on the coast of Italy, celebrated as the birthplace of Napoleon, also belongs to France.

SPAIN AND PORTUGAL.

XXIV. The Spanish Peninsula comprises the two kingdoms of Spain and Portugal.

These countries were once very powerful, but their importance and the extent of their possessions are now greatly reduced.

XXV. Surface.—The interior consists of mountains and table-lands; approaching the coast, the country is undulating and level.

XXVI. Productions.—The most important of these are the vine, olive, mulberry, and orange. Immense flocks of sheep are raised on the table-lands of the interior, and great quantities of wool are exported.

XXVII. Inhabitants.—The Spanish and Portuguese are a reserved, dignified, and indolent people. The lower classes are very ignorant. Bull-fights are a favorite amusement, in Spain, for all classes.

XXVIII. Towns.—Madrid is the capital of Spain; and Lisbon, of Portugal.

Barcelona, Cadiz, and Malaga, are the most important commercial cities of Spain; Lisbon and Oporto, of Portugal. We obtain sherry wine from Cadiz, port wine from Oporto, and grapes and raisins from Malaga.

Gibraltar, in the south of Spain, the strongest fortress in the world, belongs to Great Britain. Palos is the port from which Columbus sailed on his first voyage to America.

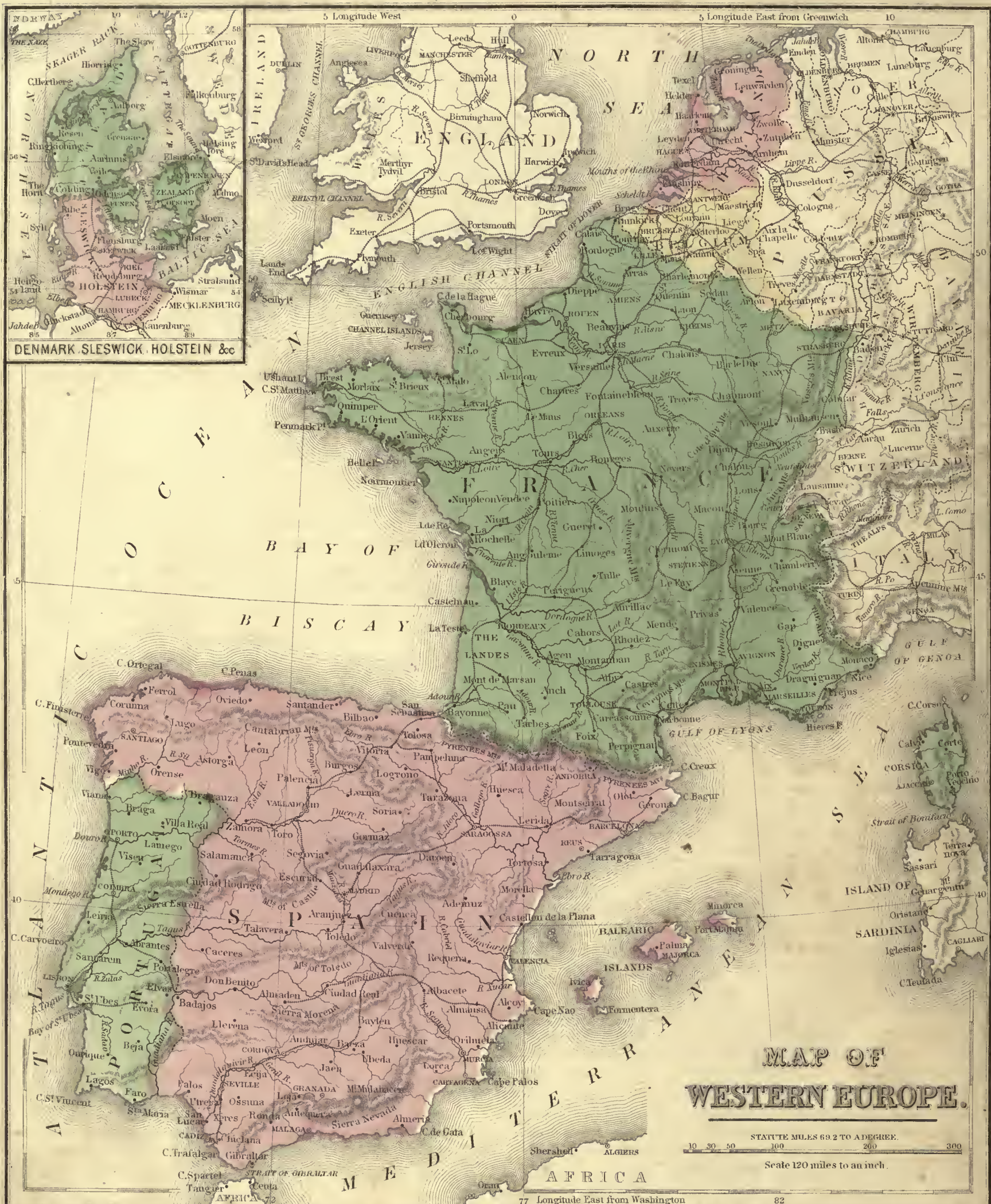
XXIX. The foreign possessions of Spain are Cuba and Porto Rico, in the West Indies; a part of the Philippine, Ladrone, and Caroline Islands, in Oceania; and the Canary Islands, west of Africa.

The Balearic Islands, in the Mediterranean Sea, and Ceuta, a fortress in Africa, on the Straits of Gibraltar, also belong to Spain.

The foreign possessions of Portugal are the Azores, Madeira, and Cape Verd Islands, west of Africa; Angola and Benguela on the western, and Mozambique, on the eastern coast of Africa; Goa and Macao, in Asia; and part of the island of Timor, in Oceania.

XXX. Andorra.—This little republic occupies a valley south of the Pyrenees. The population is only 5000 or 6000, but the country has been independent for more than a thousand years.

Describe the French.—Name the capital, and other principal cities.—What foreign possessions has France?—For what is Corsica noted?—What countries occupy the Spanish Peninsula?—Describe the surface.—What are the principal productions?—Describe the inhabitants.—Name the capitals, and important towns.—Where is Andorra?



MAP OF WESTERN EUROPE.

STATUTE MILES 69.2 TO A DEGREE.
10 30 50 100 200 300
Scale 120 miles to an inch.

5 Longitude West 0 5 Longitude East from Greenwich 10

77 Longitude East from Washington 82

QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF WESTERN EUROPE.

POSITION.

Name the political divisions that compose this section.—What important divisions, composed of islands, is still farther west?—What sea, strait, and channel separate the British Isles from the mainland?—What ocean with its branches washes the coast of Western Europe?—What sea south of France and east of Spain?—What strait separates Europe from Africa?—What strait connects the Cattegat and the Baltic Sea?—Where is the Bay of Biscay?—The English Channel?—The Gulf of Lyons?—Which is the most northern division of Western Europe?—What sea west of it?—Name the branches of this sea on the east of it.—What is the northern part of Denmark called?—Where are the Balearic Islands?—To what country do they belong?—Name two islands east of Denmark.—Where is Corsica?—To what power does it belong?—For what is it celebrated?

On what sea do Holland and Belgium border?—What countries form the eastern boundary of this section?—Where is Cape Finisterre?—Cape St. Vincent?—Cape Ortegal?—Cape de la Hague?—The Skaw?—What two capes at the entrance of the Straits of Gibraltar?—Where is Cape Nao?—Cape de Gata?

SURFACE.

Three of the mountain-chains of this section are considered a part of the great mountain-system of Europe: which of them is in Spain?—Which is in France?—Which of them forms the boundary between France and Spain?—What part of France is mountainous?—What mountains separate France from Italy?—France from Switzerland?—What part of Spain and Portugal consists of mountains and table-lands?

What countries of this section form a part of the Great European Plain?—What, then, is the surface of Belgium and Holland?—Of the northern and western parts of France?—Of Denmark?—Where are the Auvergne Mountains?—The Sierra Nevada Mountains?—The Cévennes Mountains?—The Vosges Mountains?

RIVERS.

What river forms a part of the eastern boundary of Holland?—What large river of Central Europe flows through Holland?—What two rivers flow from Belgium through Holland? (The river Meuse, of France, assumes the name of Maese in Belgium, and of Maas in Holland.)—Into what sea do all these rivers flow?

The Seine, Loire, Gironde, and Rhone are the principal rivers of France: name the body of water into which each flows.—The Ebro, Guadalquivir, Guadiana, Tagus, and Douro are the principal rivers of the Spanish Peninsula: name the body of water into which each of these rivers flows.—Which of them have a part of their course in Portugal?—What branch of the Rhine in France?—Of the Rhone?

CLIMATE AND PRODUCTIONS.

How does the climate of Western Europe contrast with that of the opposite shores of the Atlantic?—What is the chief cause of this difference?—What can you say of the climate of the Spanish Peninsula?

From what countries of Western Europe do we obtain the products of the vine?—Of what country is wool an important export?—From what country are the products of the dairy largely exported?—In what countries are silk goods made?—From what country do we obtain gloves, perfumery, jewelry, and other fancy articles?

In which of these countries is coal found?—Iron?—Which has rich mines of quicksilver?—In what country is beet-root sugar made?—In what part of this section are the olive and mulberry successfully grown?—Of what does France export more than any other country?

DENMARK.

Of what does this kingdom consist?—What can you say of the Duchies of Holstein and Lauenburg?—Name the foreign possessions of Denmark.—What are the principal exports?—Describe Copenhagen.—What passage between the island of

Zealand and Sweden?—What bodies of water does it connect?—Where are the Great Belt and the Little Belt?—What do they separate?—Name three small islands at the entrance of the Baltic, belonging to Denmark.—On what island is Elsinore?—What are the exports of Denmark?

HOLLAND AND BELGIUM.

What is a dike?—Of what use are they to these countries?—What term is used to signify the same thing in Louisiana?—How is internal communication promoted in these countries?—Would canals be as numerous if the surface were mountainous?

Where is the capital of Holland?—Of Belgium?—Where is Amsterdam?—Antwerp?—Rotterdam?—What foreign possessions has Holland?—Where is the Zuyder Zee?—Leyden, Utrecht, and Groningen have famous universities: where are these places?—Where is Liege?—Ghent?—Where is Waterloo?—Can you tell for what it is famous?

FRANCE.

In what do the agricultural and commercial advantages of France consist?—On what river is the capital?—On what sea is Marseilles?—Where is Lyons?—Rouen?—Bordeaux?—Havre?—From what city is most of the wine exported?—What city is the great seat of the silk manufacture?—Of that of cotton goods?—Brest and Toulon are important naval stations: where are they?—Cherbourg is famous for its breakwater and fine docks: where is it?—In what direction from Paris is Versailles?—For what is it famous?—The Landes are plains of shifting sand: where are they?—Let each scholar describe the situation of one of the colonies of France.

THE SPANISH PENINSULA.

Of what two kingdoms does this peninsula consist?—How does their present importance compare with that of former times?—Where is the capital of Spain?—Of Portugal?—Where is Barcelona?—Cadiz?—Oporto?—Malaga?

What can you say of Gibraltar?—To what power does it belong?—What fortress of Spain in Africa, nearly opposite to Gibraltar?—Where is Palos?—From what place in Spain is sherry wine exported?—Grapes and raisins?—From what place in Portugal do we obtain port-wine?—On what river are Seville and Cordova?—Where is Barcelona?—Granada?—Where are sheep raised?—What valuable mines at Almaden?—Where is the republic of Andorra?—Let each scholar describe the situation of one of the Spanish colonies.

MISCELLANEOUS.

On what waters would a vessel sail in going from Barcelona to Cherbourg?—From Paris to London?—Describe the voyage in a sailing-vessel from Rotterdam to Lisbon.—What mountains would you cross in travelling in a straight line from Bordeaux to Turin?—From Saragossa to Toulouse?

Freight a vessel at Marseilles with the products of the south of France: what articles would form her cargo?—On what bodies of water would this vessel sail to go to Bremen?—To which of the two cities of France, Rouen or Lyons, would you go to purchase silk goods?—Cotton goods?

Columbus sailed from Palos the 3d of August, 1492, on his first voyage of discovery: across what ocean did he sail?—On which of the West Indies did he first land?—Was his course directly west?—What metal is extensively worked in France?—Of what do the French make sugar?—Name all the mountain-chains you would cross, proceeding in a direct line from Malaga to Madrid.—From Madrid to the shores of the Bay of Biscay.—On what waters will a vessel sail in going from Amsterdam to Lyons?

Give the boundaries of each of the divisions of Western Europe, and the three principal towns, rivers, and mountains in each division.—Sketch a map (from memory, if you can) of the Spanish Peninsula, and locate the principal mountains, rivers, and four of the chief towns.—In the same manner sketch a map of France.

CHAPTER XVII.

CENTRAL EUROPE.

I. **CENTRAL EUROPE** comprises Germany, Denmark, Prussia, Austria, Switzerland, and the Italian and Turkish Peninsulas.

II. **Surface.**—Denmark, the northern part of Germany, the greater portion of Prussia, and the province of Galicia (in Austria), are parts of the Great European Plain.

The Great Plains of Hungary and Turkey are parts of the Basin of the Danube. The Plain of Lombardy, in Northern Italy, is drained by the River Po. The remainder of Central Europe is principally hilly or mountainous.

III. **Rivers.**—The most important rivers of this section are the Danube and the Rhine. Next to the Volga, the Danube is the largest river in Europe.



CITADEL OF EHRENBREITSTEIN—A FORTRESS OF PRUSSIA, ON THE RHINE.

The Rhine is famous for its grand and romantic scenery. Pleasant towns and villages lie nestled at the foot of lofty hills and graceful slopes clothed with vines; while the castles of feudal times are seen frowning from precipices apparently inaccessible.

IV. **Climate.**—The climate of Central Europe is not generally so moist and warm as in the same latitudes of Western Europe.

V. **Productions.**—The agricultural productions vary with the climate. Minerals are abundant in the mountainous regions. The manufactures are more noted for variety than for the great amount of any one particular kind.

In the north, grain is the chief production. The vine is extensively cultivated in the central and southern regions, and the mulberry and olive are raised in the south. Great harvests of wheat are also produced on the plains which form the lower basin of the Danube.

Woollen, cotton, and linen goods, are among the most important manufactures. Bohemia is celebrated for glass ware; Switzerland, for watches and jewelry; Italy, for braided straw, of which hats and bonnets are made.

VI. **The Commerce** is conducted, on the north, through Bremen, Altona, Hamburg, and Dantzic; on the south, through Genoa, Leghorn, Trieste, and Constantinople.

What does Central Europe comprise?—Describe the surface.—Which are the most important rivers?—How does the climate of Central compare with that of Western Europe?

Name the chief productions of the different sections.—Through what cities is the commerce conducted on the north?—On the south?

GERMANY.

VII. Germany comprises a part of Austria and Prussia, all of Bavaria, Saxony, Baden, and Wirtemberg, a number of smaller States, and three free cities.

In 1815 the various States of Germany united in a league, known as the Germanic Confederation, for mutual defence, with Austria at the head; but in the war between Austria and Prussia in 1866 Austrian influence was destroyed, and Hanover and several smaller States were annexed to Prussia.

VIII. **Inhabitants.**—The Germans are, in general, a very industrious and well-educated people. In Prussia, Saxony, and some other States, every child above the age of six is obliged to attend school.

IX. **Towns.**—Frankfort-on-the-Main, formerly a free city of Germany and the capital of the Germanic Confederation, belongs to Prussia. Hamburg, Bremen, and Lubeck, are free cities.

Many other towns in Germany and Central Europe are of large size: some are noted for remarkable events in history, others for magnificent churches or palaces, and others for their universities.

PRUSSIA.

X. Prussia ranks as a leading power of Europe. By its victories over Austria in 1866, its territory was increased by the addition of Hanover, Holstein, Hesse-Cassel, Nassau, and some other divisions.

Prussia has a fortunate position. It lies chiefly in the basins of the Baltic and North Seas, is drained by large rivers, has a central location, a long line of sea-coast, and good harbors. East of the Weser the country is generally level, but near the river Rhine it is mountainous and abounds in beautiful scenery.

XI. **Productions.**—Nearly the whole of Prussia is under cultivation. Large crops of wheat, rye, barley, oats, tobacco, beet-root, and linseed are produced.

XII. **Inhabitants.**—The Prussians are mostly Germans, and are an intelligent and well-educated people, a person being rarely found who cannot read and write. Every child in Prussia, above the age of six years, is obliged by law to attend school.

XIII. **Towns.**—Berlin is the capital of Prussia; and, next to Vienna, is the largest city of Central Europe.

Cologne is the most populous city of Prussia on the Rhine. Konigsberg, Dantzic, and Stettin, are the chief sea-ports. Dantzic is one of the greatest grain-shipping ports in Europe.

AUSTRIA.

XIV. Next to Russia, Austria has larger possessions in Europe than any other country. It embraces one-third of Germany.

Venetia, formerly belonging to Austria, is now an Italian State.

XV. **Inhabitants.**—The people of Austria are of different races, and speak many different languages. The Germans, Hungarians, Italians, and Poles, are the most numerous. The only bond of union in the government is the power of political rule.

XVI. **Towns.**—Vienna is the capital of Austria, and the largest city in the empire.

XVII. **POLAND** was formerly an important kingdom of Central Europe, but the country suffered many reverses, and it is now divided between Russia, Prussia, and Austria.

What does Germany comprise?—Describe the inhabitants.—For what are many of the towns noted?—Which are the Free Cities?—What rank does Prussia hold?—Name the productions.—Name the capital and chief cities.—What is said of the size of Austria?—Describe the inhabitants.—Between what nations was Poland divided?

SWITZERLAND.

XVIII. Switzerland is a republic, consisting of twenty-two States, or Cantons.

The scenery of Switzerland is on the grandest scale: beautiful lakes lie embosomed among the mountains which tower above the limits of perpetual snow; immense glaciers glisten upon the mountain sides, and romantic valleys form the channels of impetuous streams.

XIX. Inhabitants.—The Swiss are noted for their love of liberty, and attachment to their native country.

Most of the population speak the German language. Italian is spoken in the Cantons adjoining Italy, and French in those adjoining France.

XX. Towns.—Berne is the capital. Geneva is the principal seat of the manufacture of watches and jewelry.

ITALY.

XXI. Italy is one of the most celebrated countries on the globe. In ancient times it was the central part of the Roman Empire, which ruled all the known world.

Rome, the chief city, is the residence of the head of the Roman Catholic Church, which has a greater number of members than any other Christian denomination.

XXII. Great changes have recently taken place in Italy, and, after a protracted struggle with their rulers, the great body of the people are at last united under a liberal and enlightened government. The Political Divisions of Italy are now as follows, viz.:

The Kingdom of Italy. The Papal States, or States of the Church. The Republic of San Marino.

The kingdom of Italy comprises the former kingdoms of Sardinia, of Lombardy, and of Naples and Sicily, the Grand-Duchy of Tuscany, the Duchies of Parma and of Modena, Venetia, and a large portion of the Papal States. The islands of Sicily, Sardinia, and Elba also form a part of this kingdom. The island of Corsica belongs to France. Savoy, Nice, and Monaco, formerly a part of Sardinia, have been ceded to France.

XXIII. Inhabitants.—The Italians have been for a long time greatly oppressed by their rulers; but their efforts to throw off their yoke, and to obtain for themselves a national unity, have finally been successful.

XXIV. Towns.—Italy contains many towns and cities which are famous in history or in art; almost every place is connected with some remarkable event.

Florence is the capital of the kingdom of Italy. Naples is the largest city. Leghorn, Venice, Genoa, Naples, Palermo, and Messina are the principal commercial cities. Most of the linen rags used for making paper come from Italy and Southern Europe, where the common people dress in linen.

THE TURKISH PENINSULA.

XXV. The Turkish Peninsula, and the adjacent islands, comprise European Turkey and Greece.

European and Asiatic Turkey constitute the Turkish or Ottoman Empire, the sovereign of which is called Sultan, or Grand Seignior. The government is styled the Sublime Porte.

The Danubian Provinces of Servia and Rourania are nearly independent of the Turkish government, and are ruled by princes elected by themselves, who are called Hospodars. Egypt, Tripoli, and Tunis, in Africa, are nominally under the control of the Sublime Porte.

The little territory of Montenegro, in the mountains near the western coast, is under the government of a Bishop of the Greek Church, but is tributary to Turkey. The island of Candia, in the Mediterranean Sea, belongs to Turkey.

Of what does Switzerland consist?—Describe the country and the inhabitants.—What can you say of Italy?—What are the Political Divisions of Italy?—Describe the inhabitants.—For what are many of the cities and towns famous?—Which are the most important commercial places?—What does the Turkish Peninsula comprise?

XXVI. Inhabitants.—The Turks are Mohammedans. They are a grave and solemn people—ignorant, bigoted, and indolent.

The Turks, however, form but a portion of the population of the country; many of the inhabitants are Christians, who profess the religion of the Greek Church.



THE MOSQUE OF SULTAN MAHMOU, AT CONSTANTINOPLE.

XXVII. Towns.—Constantinople, the capital of the empire, is situated upon the Bosphorus, or Channel of Constantinople.

Constantinople is admirably situated for commerce, and exports the products not only of European and Asiatic Turkey, but also of other parts of Western Asia.

GREECE.

XXVIII. Greece, in ancient times, was in advance of all other nations in civilization and learning. In the fifteenth century it was conquered by the Turks; but the Greeks revolted in 1821, and the country is now independent. The government is a limited monarchy.

Almost every part of the country is rendered interesting by some historical event, or by the remains of ancient temples and other structures.

Most of the islands of the Archipelago belong to Greece; of these, Negropont is the largest, but Syra is the most important.

XXIX. Inhabitants.—The modern Greeks are a handsome people, but they are indolent and insincere. Education, of late years, has received considerable attention.

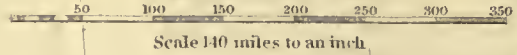
XXX. Towns.—Athens is the capital, and most important city of Greece. It was one of the most celebrated cities of ancient times, and was the birthplace of many renowned philosophers and orators.

XXXI. The Ionian Republic, comprising seven islands, was formerly under the protection of Great Britain; it was ceded to Greece in 1863.

State the extent of the Turkish Empire.—What provinces are nearly independent of the Turkish government?—Describe the inhabitants.—How is Constantinople situated?—What was Greece in ancient times?—Describe the modern Greeks.—What does the Ionian Republic comprise?—Under whose protection is this republic?

MAP OF CENTRAL EUROPE.

STATUTE MILES 69.2 TO A DEGREE.



QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF CENTRAL EUROPE.

OUTLINE.

What sea north of this section?—What sea northwest of it?—What gulf on the northern coast of Prussia?—What bay partly separates Mecklenburg from Prussia?—Where is the island of Rügen?—Heligoland?—What small German State borders on the North Sea?

What extensive country forms a part of the eastern boundary of this section?—What great sea on the south?—What three countries on the west?—What large sea on the eastern coast of Turkey?—On what two straits and sea would you sail, from the Black Sea to the Archipelago?

What two countries constitute the Turkish Peninsula?—Name all the bodies of water you would traverse, in sailing along its coasts.—Where are the Cyclades?—The Ionian Islands?—Candia?—What part of Greece is called the Morea?—Name its southern cape.—What gulf north of the Morea?

Between what two seas is the Italian Peninsula?—Where is the Gulf of Taranto?—Of Genoa?—What strait between Sicily and Italy?—Between the islands of Corsica and Sardinia?—Where are Malta and Gozo?—The Lipari Islands?—Where is the island of Elba?

SURFACE.

What two mountain-ranges in this section form a part of the great central system of Europe and Asia?—Which of them encloses, on three sides, the valley of the River Po?—From what countries do they separate Italy?—What peninsula do the Apennines traverse?—Are the islands of Sicily, Corsica, and Sardinia, mountainous or level?

Along what sea do the Alps extend in a south-easterly direction?—By what mountains in Turkey are they continued?—In what direction?—Near what strait do the Balkan Mountains terminate?—What mountains extend through Greece, south from this chain?—What is the general surface of the Turkish Peninsula: mountainous or level?

What mountains form a great part of the boundary of Hungary?—Where are the Sudectic Mountains?—The Hartz Mountains?—The Black Forest Mountains?—What province of Austria is surrounded by mountains?

What parts of this section are included within the Great Plain of Europe?—Describe the general surface of the country north of the Carpathian Mountains and the chains in the central part of Germany.—To what river-valley do the Plains of Hungary and Turkey belong?—The Plain of Lombardy?

RIVERS AND LAKES.

Name the most important rivers of this section.—The Rhine, Weser, Elbe, Oder, and Vistula, drain the northern slope of Central Europe: in what general direction do they flow?—Which of them empty into the North Sea?—Into the Baltic Sea?

What great river of this section flows into the Black Sea?—Name some of the countries principally drained by this river.—Which of its tributaries forms a part of the boundary between Turkey and Russia?

What part of Italy is drained by the River Po?—Into what does this river flow? In the region of the Alps there are numerous beautiful lakes: in what country are those north of the Alps situated?—South?

CLIMATE AND PRODUCTIONS.

How does the climate of this section differ from that of Western Europe?—Where is it warmest: north or south of the Alps and Balkan Mountains?—Name the chief vegetable production in the northern part of this section.—Where is the vine most extensively raised?—The mulberry and olive?

What grain is raised in the lower basin of the Danube?—Name the principal manufactures.—For what manufactures is Bohemia celebrated?—Switzerland?—Italy?—Whence do we obtain many of the linen rags from which paper is made?—Why are they so abundant in that country?

GERMANY, PRUSSIA, AND AUSTRIA.

What does Germany comprise?—Name the two most important divisions.—Which of these borders upon the Baltic Sea?—Which upon the Adriatic?—In what part of Germany, the northern, central, or southern, are the following divisions: the

Kingdom of Saxony?—Of Bavaria?—Of Wirtemberg?—The Grand Duchy of Baden?—Which of the German States border upon the North Sea?—Upon the Baltic?—Name the Free Cities.—What of Frankfort-on-the-Main?—Where is Hamburg?—Bremen?—Lubeck?—Dresden?—Munich?—Stuttgard?—Leipsic?

What can you say of the situation of Prussia?—On what sea does the eastern part border?—What important river flows across the western?—Describe the surface of Prussia.—Mention some of the principal agricultural products.—Name some of the most important manufactures.—What can you say of the general intelligence of the people?—To what is it chiefly owing?—What large rivers flow into the Baltic Sea?—What one into the North Sea?—Where is the capital?—Where is Breslau?—Cologne?—Königsberg?—Stettin?—Dantzic?—Hanover?—Altona?—What can you say about Dantzic?

What can you say of the size of Austria?—In what part of the empire are Hungary and Transylvania?—By what mountains are they partially surrounded?—Where is Galicia?—Bohemia?—From what country do the rivers Danube and Save separate Austria?—Where is the capital of Austria?—On what sea is Trieste?—On what river is Prague?—Innsbruck?—Pesth?—What division of Italy formerly belonged to Austria?

SWITZERLAND.

What is the form of government in Switzerland?—What languages are spoken in that country?—By what mountains is one-half of the surface occupied?—Are they in the northern or southern part of the country?—Where is the capital?—On what lake is Geneva?

ITALY.

What is the principal division of Italy now called?—Of what former divisions is it composed?—Where are the Papal States situated?—What republic is there on the Adriatic Sea?—Of what kingdom does the island of Sardinia form a part?—To what power does the island of Corsica belong?—What part of the former kingdom of Sardinia has been ceded to France?

What is the chief city of Italy?—Of whom is it the residence?—What is the capital of the kingdom of Italy?—Which is the largest city?—Name some of the principal commercial cities.

Name those situated on the Mediterranean Sea.—The one on the Adriatic.—The one on the Gulf of Genoa.—The two on the Island of Sicily.—On what river is Florence?—Rome?—Turin?

TURKEY.

What constitutes the Ottoman Empire?—Which are the Danubian Provinces of Turkey?—Name the two north of the Danube. The one between the Balkan Mountains and the Danube.—Where is the capital of the Turkish Empire?—Adrianople?—Bucharest?—Jassy?—What large island of Turkey south of the Archipelago?

GREECE AND THE IONIAN ISLANDS.

What part of Greece forms the peninsula called the Morea?—To what country do most of the islands of the Archipelago belong?—Which of these is the largest?—Which is the most important?—Where is the capital of Greece?—Where are the Ionian Islands?—What is their number?—To what kingdom do they belong?

MISCELLANEOUS.

To what ports in this section, those on the Baltic or Mediterranean Seas, would a merchant go to purchase sweet-oil, silk, and fruit?—Freight a vessel with wine and grain at Trieste for London: through what waters will she pass?—A party of German wine-growers wish to emigrate to Ohio, and agree to meet at Hamburg: describe their entire route thence to Cincinnati.—Where is the volcano of Mt. Vesuvius?—Mt. Etna?

Bound Austria.—Italy.—Turkey.—Greece.—Spell Bavaria. Wirtemberg. Bohemia. Altona. Adriatic. Zealand. Apennine. Bosphorus. Dardanelles. Moldavia. Wallachia. Marmora. Vesuvius. Sicily. Trieste. Constantinople. Denmark. Frankfort. Copenhagen. Königsberg. Dantzic. Cologne. Austria.



PROCESSION OF ELEPHANTS, INDIA.

PAGODA OF WHAMPOA, CHINA.

SCENE IN KAMTSCHATKA, SIBERIA.

CHAPTER XVII.

ASIA.

I. THE outline of Asia is very irregular, though the seas, gulfs, and bays, do not penetrate so far into the interior as in Europe.

II. The surface is crossed by a system of mountains and table-lands, which form a continuation of the mountain-system of Europe.

The mountain-system of Asia commences with the Taurus Mountains, and is continued by the chains of the Elborz and Hindoo Koosh to the Bolor Mountains. From this point it branches off into four great chains—the Himalaya, Kuen Lun, Thian Shan, and Altai—which are among the grandest and most stupendous mountains upon the globe.

Southward from this great chain (as in Europe,) extend a number of peninsulas, each of which is penetrated by a branch of the principal system.

III. The table-lands of this system are the loftiest and most extensive in the world. They may be divided into two classes: those of Central, and those of Southern Asia.

The plateaus of Central Asia consist of Thibet, and of the country between the Kuen Lun and Thian Shan Mountains.

The plateaus of Southern Asia comprise the Deccan, which lies south of the Vindhya Mountains, in Hindoostan; the Plateau of Iran—including Persia, Afghanistan, and Beloochistan; Arabia; and the northern part of Asiatic Turkey.

How does the outline of Asia compare with that of Europe?—Give the names of the mountain-chains which form a continuation of the great mountain-system of Europe.—Describe the country south of this system.—Into what two classes may the table-lands be divided?—Name the Plateaus of Central Asia.—Of Southern Asia.

IV. The Great Northern Plain of Asia, which forms a part of the great plain of Europe and Asia, embraces Turkestan and Siberia.

The other low-lands are found along the sea-coast, or in the river-valleys.

V. Asia contains an immense belt of desert land, which extends almost entirely across the country, from west to east.

Some of these deserts are of sand, and some of gravel, whilst others are composed of salt or salt marsh. Rain seldom falls here.

VI. Rivers and Lakes.—The principal rivers may be divided into three systems: 1. Those which flow into the Arctic Ocean; 2. Those which flow into the Pacific; 3. Those which flow into the Indian Ocean.

Besides these, there are many rivers flowing into salt lakes, whose waters do not flow into the sea. The Caspian Sea and the Sea of Aral are lakes of this kind.

VII. Climate.—The climate of Asia may be described under three divisions: that of Northern, Central, and Southern Asia.

The climate of Northern Asia (that is, the Arctic Slope) is characterized by intense cold, with a short interval of great heat during summer.

Central Asia has the climate of the Temperate Zone. It is subject to great extremes of heat and cold, and, except near the shores of the Pacific, is remarkably dry; for the Himalaya, Hindoo Koosh, and Elborz Mountains, intercept the warm and moist winds of the Indian Ocean.

Southern Asia (that is, the region lying south of the southern mountain-chain) has the climate of the Torrid Zone.

What countries constitute the Great Northern Plain of Asia?—Where do you find the other low-lands?—What can you say of the desert land of Asia?—Into what three systems may the rivers be divided?—What other rivers are there in Asia?—Describe the climate of Northern Asia.—Of Central Asia.—Of Southern Asia.

VIII. **Productions and Animals.**—These will be described in connection with the different political divisions. Their general character may be learned by studying Lessons XV. and XVI., in Part I.

IX. **Inhabitants.**—The Asiatic nations belong to three different races of mankind: the Mongolian, the Caucasian, and the Malay race.

The nations living north of the southern mountain-chain, as well as the Turks, Japanese, and the people of Farther India, belong to the Mongolian race.

To the Caucasian race belong the Georgians, Armenians, Arabs, Persians, Afghans, and Hindoos, — occupying most of the country south of that chain.

The Malays inhabit the Peninsula of Malacca.

X. **Religion.**—The principal systems of religion in Asia are Mohammedanism, and various forms of Pagan worship.

Mohammedanism is the prevailing religion in Turkey, Turkestan, Arabia, Persia, Afghanistan, and Beloochistan; Paganism, of the other parts of Asia.

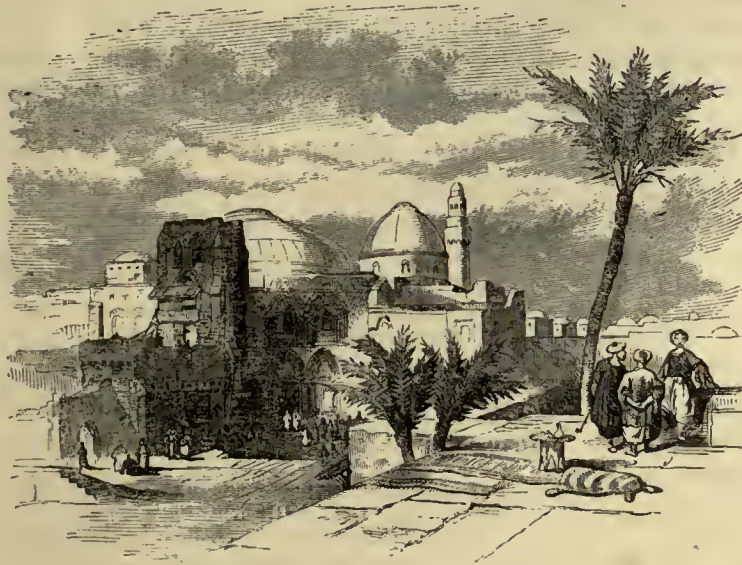
ASIATIC TURKEY.

XI. Turkey in Asia is a part of the Ottoman Empire. (See page 77, paragraph XXV.)

From the part which it has acted in history, it is one of the most interesting countries on the globe. It contains the ruins of many of the most powerful cities of ancient times, and is full of places which are connected with important events.

XII. **Syria** (one of the provinces) includes Palestine, or the Holy Land, in which most of the events recorded in Scripture took place.

XIII. **Towns.**—The principal commercial city is Smyrna, from which are exported fruit, rags, and various other articles.



CHURCH OF THE HOLY SEPULCHRE, AT JERUSALEM.

Jerusalem is the holy city of the Jews, and, to the Christian, is one of the most interesting places in the world.

ASIATIC RUSSIA.

XIV. Asiatic Russia comprises more than one-third of Asia. The principal divisions are Siberia and Georgia.

The Russian Possessions in Asia have greatly increased in extent within the past few years. The Kirghis country north of Turkestan, and the greater part of the

To what three races do the inhabitants of Asia belong?—What are the principal systems of religion?—Of what empire is Asiatic Turkey a part?—Which of its provinces includes Palestine?—What can you say of Jerusalem?—What are the principal divisions of Asiatic Russia?—What can you say of the increase in extent of Asiatic Russia?

basin of the Amoor River (which was formerly a part of the Chinese Empire), are recent annexations to the territory of Russia. The Aleutian and the Kurile Islands, and the Island of Saghalien, also belong to Russia.

XV. **Siberia** occupies the entire northern part of Asia. From the severity of the climate, the greater part of this immense region is unfit for extensive settlement; yet its mines of gold and silver, and its fur-bearing animals, render it of great value to Russia.

XVI. **Inhabitants.**—About three-fourths of the population are Russians. The remainder consists of native tribes.

Siberia has long been used by the government as a place of banishment for exiles and criminals, and a large portion of the population consists of them and their descendants.

XVII. **Towns.**—Tobolsk and Irkoutsk are the largest towns.

Kyachta, on the southern border of Siberia, and Maimatschin, just across the line in Mongolia, are places where an immense inland trade is carried on between China and Russia. The extent of this trade may be estimated from the fact that twelve millions of pounds of tea, which had been brought across the desert from Peking, were sold at Maimatschin in 1856.

Nicolaiusk and Alexandrovsk are the principal ports of the Amoor River country. Petropaulosky is the largest town of the peninsula of Kamtschatka.

XVIII. **Georgia** is south of the Caucasus Mountains. Teflis is the capital. The inhabitants are a vigorous and handsome race.

TURKESTAN.

XIX. Turkestan, or Independent Tartary, is divided into several independent States, in each of which the ruler is styled the Khan.

XX. **Inhabitants.**—The population consists chiefly of tribes belonging to the Mongolian race.

In the south, the inhabitants are engaged in agriculture; but the wandering tribes, in the north and west, subsist by war and the chase, and their chief wealth is in their immense numbers of camels, horses, sheep, and goats.

XXI. **Towns.**—Bokhara, Khokan, and Khiva, are each the capital of a State of the same name.

THE CHINESE EMPIRE.

XXII. The Chinese Empire includes China, Thibet, Corea, Mongolia, Mantchooria, Soongaria, and Little Bokhara.

The four last named divisions are called Chinese Tartary. Thibet and Chinese Tartary are thinly-peopled regions. The latter is occupied by pastoral tribes, whose chiefs, in most cases, own only a nominal subjection to China.

Lassa is the capital of Thibet, and the residence of the Grand Lama. The Grand Lama is worshipped as the Supreme Being. His followers believe that he never dies, but that his soul passes into another body—that of some child, selected by the priests.

Corea is a separate kingdom, under its own sovereign, but tributary to China.

XXIII. **China** is the most important and densely-settled portion of the Chinese Empire.

So dense is the population in some districts, that great numbers of the inhabitants dwell constantly upon boats in the rivers, or on rafts in the lakes, which they convert into gardens by covering them with earth.

The Chinese are a very industrious people, and, to improve their condition, great numbers emigrate to other countries. Thus, they are very numerous in Farther India, in the islands of Malaysia and Australasia, and considerable numbers of them have even found their way to California. They are, however, deceitful and very immoral, and exceedingly jealous of Europeans.

Describe Siberia.—Name the principal towns.—Where is Georgia?—Name the capital.—Of what does Turkestan consist?—In what are the inhabitants chiefly engaged?—Name the divisions of the Chinese Empire.—Which of them constitute Chinese Tartary?—What can you say of the Grand Lama?—Of the population of China?—The Chinese?

XXIV. Productions.—The most important productions are rice, tea, and silk.

Rice is the chief article of food for the entire population. Tea and silk are the principal exports.

XXV. Government.—The government is a despotic monarchy. The emperor possesses unlimited power over all beneath him, and claims the title of "Father of his people."

The officers of government are styled *mandarins*. The laws are severe; for trifling offences, punishment with the bamboo is inflicted, while serious crimes almost always meet with death.

XXVI. Towns.—China contains many great cities, most of which, however, are known to Europeans only by name. Peking is the capital, and is said to contain two millions of inhabitants.

Canton is better known to us than any other city of China, and is the chief seat of the foreign trade. Shanghai, Ningpo, Fuchow, and Amoy, are the other most important ports.

Until very recently, the five places named in the preceding paragraph were the only sea-ports at which foreigners were permitted to trade. By late treaties, however, all of China is open to the intercourse of foreign nations.

Hainan and Formosa are Chinese islands. Hong Kong, an island lying south of Canton, belongs to the British, to whom it was ceded in 1843. Macao belongs to the Portuguese. It was granted to them 250 years ago, for assistance in clearing the coast of pirates.

EMPIRE OF JAPAN.

XXVII. The Empire of Japan embraces the islands of Nippon, Sikoke, Kiusiu, and Jesso, besides some of smaller size.



A JAPANESE JUNK.

All these islands are mountainous, and subject to frequent earthquakes. The Lew Chew Islands also belong to Japan. Commodore Perry visited the latter in the year 1853.

XXVIII. Productions.—The principal of these are rice, wheat, barley, tea, tobacco, and camphor.

What are the most important productions of China?—What is the government?—Name the capital.—The principal sea-ports.—To what power does Hong Kong belong?—Macao?—Which are the principal islands of Japan?—What other islands also belong to Japan?—What are the chief productions?—What art derives its name from this country?—Name the capital of Japan.—The principal ports for foreign trade.

The country appears to be rich also in minerals,—gold, silver, copper, and iron being abundant. The art of *japanning* (or covering metals with varnish) derives its name from this empire.

XXIX. Towns.—Yeddo, a very populous city, is the capital. Hakodadi and Kanagawa are the principal ports for the foreign trade.

The Japanese were formerly very jealous of foreigners, and the Government permitted but little intercourse with other nations. The United States, and several European powers, have, however, recently effected treaties with Japan, by which their citizens are permitted to visit the empire, and trade with the inhabitants.

INDIA.

XXX. India consists of two peninsulas: Hindoostan and Farther India, or Indo-China.

Both peninsulas are remarkable for the fertility of the soil; and yield, in great abundance, the products of the tropical regions in which they are situated.

XXXI. Climate.—The climate of India is greatly influenced by the *monsoons*, or periodical winds which prevail in the Indian Ocean.

These winds blow from the north-east for six months in the year, and from the south-west during the remaining months. On the western coast, the south-west monsoon brings the rainy season—and the north-east, the dry season. On the eastern coast, on the contrary, the rains occur during the north-east monsoon, and the dry season during the south-west.

XXXII. Productions.—The most important productions are rice and cotton. Rice forms the principal food of the natives, and almost their entire clothing is made from cotton.

The other chief exports are indigo, opium, silk, and various drugs, spices, and perfumes.

XXXIII. Animals.—The most remarkable animals are the elephant, rhinoceros, tiger, and the python (a huge serpent which resembles the boa-constrictor of South America).

The Royal Bengal tiger is the largest, fiercest, and most beautiful of the tiger species. Elephants are used in tiger-hunting, which is a favorite amusement in India.

XXXIV. The Hindoos are divided into four castes, or classes, according to their occupation: as the priest, soldier, merchant, or laborer. The pariahs are the outcasts of these classes.

The son inherits the occupation of his father, from one generation to another. The male members of one caste may legally marry into a caste below their own, but not into one above. There is no distinction of caste in the countries of Farther India, and in British India it is not so rigidly observed as formerly.

XXXV. British India.—Nearly the whole of Hindoostan belongs, or is tributary, to ^{Great Britain} Great Britain. It was long subject to the East India Company, but in 1858 their territories were transferred to the Crown.

The French and Portuguese have some small settlements upon the coast. Nepal and Bhotan, on the southern slope of the Himalaya Mountains, are independent States. The ^{British} British, who rule this vast region, form but a small part of the population.

XXXVI. Towns.—Hindoostan contains some large and important cities. Calcutta, the capital of British India, is a very large city, and the seat of an extensive trade.

Bombay and Madras are next in commercial importance. Benares is the seat of Hindoo learning. Pondicherry is the capital of the French possessions, and Goa of those belonging to Portugal.

Ceylon is a fine, fertile island, belonging to the ^{British} British. The Laccadive and Maldivé Islands are of coral formation, and but thinly inhabited.

Name the two peninsulas of India.—What are the monsoons?—What effect have they upon the climate?—Name the chief productions of India.—The exports.—Some of the animals.—What distinctions exist among the Hindoos?—What is caste?—To what country does Hindoostan mostly belong?—Name the capital of British India.—What places are next in commercial importance?—To what country does Ceylon belong?

XXXVII. Farther India includes four native States: the Kingdoms of Birmah and Siam, the Empire of Anam, and the interior State of Laos.

There are also some Malay States in Malacca, and the British Possessions on the western side of the Peninsula. The British Territories, in both Hindoostan and Farther India, are comprehended under the general name of British India, and are under the control of the Governor-General, who resides at Calcutta.

XXXVIII. Towns.—Ava is the capital of Birmah; Bangkok, of Siam; and Hue, of Anam.

Ava was destroyed by an earthquake in 1839; but has since been rebuilt. Amrapura and Monchebo have been successively capitals of Birmah.



THE GOLDEN PAGODA OF RANGOON.

Singapore, on an island of the same name, at the extremity of Malacca, is the most important commercial city. It belongs to the British. Rangoon, famous for its Golden Pagoda, is also a commercial city of considerable importance.

AFGHANISTAN AND BELOOCHISTAN.

XXXIX. The greater part of this region is mountainous and barren, though there are many fertile valleys.

Both of these countries are in a very unsettled condition: divided into many States, the extent of which is constantly changing. The inhabitants generally lead a pastoral life, and are rude, turbulent, and warlike.

XL. Towns.—Cabul, Candahar, and Herat, in Afghanistan, and Kelat, in Beloochistan, are each capitals of States of the same name.

PERSIA.

XLI. The table-land is dry and barren, and subject to great extremes of heat and cold; but the mountain valleys, and other well-watered tracts, are exceedingly fertile.

XLII. Productions.—The natural productions are fruits, grain, rice, cotton, assafœtida, and the vine.

The people are very skilful in the making of various silk and cotton fabrics, shawls, leather, and perfumery.

XLIII. The government is a despotic monarchy. The sovereign is called the Shah.

Which are the principal native States of Farther India?—Where are the British Possessions?—What general name is given to the British Possessions in India?—Name the capital of Birmah.—Of Siam.—Of Anam.—Which is the chief commercial city of Farther India?—Describe Afghanistan and Beloochistan.—The inhabitants.—Name the largest towns.—What can you say of Persia?—Of the productions?—Of the government?

The chiefs of the warlike mountain tribes, and other unsettled portions of the population, are but little dependent on the royal authority.

XLIV. Towns.—Teheran is the capital. Ispahan is the most populous city; and Bushire, the principal sea-port.

The British government, as the result of hostilities with Persia in 1856 and 1857, may be said to have the control of the Persian Gulf, having gained a station at Bushire and several other places on the coast.

ARABIA.

XLV. The greater part of Arabia is a desert-plateau. The principal fertile tracts are Oman and Yemen, and the mountain-valleys.

There, dates and other fruits, coffee, and various gums are produced. Pearls are obtained in great numbers in the Persian Gulf.

The camel, which affords almost the only conveyance for goods and passengers across the desert, is the most important animal in Arabia. The Arabian horses are celebrated for their beauty and speed, and are regarded by their owners with the greatest affection.

XLVI. Arabia has never been subject to one sovereign. The people are divided into numerous independent tribes, each of which is governed by its own chief, or Sheikh.

The most important of the native rulers are the Sultans of Muscat and Sana. The dominions of the former include the eastern and southern part of the peninsula, portions of the Persian Gulf coast, and some districts on the coast of Beloochistan.



THE HARBOR OF MUSCAT.

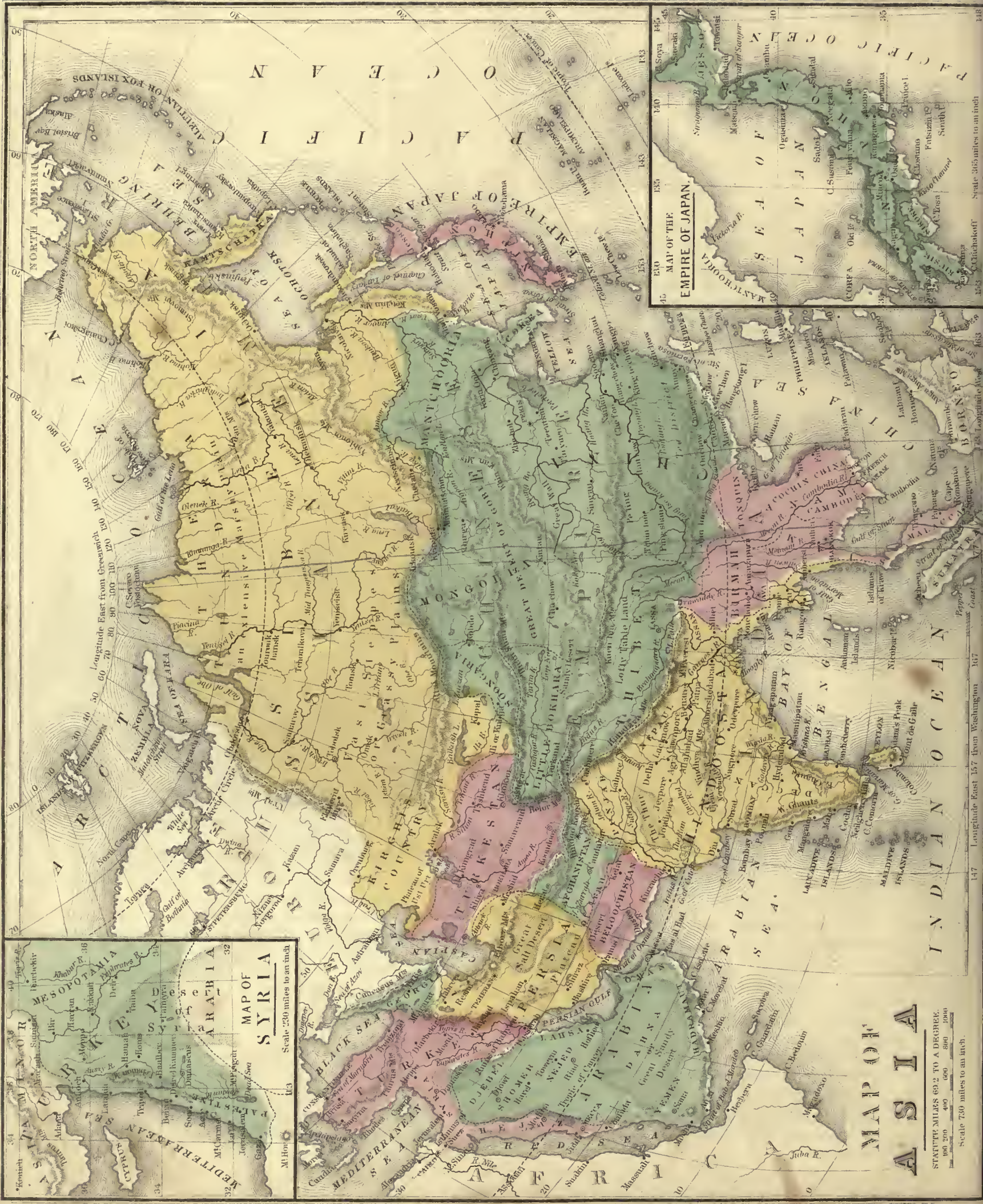
XLVII. Inhabitants.—The greater part of the population are inhabitants of the desert, styled Bedouins, who look with contempt upon the dwellers in the towns.

The Bedouins are a wandering people, devoting themselves to the care of their camels, horses, goats, and sheep. They are generous and hospitable, but quarrelsome, revengeful, and addicted to plunder.

XLVIII. Towns.—Muscat and Sana are the largest towns. Mocha exports large quantities of coffee.

Mecca is regarded by the Mohammedans as a holy city, and is annually visited by vast numbers of pilgrims. Medina is the burial-place of Mohammed. Aden belongs to the British.

Name the capital of Persia.—The other important places.—What parts of Arabia are fertile?—What are some of the productions?—Where are pearls obtained?—Why is the camel so useful an animal?—What can you say of the government?—Of the inhabitants?—The Bedouins?—Which is the largest town?—Name the other important places, and state for what each is noted.



MAP OF ASIA

Scale 730 miles to an inch.
 STATUTE MILES 63.2 TO A DEGREE.
 0 200 400 600 800 1000

Longitude East 157 from Washington 167

Scale 305 miles to an inch
 0 100 200 300 400 500 600 700 800 900 1000
 165 166 167 168 169 170 171 172 173 174 175 176 177 178 179 180
 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45
 MATTHEW FLANNERY
 C. CHITTAKER

QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF ASIA.

OUTLINE.

Do the seas, gulfs, and bays of Asia penetrate farther into the land than those of Europe? — Where does Asia approach nearest to America? — What ocean on the north of Asia? — On the east? — On the south? — What sea and two gulfs on the Arctic coast? — Name the five seas on the eastern coast of Asia. — What group of islands is south of the most northern of these seas? — What peninsula, island, and group of islands, partially enclose the Sea of Ochootsk? — Through what strait can you pass from this sea into that of Japan? — Through what channel? — What islands are south-east of the Sea of Japan?

Name the strait connecting the Sea of Japan with the Yellow Sea. — The Yellow with the China Sea. — China Sea and the Bay of Bengal. — What islands south-east of the Yellow Sea? — East of China Sea? — Name all the straits and seas through which you would sail, to go from the Sea of Ochootsk into the Bay of Bengal.

By what channel may the China Sea be entered from the Pacific Ocean? — By what strait the Yellow Sea? — The Sea of Japan? — By what strait can the Arctic Ocean be entered from Behring Sea? — What large bay and sea are south of Asia? — What gulf between Persia and Arabia? — By what strait is this gulf entered from the Arabian Sea? — Name the four seas forming a part of the western boundary of Asia. — By what strait is the most southern of these connected with the ocean? — Which of these four seas has no connection with the ocean? — Where is the Sea of Aral?

What Grand Division forms a part of the western boundary of Asia? — What isthmus connects Asia and Africa? — What is the most northern cape of Asia? — The most eastern? — The most southern?

What peninsula lies between Behring Sea and Sea of Ochootsk? — Between the Sea of Japan and the Yellow Sea? — China Sea and the Bay of Bengal? — The Gulf of Siam and Strait of Malacca? — The Bay of Bengal and Arabian Sea? — The Persian Gulf and Red Sea? — The Black and Mediterranean Seas?

In what ocean are the islands of Nova Zembla and New Siberia? — Where is the island of Formosa? — Hainan? — What two groups of islands in the Bay of Bengal? — In the Arabian Sea? — Where is Ceylon? — Cyprus?

SURFACE.

With what range, upon the west, does the principal mountain-system of Asia commence? — With what does it terminate at the extreme north-east? — In what direction, then, does this system extend?

Name the chains, in their order, from the west to the Bolor Mountains. — Into what four chains, at that point, does the system divide? — What mountains form a continuation of the Himalaya chain to the Pacific coast? — Of the Kuen Lun chain? — The Altai chain?

Name the mountain-ranges forming the southern chain of this system, from the China Sea to the Mediterranean. — What peninsulas extend southward from this chain? — Is the surface of these peninsulas generally elevated or level?

Into what two classes are the plateaus of Asia divided? — Between what mountain-chains is the table-land of Tibet? — What other portion of Central Asia is high land? — Name the plateaus of Southern Asia. — What mountain-chains bound the Deccan? — Describe the position of the others.

Where is the Great Plain of Asia? — What countries are comprised within the limits of this plain? — Where are the other lowlands of Asia?

RIVERS AND LAKES.

Into what three systems may the principal rivers be divided? — To which system do the lakes and rivers of Siberia belong? — In what direction, in that country, does the land slope? — How do you know that fact? — Describe the course of the Ob, the Yenisei, and the Lena. — Into what river does Lake Baikal flow?

What country is drained by the Amoor River? — Into what body of water does it flow? — What are the two principal rivers of China? — In what general direction do they flow? — Into what sea? — What is the general course of the rivers south of the southern mountain-chain?

Name the four principal rivers of Farther India. — What two rivers flow into the head of the Bay of Bengal? — Into what sea does the Indus flow? — Into what gulf, the Euphrates? — Two large rivers empty into the Sea of Aral: name them. — Do their waters flow thence into the ocean? — Name two other rivers of Asia which flow into lakes or inland seas not connected with the ocean.

ASIATIC TURKEY.

By what waters are the coasts of Asiatic Turkey washed? — What mountains cross the surface of the country? — Where is Mt. Ararat? — Where is the table-land? — By what rivers is the southern plain drained? — To what race do the Turks belong? — What is their religion? — Where is Jerusalem? — Smyrna? — Name the exports.

ASIATIC RUSSIA.

What are the two principal divisions of Asiatic Russia? — In what part of Asia is Siberia? — Where is Georgia? — Is Siberia a cold or a warm country? — What are some of its productions?

Name the two largest towns of Siberia. — What can you say of Kyachta and Maimatschin? — What was the value of the tea sold at Maimatschin in 1856, supposing it to have been worth 55 cents per pound?

TURKESTAN.

What inland sea in this country? — What other inland sea forms a part of its western boundary? — Describe the surface. — What part of the country is a desert? — To what race do the people belong? — What is their religion?

THE CHINESE EMPIRE.

Name all the divisions of the Chinese Empire. — What general name is given to all of Asia lying between the Great Wall, the Kuen Lun, Hindoo Koosh, and Elborz Mountains, and Siberia? — Name all the countries of Turkestan. — Where is Tibet? — Corea? — Which is the most populous section of the Chinese Empire?

What part of China has a tropical climate: the northern, or southern? — Name the principal productions. — Where is the capital? — Name the five principal sea-ports. — Give the situation of each. — To what country does Hong Kong belong? — Macao?

INDIA.

Does India belong to Central or Southern Asia? — What is the general character of the climate and productions? — What can you say of the monsoons?

What is the principal food of the natives? — Of what is their clothing made? — Name the chief exports. — The most remarkable animals. — To what race do the Hindoos belong? — What is the prevailing religion?

To what country does the greater part of Hindoostan belong? — Where is the capital of British India? — Where is Bombay? — Madras? — Goa? — Pondicherry?

Where is Ava? — Bangkok? — Hue? — Rangoon? — Singapore? — Ship a cargo of opium from Calcutta to Canton: what article is likely to be sent in return? — Through what strait will both voyages be made? — What town at one end of that strait?

AFGHANISTAN, BELOUCHISTAN, AND PERSIA.

By what plateau is most of this region occupied? — What mountains on the north? — What is the character of the soil and climate of the table-land? — What parts are fertile? — Where is Cabul? — Candahar? — Kelat? — Herat? — Teheran? — Ispahan? — Bushire? — What can you say of each?

ARABIA.

Describe the surface. — Name the productions. — Where are the possessions of the Sultan of Muscat? — Where is Muscat? — Mocha? — Mecca? — Medina? — Aden? — What can you say of them?

MISCELLANEOUS.

Freight a vessel at Canton for New York, and tell the articles you would ship. — Name the bodies of water on which you would sail, going from Suez to Bombay. — In what country of Asia are the people divided into castes? — Where is the Great Desert of Gobi?

In what country does the Grand Lama reside? — Which is the holy city of the Mohammedans? — With what would you freight a vessel at Mocha for Philadelphia? — At Smyrna for Boston? — Caravans of camels are used for carrying tea from Peking to Maimatschin: what desert do they cross?

Bound Asia. — Sketch a map of Asia, and locate the principal mountain-chains and rivers. — Spell Hindoostan. Yang-tse-Kiang. Formosa. Himalaya. Baikal. Lena. Euphrates. Singapore. Saghalien. Ochotsk.



CAMELOPARDS AND LION.

THE SPHINX.

ARABS AND CAMELS.

CHAPTER XVIII.

AFRICA.

I. **AFRICA** is the largest peninsula in the world. It is connected with Asia by the Isthmus of Suez.

II. **Outline.**—The coast is not indented by deep gulfs and bays. This is one of the principal reasons why the interior is so little known.

Geographers possess much less knowledge of Africa than of any other Grand Division of the earth. Large portions of its interior have never been visited by a white man. Even the source of the Nile, a river which has been famous in history since the time of Moses, has only been discovered very recently.

The insatubility of the climate, and the savage character of the natives, are additional obstacles to the exploration of Africa, and many intrepid travellers have lost their lives in the attempt.

III. **Surface.**—The principal mountain-systems of Africa are the Atlas Chain, the Mountains of the Moon, the Snow Mountains, the Kong, Crystal and Cameroon Mountains.

The ranges of the eastern coast have been but little explored; they are known, however, to stretch from the Highlands of Abyssinia to the southern extremity of Africa. The Mountains of the Moon, once erroneously supposed to extend across Central Africa from east to west, are a part of this system.

The only plateaus of which we have any reliable knowledge are those of Abyssinia, the Sahara, or Great Desert, and South Africa. The first embraces nearly all of Abyssinia; the last, the section south of the Snow Mountains. The principal plains are those of Egypt, Central and Southern Africa.

IV. **Rivers.**—The rivers flow into the Mediterranean Sea, the Indian, and the Atlantic Oceans.

Describe the coast of Africa.—State some of the reasons why its interior is so little known.—Describe the surface.—Into what do the rivers flow?—What can you say of the climate?—What parts are said to be unhealthy?

There are also many rivers of considerable size flowing into lakes, which are not, probably, connected with the ocean.

V. **Climate.**—The greater part of Africa is in the Torrid Zone, and, much of the country being desert-land, it is, as a whole, the hottest and driest Grand Division of the globe.

The climate of the eastern and western coasts is very unhealthy. It is especially fatal to white men.

[The productions, animals, and inhabitants, will be described in connection with the separate divisions.]

VI. Africa may be divided into Northern, Eastern, Southern, Western, and Central Africa.

NORTHERN AFRICA.

VII. Northern Africa comprises Barbary, the Sahara, or Great Desert, and the Nile countries.

The principal food-plants in this region are dhourra, teff, and millet (kinds of grain), and the date-palm tree. So numerous are these trees in the section south of the Atlas Mountains, that the country is called *Beled el Jerid* ("Land of Dates").

Rice, wheat, and cotton, are raised in Egypt. Abyssinia is supposed to be the native country of the coffee-plant.

The lion, elephant, rhinoceros, and camelopard, are found in this section, as also throughout nearly all of Africa. The camel is the most useful animal. The ostrich is the largest bird, and the crocodile the most formidable reptile.

Most of the inhabitants belong to the Caucasian race, and profess the Mohammedan religion. There are, however, many negroes in the Nile countries.

VIII. Barbary embraces Morocco, Algeria, Tunis, and Tripoli.

Morocco is an independent empire. Algeria is a colony of France. Tunis and Tripoli are nominally subject to Turkey.

Into what divisions may Africa be separated?—What does Northern Africa comprise?—What are the principal productions of this section?—Name the animals.—To what race do the inhabitants belong?—What are the different countries of Barbary?

By means of caravans, the inhabitants carry on an extensive trade with the negro tribes, south of the Great Desert, and they export wool, goat-skins, leather, olive oil, and various fruits.

Barca and Fezzan, one of the oases of the Great Desert, are provinces of Tripoli. Tunis, Tripoli, Algiers, Morocco, and Fez, are the chief cities of Barbary.

IX. The Sahara, or Great Desert, is a vast table-land, about four-fifths the size of the United States, consisting chiefly of sandy and stony tracts. It contains a few oases, or fertile spots, and can only be crossed by the aid of camels.

The only inhabitants of this dreary region are a few wandering tribes, called Tibboos and Tuaricks. Salt is found on the desert in large quantities.

X. The countries of the Nile are Egypt, Nubia, and Abyssinia.

XI. Egypt is celebrated for its pyramids, and its ruins of ancient cities and temples. It has been a country of unrivalled fertility, from the earliest dawn of history.

XII. Nubia and Kordofan (which lies to the southwest of Nubia), are subject to the Pasha of Egypt.

It rarely or never rains in Middle or Upper Egypt, and the land is watered by the annual overflow of the river Nile.

Alexandria is the chief sea-port of Egypt. Cairo, the capital, is the largest city in Africa. Khartoom is the only city of any considerable size in Nubia.

XIII. Abyssinia consisted until lately of three separate States, but they are now united under the government of the Negus or Emperor Theodorus.

Gondar is the capital of Abyssinia.

Most of the people profess the Christian religion, but their faith is obscured by many barbarous and superstitious ceremonies.

The Gallas or Ormas, a dark-brown race, inhabit the regions south of Abyssinia, and were once the terror of the surrounding nations, but their habits are now more peaceful. They cultivate the ground to a limited extent, and raise large herds of cattle.

EASTERN AFRICA.

XIV. Eastern Africa includes the countries upon the coast, from the Strait of Bab-el-Mandeb to the Tropic of Capricorn.

The principal divisions are Zanguebar and Mozambique. The country north of Zanguebar is occupied by a people called the Somaulies.

The Suahilies inhabit the coast districts. The people of the interior are pagan Negroes. The towns on the coast of Zanguebar are governed by the Sultan of Zanzibar. Zanzibar City is the seat of his government. Mozambique belongs to Portugal.

SOUTHERN AFRICA.

XV. Southern Africa comprises Cape Colony, Natal, Caffraria, the Trans Vaal Republic, Orange River Free State, and the Zoolu, Bechuana, Namaqua, and Damara countries.

Cape Colony and Natal are British colonies. Caffraria is in the possession of independent tribes of Caffirs, a variety of the negro race.

The Trans Vaal Republic and Orange River Free State are independent States, inhabited by negro tribes and Dutch boers, or farmers, the latter being the ruling class.

The Zoolu, Bechuana, Damara, and Namaqua countries are thinly inhabited by rude, pastoral tribes, who go about from place to place, to feed their numerous herds of cattle, which form their chief wealth.

XVI. Cape Colony is the most important division of Southern Africa. About one-half of the inhabitants are Dutch and English.

Cape Town, the chief city, carries on an extensive trade with Great Britain and other foreign countries. Wool is the principal article of export.

Name the chief cities of Barbary.—Describe the Sahara.—Which are the Nile countries?—For what is Egypt celebrated?—To what power are Nubia and Kordofan subject?—What can you say of Abyssinia?—Of the Gallas?—What are the principal divisions of Eastern Africa?—To what power does Zanguebar belong?—Mozambique?—What does Southern Africa comprise?—Which divisions belong to the British?—Describe the others.

WESTERN AFRICA.

XVII. Western Africa includes the countries upon the coast, from the Great Desert to the Tropic of Capricorn. Senegambia and Guinea are the principal divisions.

The British, Dutch, French, and Portuguese, have settlements on this coast. The most important one is the British colony of Sierra Leone, which was founded in 1787 as a refuge for liberated slaves.

XVIII. LIBERIA is a negro republic, with a government modelled after that of the United States.

Liberia was founded in 1821, by the American Colonization Society, as a place of refuge for free blacks and liberated slaves from the United States. It is regarded as a most successful experiment for the civilization of Africa.

Monrovia is the capital and chief town. It is a place of considerable trade, containing many schools and churches.

Ashantee, Dahomey, and Yoruba are the most important native kingdoms. The army of Dahomey is composed chiefly of women.

CENTRAL AFRICA.

XIX. Central Africa comprises Soudan, Ethiopia, and the Region of the Zambesi.

Soudan contains many small States, some of which are known to us only by name. The whole region is a plain of great fertility, and embraces the basin of Lake Tchad, and the greater part of that of the river Niger.

Dr. Barth and other recent travellers report Soudan to be well peopled by various nations, one of whom, the Fellatas, have acquired an empire of 1400 miles in extent since the commencement of the present century.

There are some cities and towns of considerable size in Soudan. Of these, Sokoto, Kashna, Kano, Sego, and Wurno are perhaps the most important.

Ethiopia is still an almost unknown region, notwithstanding the numerous attempts to explore it. In 1859, Lake Tanganyika and Lake Victoria Nyanza were discovered by Captains Burton and Speke, and in 1864 Lake Albert Nyanza by Mr. Baker. The latter is now supposed to be the source of the river Nile.

The Region of the Zambesi has been recently explored by Dr. Livingstone. Lake Nyassa was discovered by him in 1859. He reports the country to be a low and fertile plain, which in the rainy season is in part covered with water.

The productions of Eastern, Western, and Central Africa, are such as belong to the Torrid Zone. The natives collect some palm-oil, ivory, and gold dust, which are exported from the towns on the coast, but the principal trade is the selling of slaves—a traffic which most Christian nations have united in endeavoring to suppress.

Savage and powerful animals, such as the lion, elephant, rhinoceros, hippopotamus, and the gorilla, a gigantic species of ape, abound in this portion of Africa.

The natives are found in various stages of barbarism. Nearly all of them belong to the negro race. Those of Central Africa are considered somewhat superior to the inhabitants of the coast. They work skillfully in gold, iron, and leather, and weave and dye substantial cotton fabrics.

AFRICAN ISLANDS.

XX. Madagascar is the largest of the African Islands. It is a mountainous country, and but little known. Part of the inhabitants belong to the Negro, and part to the Malay race.

Bourben and Mauritius Islands are east of Madagascar. The former belongs to France; the latter, to England. The Almirante and Seychelle Islands are dependencies of Mauritius. Socotra is under the dominion of the Sultan of Zanzibar.

The Azores, Madeira, and Cape Verd Islands belong to Portugal; the Canaries, to Spain. Fruit, sugar, coffee, cochineal, and salt are the chief exports.

St. Helena and Ascension are ~~small~~ islands. The former is noted as having been the place of exile of the Emperor Napoleon, who died there in 1821.

What are the principal divisions of Western Africa?—What European governments have settlements upon the coast?—What can you say of Liberia?—What are the three divisions of Central Africa?—Describe Soudan.—In what region have large lakes been discovered?—Name some of the exports of these sections.—The principal animals.—Describe the inhabitants.—Name the largest African island.—The other principal islands.

QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF AFRICA.

OUTLINE.

By what isthmus is Africa connected with Asia? — What seas does that isthmus separate? — Where does Africa approach nearest to Europe? — What bodies of water wash the coast of Africa? — Which is the most northern cape? — The most eastern? — Southern? — Western?

SURFACE.

Name the most important mountain-systems. — Which of these skirts the northern coast? — Name the principal chains near the eastern coast. — The south-eastern and southern. — What chain north of the Gulf of Guinea? — Where are the Cameroon Mountains? — Where are the table-lands of Abyssinia? — Of South Africa?

Why is the surface of Africa so little known? — Is the surface of the Great Desert level or mountainous? — Of Soudan? — In what river-valley are the Plains of Egypt and Nubia? — Where is the low plain traversed by Dr. Livingstone?

RIVERS AND LAKES.

Into what bodies of water do the most important rivers flow? — Name the principal river flowing into the Mediterranean. — What is the only tributary of that river, below the union of the White and Blue Nile? — Through what countries does the Nile flow, below that union?

What great river flows into the Gulf of Guinea? — In what mountains does it rise, and through what countries does it flow? — What large lake in the region of the Zambesi? — What other lakes have been discovered in Africa? — Which lake is now thought to be the source of the Nile?

CLIMATE.

In what zone does the greater part of Africa lie? — What, then, is the general character of the climate and productions? — What portion of the peninsula is in the North Temperate Zone? — In the South Temperate? — Why is Africa the driest of the Grand Divisions? — What coasts are unhealthy for whites? — Which shore of the Mediterranean Sea is the warmest: the European, or the African? — Why?

NORTHERN AFRICA.

Name the sections into which Africa is divided. — What countries are included within Northern Africa? — Name the Barbary States. — Upon what ocean and sea do they border? — How are they bounded upon the south? — By what mountains are they crossed? — What cape on the northern coast?

Where is the city of Morocco? — Fez? — Algiers? — Tunis? — Tripoli? — Where is the "Land of Dates"? — How do the people of Barbary carry on their trade with the natives of Soudan? — What desert must they cross? — What articles are exported from Barbary? — How is the Great Desert bounded? — What mineral is abundant there? — Name the countries of the Nile? — What sea is on the coast? — What is the general surface of Abyssinia? — Is the heat likely to be as great as on the Plains of Nubia? — Why?

For what is Egypt celebrated? — By what river is it watered? — Where is Cairo? — The chief commercial city? — What town at the union of the White and Blue Nile? — Name some of the productions of Egypt?

To what race do most of the inhabitants of Northern Africa belong? — What religion do most of them profess? — What people are Christians? — What negro tribe inhabits the region south of Abyssinia?

To what country does Algeria belong? — Tunis and Tripoli? — Barca and Fezzan? — Which of the Barbary States is independent? — What is the ruler of Egypt called? — To whom are Nubia and Kordofan subject? — What is the political condition of Abyssinia?

EASTERN AFRICA.

What is the extent of Eastern Africa? — By what mountains is it bounded on the west? — Name the two peaks north-west of Mombas. — What cape on the north-east? — At the south-east extremity of Zanguebar? — Of Mozambique? — What river flows through Mozambique from the plain in the interior?

Under the control of what sovereign is Zanguebar? — To what country does Mozambique belong? — Where is Zanzibar Island? — Where is the country of the Somaulies?

SOUTHERN AFRICA.

What two capes at the south-western extremity of Southern Africa? — What mountains along the coast? — What part of this region is table-land? — Name the principal river of South Africa. — Into what does it flow? — Name the divisions of which South Africa is composed. — Which is the most important one? — To what government does it belong? — Where is the chief town? — Name the exports.

Where is the colony of Natal? — Where is Caffraria? — The Transvaal Republic? — The country of the Zoolus? — The Bechuannas? — The Namaquas? — What can you say of each of the countries mentioned in this paragraph?

WESTERN AFRICA.

State the extent of Western Africa from north to south. — What ocean washes the coast? — What countries bound it in the interior? — Name the two principal divisions. — Which of them is most extensive? — What gulf on the coast of Guinea? — What cape forms the most western land of Africa? — Name the two capes on the coast of Liberia. (See small map.)

What rivers flow from the plains of the interior, through Senegambia? — Through Guinea? — In what part of Western Africa are the native kingdoms of Ashantee and Dahomey? — The Portuguese towns of St. Paul de Loanda and St. Felipe de Benguela?

What European nations have possessions on the western coast of Africa? — Which of these is most important? — Where is Sierra

Leone? — The Republic of Liberia? — For what purpose were these settlements founded? — What is the chief town of Liberia? — Of Sierra Leone?

CENTRAL AFRICA.

What are the three divisions of Central Africa? — Which is the most northern of them? — What is the northern boundary of Soudan? — Describe the surface. — Is Soudan composed of more than one State? — What can you say of these States?

What river flows through Soudan, describing nearly half a circle? — Name its principal tributary. — What lake in Soudan? — Has it any outlet to the ocean? — Where is Timbuctoo? — Konka? — Sokoto?

What almost unknown country south of Soudan? — What lakes have been discovered there? — What division of Central Africa is south of Ethiopia? — By whom has this section been partially explored?

Name the chief productions of Eastern, Western, and Central Africa. — What articles are obtained from the natives, and exported from the towns on the coast? — What do you know of the slave-trade? — Name the animals found in these three sections. — What is the condition of the negro tribes living there?

AFRICAN ISLANDS.

Name the largest of the African Islands. — By what channel is Madagascar separated from the main-land? — What can you say of that island? — Where are Bourbon and Mauritius Islands? — To what countries do they belong? — Where are the Azores? — The Madeira and Canary Islands? — To what country do these three groups belong?

Where are the Cape Verd Islands? — To what country do they belong? — What are the exports of these four groups? — Where are St. Helena and Ascension Islands? — What can you say of the first-named?

MISCELLANEOUS.

Name the seas, straits, and oceans, on which you would sail, going from Suez to Alexandria. — Would a slave-trader be likely to secure a cargo of slaves at Monrovia, Free Town, or Cape Town? — Why?

In what part of Africa would you expect to hear many of the inhabitants speak the French language? — The English? — Why is the camel so useful an animal on the Great Desert? — What savage animals would you be likely to encounter in the forests of Central Africa? — In what country of Africa is the army partially composed of women?

Bound Africa. — Sketch a map of Africa, and locate the principal mountain ranges and rivers. — Spell Agulhas, Tacazze, Abyssinia, Tripoli, Beled-el-Jerid, Corrientes, Senegambia, Liberia, Verd, Madeira, Suez, Guardafui, Kilimandjaro, Guinea, Morocco, Tehad, Fezzan, Delgado, Mozambique, Zanzibar, Senegal, Coanza, Ashantee, Zanguebar.



"RUNNING A MUCK."

RUINS OF THE TEMPLE OF BORO BODO, IN JAVA.

GOLD MINING IN AUSTRALIA.

CHAPTER XIX.

OCEANICA.

I. OCEANICA consists entirely of islands; and comprises the three divisions of Malaysia, Australasia, and Polynesia.

MALAYSIA.

II. Malaysia includes a number of islands which lie to the south-east of Asia. This division is also known as the East Indian Archipelago.

The principal islands are Borneo, Sumatra, and Java (which, with some smaller ones, are embraced under the general name of the Sunda Isles), the Philippine, Spice Islands, and Celebes.

III. Surface.—Most of these islands are mountainous, and many of them contain numerous active volcanoes.

The Sunda Islands alone contain eighty volcanoes, and there are forty-three on the single island of Java. Earthquakes are frequent.

IV. Climate.—Malaysia lies within the Torrid Zone. The climate, therefore, is very hot.

The low lands near the coast, owing to the excessive moisture and great heat, are frequently very unhealthy. At an elevation of a few hundred feet, the climate becomes more healthful; and, by ascending still higher, we reach a delightful region of perpetual spring.

V. Productions.—No part of the world is richer in its vegetable productions than the islands of Malaysia. The minerals are also valuable.

Nearly all the spices which we use—such as cinnamon, cloves, nutmegs, and pepper—are raised on these islands. Here also grow the bread-fruit tree, sago,

the cocoa-nut palm, bananas, and yams. Gutta-percha is the sap of a tree which grows in the forests of Borneo, and of other islands in the Archipelago.

Rice is cultivated in most of the islands. Java exports great quantities of coffee and sugar. Borneo furnishes gold and diamonds; and Banca, tin. From the Philippine Islands we receive sugar, hemp, and tobacco.

VI. Animals.—Many of the animals of Malaysia are among the largest and fiercest upon the earth.

The rhinoceros and tiger are found in Sumatra and Java; the elephant in Sumatra; and the orang-outang in Sumatra and Borneo. Reptiles and insects are numerous in all the islands. In many of them, domestic animals—as hogs, cattle, goats, and sheep—are abundant. The birds are noted for the beauty of their plumage.

VII. Inhabitants.—The ruling people of the Archipelago are Malays. They are much engaged in maritime pursuits, and many of them are pirates.

The Malays consume a great deal of opium, and, under its influence, sometimes burst into fits of furious madness. While in this condition, with their daggers in their hands, they frequently rush at any one they chance to meet, screaming "Amok! amok!" (kill! kill!); hence the expression, "running a muck."

In the interior of the larger islands are tribes of negroes, among the most degraded creatures on the earth. Some of them are cannibals. There are also in the islands numerous Chinese, and in the commercial towns a few Europeans.

VIII. The Dutch, Spanish, English, and Portuguese, have possessions in Malaysia.

Java, the Spice Islands, part of Borneo, Sumatra, Celebes, and Timor, belong to the Dutch. The Philippine Islands are in the possession of the Spanish. The English occupy a part of Borneo, and all of the adjoining island of Labuan. A part of Timor belongs to the Portuguese.

IX. Towns.—Batavia and Manilla are the most important cities of Malaysia, and are the chief ports for the commerce of the islands.

Of what does Oceanica consist?—What three divisions does it comprise?—What does Malaysia include?—Which are the principal islands?—Describe the surface.—What is said of the climate?—What are the principal productions of Malaysia?

Name some of the animals.—Who are the ruling people?—What other races also inhabit these islands?—What European nations have possession here?—Which of the islands belong to the Dutch?—Spanish?—English?—Portuguese?—Name the principal cities.

AUSTRALASIA.

X. Australasia is the largest division of Oceanica. It comprises Australia, Papua, or New Guinea, Tasmania, New Zealand, New Caledonia, and many other islands of less importance.

Australia, Tasmania, New Zealand, Norfolk, and Chatham Islands, belong to Great Britain; and New Caledonia, to France. The other islands are still in possession of the native inhabitants. Australia, on account of its great size, is by many geographers regarded as a continent.

AUSTRALIA.

XI. **Surface.**—Near the coast, almost the entire island seems to be guarded by mountain-ranges. The central regions have never been explored, but are supposed to consist of a low, barren plain. The only river of much importance is the Murray.

The settled regions are the sections between the mountains and the coast, the many valleys between the different mountain-ranges, and the slopes towards the interior.

XII. **Climate.**—The northern part of the island is in the Torrid Zone, and its climate is strictly tropical. The temperature of the southern part is much like that of Southern Europe.

New South Wales is subject to excessive heat, caused by burning winds from the sterile plains of the interior. The thermometer sometimes rises as high as 130° in the shade. This section is also subject to long droughts, at irregular intervals, which are often followed by torrents of rain, flooding the whole country.

XIII. **Productions.**—The most important of these are gold and wool, both of which are largely exported.

Few food plants of any value have been found in Australia, although those of other countries, in similar climates, are grown here successfully. The native trees are nearly all evergreens.

The grass is of superior quality, and sustains numerous flocks of sheep, which the early English settlers introduced in great numbers.

Gold was first discovered in 1851. Its product since that time has been greater than that of all the rest of the world, except California.

XIV. **Animals.**—The largest native animal is the kangaroo. The most singular one is the platypus, which has the body of an otter, the bill of a duck, and lays eggs. Birds are numerous.

The domestic animals of Europe have been introduced into the island in great numbers.

XV. **Inhabitants.**—The natives of Australia, and of most of the islands in Australasia, are a degraded race of negroes, called *Papuans*. The greater part of the inhabitants are Europeans and their descendants.

XVI. **Political Divisions.**—The colonies are New South Wales, Victoria, South Australia, West Australia, and Queensland.

New South Wales and Victoria are by far the most important divisions. The gold-fields are in these colonies.

XVII. **Towns.**—Melbourne and Sydney are the most important cities, and the principal commercial marts of the country. Adelaide is the capital of South Australia, and Perth of West Australia.

XVIII. Tasmania, south of Australia, is a fine agricultural island, inhabited solely by European colonists. The islands of New Zealand are mountainous, and have a climate much resembling that of Great Britain. The native inhabitants belong to the Malay race.

Name the principal islands of Australasia.—Which of them belong to Great Britain?—Which belong to France?—Describe the surface of Australia.—Its climate.—What are the most important productions?—Name some of the animals.—To what race do the native inhabitants belong?—What are the political divisions of Australia?—Which are the most important cities?—What is said of Tasmania?—Describe New Zealand.

XIX. Little is known of Papua, and the other islands of Australasia. There are no white settlements in any of them, except New Caledonia.

They are for the most part mountainous, and undoubtedly contain many valuable productions.

POLYNESIA.

XX. Polynesia includes the great number of islands which are scattered throughout the wide expanse of the Pacific Ocean.

Though very numerous, and some of them of considerable size, these islands, as compared with the great ocean, are as mere specks upon its surface.

XXI. The islands of Polynesia are mountainous, or low.



VIEW OF TAHITI.

The mountainous islands are principally of volcanic formation. The low islands are the work of the coral insect. They are very level, and have scarcely any elevation above the surface of the ocean.

XXII. The most important groups are the Sandwich, Ladrone, Caroline, Society, Marquesas, and Friendly Islands. Nearly all of these are mountainous.

The Ladrone and Caroline Islands belong to Spain. The Marquesas group, and Tahiti, (one of the Society Islands,) belong to France.

XXIII. **Climate and Productions.**—Nearly the whole of Polynesia is in the Torrid Zone. Many tropical productions have been introduced, and grow in great luxuriance.

The climate is much modified by the influence of the sea, and is, in general, like that of perpetual spring. The bread-fruit, cocoa-nut, and plantain-trees, with yams, are the most important native productions.

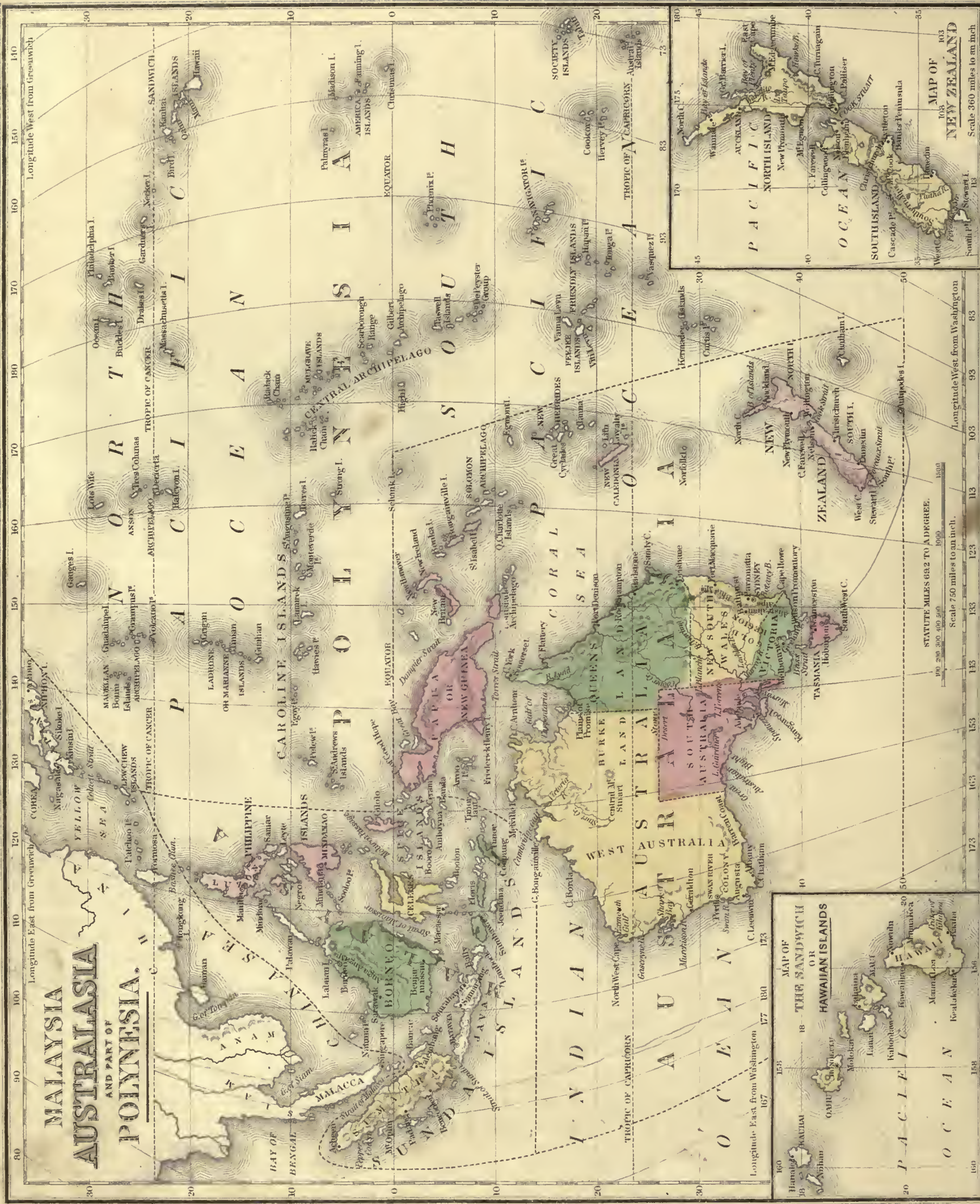
XXIV. **Animals.**—When first discovered, these islands contained neither insects nor reptiles, and no animal larger than a hog. Many of the domestic animals of Europe and America have, however, been taken to Polynesia by vessels from those countries.

XXV. **Inhabitants.**—Most of the natives belong to the Malay race. In some of the islands they are very savage; in others, they are intelligent and gentle. Many of them have been converted to Christianity, under the influence of missionaries who have labored among them.

XXVI. **Towns.**—Honolulu, on Oahu, one of the Sandwich Islands, is the only important town in Polynesia.

The native inhabitants of the islands of Oceanica are rapidly passing away before the white man, and, like the Indians of North America, will doubtless at no distant day become extinct.

What does Polynesia include?—Of what two kinds are the islands?—Of what formation are the mountainous islands?—The low islands?—Which are the most important groups?—In what zone is nearly the whole of Polynesia?—Name some of the productions of these islands.—What is said of the animals?—To what race do the inhabitants belong?—What is the principal town of Polynesia?



MALAYSIA AUSTRALASIA AND PART OF POLYNESIA.

Longitude West from Greenwich

Longitude East from Greenwich

Longitude West from Washington

Longitude East from Washington

STATUTE MILES 692 TO A DEGREE.
Scale 750 miles to an inch.

Scale 360 miles to an inch



MAP OF
NEW ZEALAND

Scale 100 miles to an inch

MAP OF
THE SANDWICH
OR
HAWAIIAN ISLANDS

Scale 100 miles to an inch

QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF OCEANICA.

STATISTICAL.

Name the three divisions of Oceanica. — Which of them has the greatest extent of land? — Which has the least? — Of which division is the population greatest? — The least? — Name the largest island of Australasia. — How does this island compare in size with the United States? — Europe?

Which is the largest island of Malaysia? — Which has the greatest population: Malaysia, or the United States? — Which of the United States is of the same extent as Java?

MALAYSIA.

Name the principal islands of Malaysia. — Near what continental division are they situated? — What group extends farthest north? East? — What island is farthest west? — Which are the largest of the Sunda Isles? — Of the Philippine Islands? — Of the Spice Islands? — What strait separates Sumatra from Malacca? — Java from Sumatra? — Borneo from Celebes? — What passage between the Philippine Islands, and Asia? — What sea between Borneo and the Philippine Islands, and Asia? — What ocean washes the eastern shores of the Philippine Islands? — The southern and south-western coasts of the Sunda Isles?

Are the islands of Malaysia generally mountainous or level? — Do they contain many volcanoes? — How many volcanoes are there in the Sunda Islands? — In Java?

In what zone is Malaysia? — What, then, is the climate? — What parts of these islands are frequently very unhealthy? — What changes would be observed in ascending from the low to the high lands?

What are some of the productions of Malaysia? — Name some of the spices we obtain from there. — What are some of the fruits of Malaysia?

What is Gutta-Percha? — Where is it obtained? — Can any scholar tell the use of Gutta-Percha? — What do we obtain from Java? — From the Philippine Islands? — What precious metal and jewels from Borneo? — What valuable mineral from Banca?

Who are the ruling inhabitants of Malaysia? — In what are they chiefly engaged? — Who inhabit the interior of many of the islands? Where would you be likely to find some Europeans?

What Asiatic people are numerous in these islands? — Describe the effect of the excessive use of opium among the Malays. — Can any scholar tell from what opium is obtained?

On what island is Manilla? — To what country does it belong? — On what island is Batavia? — To what country does it belong? — Which is the most populous city: Manilla, or Batavia? — On what island is Sarawak? — Macassar? — Palembang?

What European countries have possessions in Malaysia? — What islands belong to the Dutch? — The Spanish? — The English? — The Portuguese? — Of which of these countries should you think the possessions most valuable?

AUSTRALASIA.

Name the principal islands of this division. — Which of them belong to Great Britain? — Which one to France? — In whose possession are the others? — Why is Australia sometimes called a continent?

AUSTRALIA.

Name the principal island of Australasia. — What ocean bounds it upon the east? — Upon the south and west? — What sea on the north-east? — What gulf indents its northern coast? — Its southern coast?

What strait between Australia and Papua? — Australia and Tasmania? — Which is the most northern cape? — What cape on the south-east? — On the south-west? — Where is North-west Cape?

Along what coast extend the Australian Alps? — What is supposed to be the character of the surface of the central regions of the island? — Name the largest river. — What two rivers unite to form the Murray?

In what zone is the northern part of Australia? — What, then, is the climate of this section? — In what zone is the southern part of Australia? — What is the climate of this section? — What can you say of the peculiarities in the climate of New South Wales?

In what hemisphere is Australia? — When it is summer in Southern Europe, what is the season in Southern Australia? — When it is winter in New York, what is the season at Sydney?

What are the most important productions? — In what part of the island is the Gold Region? — In what year was gold first discovered there? — Was this before or after the discovery of gold in California? — Great numbers of emigrants have gone to Australia within the past few years: what has probably attracted them thither — the discovery of gold, or the agricultural resources of the country?

Do most of the trees, in this section of country in which you reside, shed their leaves in winter? — What difference, then, would you observe between them and those of Australia? — What is the largest native animal? — What other singular animal is found there?

Name the divisions of Australia. — In what part is Queensland? — New South Wales? — Victoria? — South Australia? — West Australia? — Which of these divisions are the most important? — Why are they so?

Name the principal cities. — Of what division is Melbourne the capital? — Where is it situated? — On which coast of the island is Sydney? — Of what division is Sydney the capital? — Adelaide? — Perth?

What large island north of Australia? — What groups north-east? What island belonging to the French is east of Australia? — What group north-east of New Caledonia? — Where is Norfolk Island? — What strait separates Papua from the islands on the north-east?

What island south of Victoria in Australia? — By what strait is it separated from Australia? — What important group of islands south-

east of Australia? — Name the three islands of this group. — Which is the most northern? — The most southern? — Where are the Feejee Islands?

To what race do the native tribes of New Zealand belong? — Of Australia, and most of the islands of Australasia? — Who inhabit Tasmania? — Of what race are the greater part of the inhabitants of Australia?

POLYNESIA.

In the midst of what ocean are the islands of Polynesia? — Of what two kinds are they? — Of what formation are the mountainous islands? — The low islands? — Which are the most important groups? — Are they generally mountainous or low? — Which of them belong to Spain? — Which to France?

Which is the largest of the Sandwich Islands? — On which of them is the town of Honolulu? — In what direction from Hawaii is Tahiti? — To what power does Tahiti belong?

In what zone is most of Polynesia? — What, then, is the climate? Is it at all modified by the influence of the ocean? — Would ice be likely to form on any of the islands of Polynesia?

Name some of the fruits and vegetables of Polynesia. — Are the Bouin Islands north or south of the Equator? — The Caroline Islands? — The Feejee Islands? — The Society Islands? — What can you say of the animals of Polynesia?

To what race do most of the natives of Polynesia belong? — What can you say with reference to the labors of missionaries among them? — Are the native inhabitants increasing or diminishing in number?

MISCELLANEOUS.

Freight a vessel from Manilla for the United States: what articles would you ship? — On what water must it float, to sail in a south-west direction? — Through what straits, to reach the Bay of Bengal? — Between what peninsula and island? — Through what strait would a vessel pass from the Indian Ocean, with a cargo for Batavia?

With what would you freight a vessel at Melbourne for London? Through what strait and on what ocean would a vessel sail, to go from Melbourne to Sydney? — On what ocean, and in what direction, from Hobarton to Auckland? — From the Sandwich Islands to Canton?

From what island of Oceanica do we obtain gold? — Diamonds? Tin? — Wool? — Sugar, hemp, and tobacco? — Coffee? — Pepper, cloves, and other spices? — Gutta-Percha? — On what islands should we find the rhinoceros and tiger? — The elephant? — The orang-outang? The kangaroo? — Where should we find the bread-fruit, cocconut, and plantain trees?

Sketch a map of Australia, and locate the principal mountains, rivers, and towns. — Spell Australasia, Malaysia, Papua, Polynesia, Ladrone, Sumatra, Borneo, Philippine, Sumbawa, Sarawak, Melbourne, Adelaide, Hawaii, Honolulu, Feejee, Manilla, Oahu, Sooloo, Celebes, Kangaroo, Sydney, Papua, Tasmania, Malacca.

COMMERCE OF THE WORLD.

CHAPTER XX.

COMMERCE OF THE WORLD.

I. COMMERCE has already been treated of, on pages 17 and 50. Most of the commerce between the principal commercial countries in the world, is carried on by vessels which cross the ocean.

Inland communication, as described in the article on the "Commerce of the United States," is only conducted between countries in an advanced state of civilization — as those of Europe. Canals, however, are numerous in China.

Among the savage and barbarous tribes of Asia and Africa, much of the inland traffic is carried on by caravans of camels. Mules are employed for the same purpose in mountainous countries — as in crossing the Andes.

II. In selecting the routes for ocean commerce, it is, of course, desirable to make as direct a passage as possible from one port to another. But, in some voyages, it is necessary to turn aside many hundred miles, in order to find favorable winds and currents.

III. Winds. — In the Torrid Zone the winds have a general direction towards the west; in the Temperate Zones, towards the east.

The winds of the Temperate Zones are much more variable than those of the Torrid. The latter are constant, and, except in the Indian Ocean, do not alter their direction throughout the year. From their value to commerce they are called "Trade Winds." In the Indian Ocean the wind blows one-half the year from the north-east, and the other half from the south-west.

IV. Currents. — It has been found that in certain parts of the ocean the water moves constantly in one direction throughout the year. These moving bodies of water are called currents, and are like great rivers in the midst of the sea.

These currents vary in velocity from 50 to 140 miles per day; it is apparent, therefore, that a knowledge of them is of the greatest importance in navigation.

[*Note.* — For a full description of the winds and currents, and an explanation of their causes, see WARREN'S PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY.]

DESCRIPTION OF ROUTES.

From the Atlantic Ports of the United States to Europe. — The voyage across the Atlantic is favored by the westerly winds, and by the Gulf Stream (an ocean current which flows towards Europe). This passage, therefore, is much shorter than the return voyage.

From Europe, and the Atlantic Ports of the United States, to Asia and Australia. — Vessels cross the Torrid Zone, then taking the westerly winds of the South Temperate Zone, they pass around the Cape of Good Hope. The return route is commonly made by Cape Horn.

From San Francisco to China and Japan. — Vessels enter the Torrid Zone, to take advantage of the Trade Winds; returning, they keep in the Temperate Zone, to secure the westerly winds of that region.

The Overland Route from England to India. — This is the great mail-route to India, and is traversed partly on land and partly on the water. The route may be traced on the map.

Routes of Steamers. — The routes of steamers across the ocean are usually in a direct course. In addition to these, there are numerous routes along the coast, connecting important ports. They may be traced upon the map.

QUESTIONS.

How is most of the commerce between the principal commercial countries in the world carried on? — In what countries would you expect to find the inland communication conducted by railroads and canals? — In what half-civilized country are canals numerous?

— How is much of the traffic between the savage and barbarous countries of Asia and Africa conducted? — In what sections is the mule useful for the same purpose?

Why do navigators often turn aside from a direct course when voyaging across the ocean from one port to another? — What is the general direction of the winds of the Torrid Zone? — Of the Temperate Zones? — In which zones are the winds most variable? — Why are the winds of the Torrid Zone called the Trade Winds? — In what direction does the wind blow one-half of the year in the Indian Ocean? — In what direction the other half?

What are the currents of the ocean? — What velocity have these currents? — Why is it important that navigators should have a knowledge of these currents?

In what zone would you sail to cross the Pacific Ocean from west to east? — In what zone, from east to west? — In what parts of the world is the inland trade conducted by caravans of camels? — Can you assign any reason why mules are so useful in carrying on the traffic of mountainous countries? — What commercial advantages have steamships over sailing-vessels?

QUESTIONS ON THE MAP.

What ocean must a vessel cross, to go from New York to Liverpool? — Which way will a vessel be likely to make the quickest passage: from New York to Liverpool, or in the opposite direction? — What wind and current will impede the passage of a vessel from England to America? — The Gulf Stream extends much farther to the north in the summer and autumn than in the spring: can you give any reason, from this fact, why the spring route to the United States is further south than in the autumn?

In the Atlantic Ocean, the Eastern or Trade Winds extend several degrees north of the Tropic of Cancer: do you perceive any reason, from this fact, for the location of the southern route from Europe to America? — What articles may be shipped from Charleston or New Orleans to Liverpool or London? — What articles may be returned to the United States?

Describe the course of a vessel from England to India? — Why does it approach so near the coast of South America? — What wind favors its passage thence around the Cape of Good Hope? — It has been stated that, in the Indian Ocean, during one half of the year, the wind blows in a south-west direction, and the other half in a north-east course: which of these winds would facilitate the passage of a vessel to Calcutta? — Which would favor the return voyage?

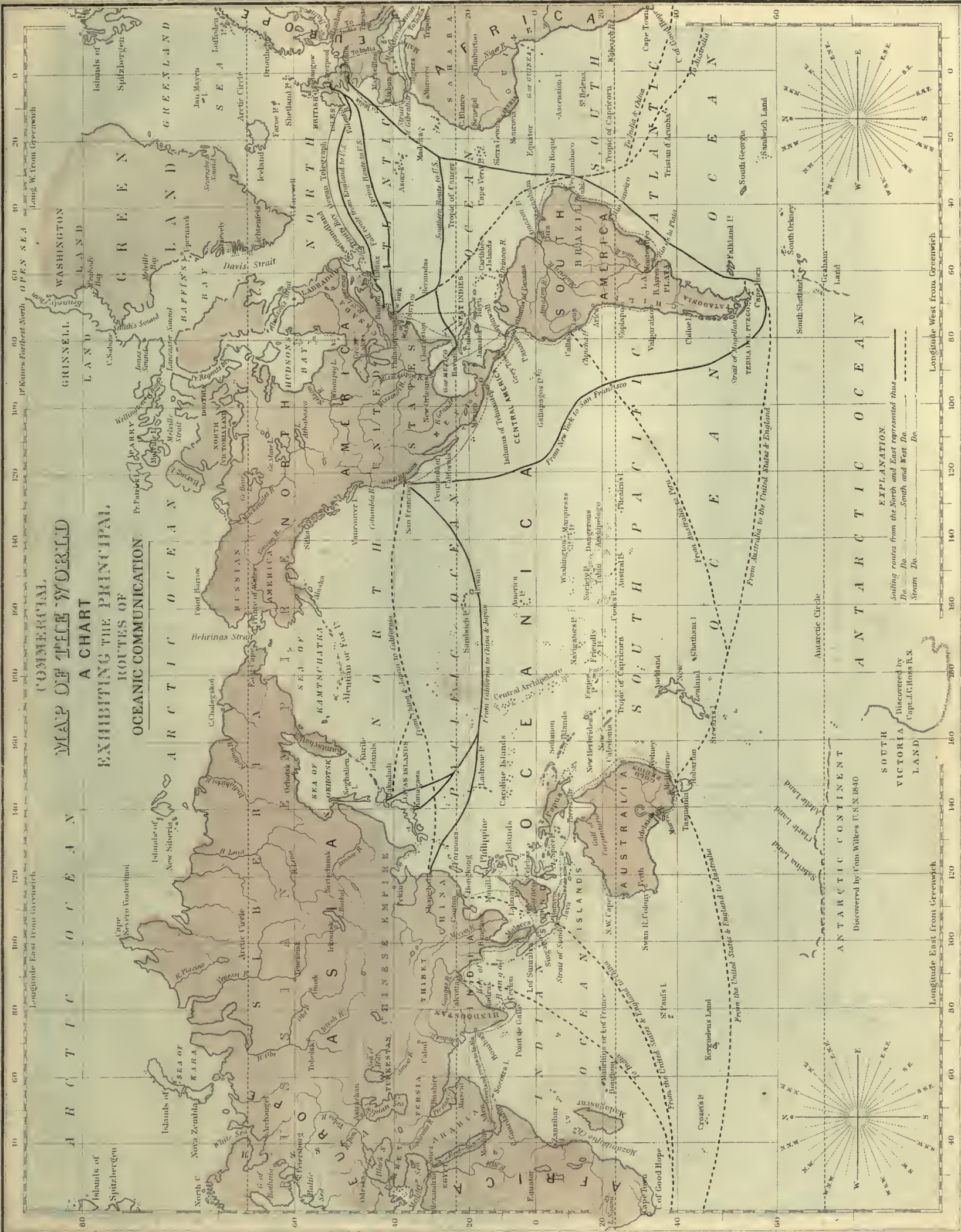
The best route from England, or from the Atlantic ports of the United States, to Australia, is by the Cape of Good Hope: why? — On what oceans will a vessel sail in making this voyage? — The passage from Melbourne to Liverpool is sometimes made by the Cape of Good Hope, and sometimes by Cape Horn: which do you think the best route? — Why? — On what ocean will a vessel sail from Melbourne to Callao?

Describe the course of a vessel from the Atlantic ports of the United States to San Francisco. — Across what ocean must a vessel sail, from San Francisco to the ports of Japan? — Will the passage be made north or south of the Tropic of Cancer? — Why? — In what zone will the return voyage be made? — Why?

The traveller, by the overland journey from England to India, has the choice of three routes to Alexandria: he may cross France to Marseilles, or Germany to Trieste, and proceed thence by water, or he may go all the way by water: if the latter route be chosen, name the ocean, strait, and sea on which the steamer would sail. — What land must you cross from Alexandria to Suez? — On what sea would you sail thence to Aden? — On what ocean to Bombay? — On what ocean and bay from Bombay to Madras and Calcutta?

Along the coast of what Grand Division will a steamer sail from the mouth of the Amazon River to that of the La Plata? — On what ocean? — Through what strait and on what two oceans will a steamer sail from Melbourne to Batavia? — Between what two large islands lies one of the routes of steamships from New York to Aspinwall? — On what ocean and along what coast does a vessel sail from Panama to San Francisco?

**MAP OF THE WORLD
A CHART
EXHIBITING THE PRINCIPAL
ROUTES OF COMMUNICATION
OCEANIC COMMUNICATION**



EXPLANATION
Sailing routes from the North and East represented thus ———
Do. Do. South and West Do. - - - - -
Steam Do. - - - - -

ANTARCTIC CONTINENT
Discovered by Com. Wilkes U.S.N. 1840

SOUTH VICTORIA LAND
Discovered by Capt. J.C. Ross R.N.

QUESTIONS FOR GENERAL REVIEW.

What seas, gulfs, and bays lie east and south of Asia?—What are the principal exports of France?—Of Russia?—What is the difference in time between Paris and New York?—What is the latitude of Cape Horn?—Of the Cape of Good Hope?—Name the four largest rivers of Europe, and describe the Danube.—What does the Dominion of Canada comprise?—Why are great cities usually situated upon rivers?

Name the six largest cities in the United States.—In Europe.—Where are the principal coal, iron, and gold mines in Europe?—How would you go by water from Philadelphia to Vienna?—What is a desert?—Name some of the most celebrated.—Give the latitude and longitude of the five most populous cities in the world.—Trace the different routes used by travellers in going from England to India.

Name the principal rivers that flow into the Pacific Ocean.—Name in order the countries bordering on the Mediterranean Sea.—Name the oceans in the order of their size.—Name the islands in the Indian Ocean.—In what direction will shadows be cast at noon, on the 23d of September, at Quito?—At Chicago?—At Callao?—At St. Helena?—At Java?—At Montevideo?—Name several cities on the globe that lie on, or near, the parallel of New Orleans.

What does the British Empire comprise?—Which has the longer day on the 21st of June, Boston or London?—Why?—Name the principal islands in the Mediterranean Sea.—Mention some of the principal deltas on the globe.—Define a Great Circle.—Where is the Dead Sea?—Where is the Peak of Teneriffe?—For what are the following places noted? Lyons; Canton; Genoa; Malaga; Mobile; Jerusalem.

Name the three southern peninsulas of Europe.—Of Asia.—Does the North Pole incline towards the sun, or from it, on the 21st of June?—What is government?—What meridian divides the hemispheres?—Name the highest mountain on the globe; the largest fresh-water lake; the longest river.—When does the rainy season occur in tropical countries north of the equator?—Through what waters, and over what countries and islands, does the Equator pass?

How does a lofty mountain in the Torrid Zone illustrate the differences of climate and vegetation?—To what race do the Moors belong?—Do you find large manufacturing establishments in thickly-settled countries, or in those thinly settled?—Why?—What strait separates North America from Asia?—Vera Cruz and the city of Mexico have nearly the same latitude: which has the milder climate?—Why?

Why are large commercial cities generally found on the sea-coast?—What is the Gulf Stream?—Name the five most powerful states of Europe.—What are the principal branches of the Mediterranean Sea?—Describe the overland route from London to Bombay.—Name four branches of the Amazon River.—Name six remarkable volcanoes, and locate them.—What names are given to the great mountain-system extending across the Eastern Hemisphere from Spain to the China Sea?—Name three of the Sunda Islands.

What is the most important town in South Africa?—What is the source of the Nile?—What races inhabit Madagascar?—What is the largest river of Western Africa?—Of Southern Africa?—What is the latitude of the Azores?—Of the Sandwich Islands?—When it is summer at Chicago, what is the season at Valparaiso?—Where do the Mongolians chiefly live?—What is a degree?—From what countries do the paper-makers of the United States import the most of their rags?

What country produces the best tea?—Tobacco?—Coffee?—Where is Aleppo?—Surat?—Astrakhan?—Ghent?—Where are the Atlas Mountains?—Where is Roumania?—What are the two chief commercial towns of Australia?—What peninsula in North America extends towards the north?—What one in Europe?—Name the rivers that drain Siberia.—What is the capital of British India?—In what countries does Mohammedanism prevail?

What country is the most extensively engaged in manufacturing?—What two mountain-chains separate Asia from Europe?—How does a chart differ from a map?—What is the most important town on the Philippine Islands?—Is the Sahara a table-land, or a plain?—Name the large rivers that drain China.—Farther India.—Hindoostan.—Where is Lapland?—What is the latitude of Cape Farewell?—Of St. Petersburg?

To what state of society do the Chinese belong?—What waters does the Isthmus of Suez separate?—What lands does it connect?—Which grand division of land stretches farthest towards the North Pole?—Where is the Kwichpak River?—Which ocean contains the more land? the Arctic, or the Antarctic?—Name the Greater Antilles.—What three mountain-systems in South America?—What connects the Persian Gulf with the Arabian Sea?

Into what does the Euphrates flow?—Mention two lakes in South America.—Describe the river Nile.—Name the principal rivers flowing into the Black Sea.—Into the Baltic Sea.—Where are the Mountains of the Moon?—The Snow Mountains?—What is the latitude of the island of St. Helena?—What city dictates to the civilized world in matters of dress and fashion?—Define diameter.—Locate Singapore; Smyrna; Para; Leipsic; Madras; Odessa.

Where is the island of Malta?—To what government does it belong?—What country on the south side of the Caucasus Mountains?—What is its capital?—What do you mean by the Ottoman Empire?—From what islands are spices chiefly imported?—Where is Batavia?—What is the capital of Canada?—In what portions of Europe is wheat abundantly produced?—The olive and mulberry tree?—In what country is peat the chief article of fuel?

What grand division does the Arctic Circle cross?—The Tropic of Cancer?—The Tropic of Capricorn?—Name all the principal rivers on the western coast of Europe, between the Strait of Gibraltar and the Strait of Dover.—Between the Strait of Dover and Denmark.—What strait connects the Red Sea with the Arabian Sea?—What two straits connect the Indian Ocean with the China Sea?—Which grand division has the most extensive plateaus?

On what waters will a vessel sail in going from New York, round the Cape of Good Hope, to Bombay,—thence to Canton,—thence to San Francisco,—and thence, by way of Cape Horn, to New York again?—At what towns on the borders of the Chinese Empire and Siberia do the Russians and Chinese carry on an extensive trade?—What town in Russia is noted for its great fairs?—Mention the names of some distinguished travellers who have recently made discoveries in Africa.

Which zone contains the most highly civilized nations?—What is the effect of the climate of the Torrid Zone on its inhabitants?—Which of the West Indies belong to Spain?—Name two of them which belong to France.—Name one belonging to England.—Which division of South America has no towns?—How many empires are there on the Western Continent?—What is the oldest-settled town in New England?—In the United States?

The course of the Mississippi River is from north to south; the course of the Amazon is from west to east: which river, do you think, is the most favorable to trade and commerce?—Why?—Why are there no large rivers on the western coast of South America?—Which is the largest empire in the world?—Which one has the largest number of subjects?—Name the rivers flowing into the Caspian Sea.—Into the Sea of Aral.—Where are the Cyclades?

What is the most southern point of Asia?—Of Europe?—Where is Virginia City?—Carson City?—Golden City?—In what countries is the lion found?—What is the only animal that can live in all parts of the globe?—What three rivers unite to form the Missouri?—What is the holy city of the Jews?—Of the Mohammedans?—On the 21st day of March, is the sun north or south of the equator?—Give the latitude and longitude of Wheeling.—Of Lima.—Of Vienna.

TREATISE ON MAP-DRAWING.

BY E. A. APGAR.

No pupil in geography can properly be said to have become thoroughly acquainted with the surface of the earth until he has a distinct and definite picture of the whole, as represented by maps, indelibly impressed upon his mind. The most ready and accurate method of thus transferring to the mind that which is upon the printed page is by means of rightly-conducted exercises in map-drawing. And the *only* true and reliable test that such an acquaintance with the surface of the earth has been acquired by the pupil, is his ability to reproduce upon slate, paper, or blackboard, any portion of that surface, with only his mental picture as a guide.

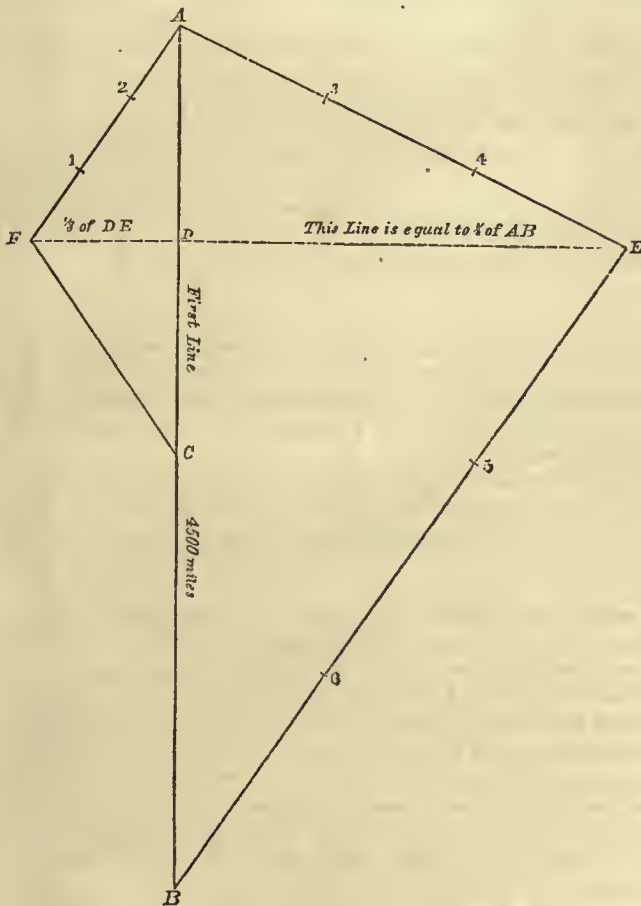
In map-drawing, the teacher is generally content if his pupils are able to copy accurately. To do this, alone, is no test of any clear geographical knowledge. A pupil can be said to have a distinct mental picture only of that which he can draw from *memory*.

The Disadvantages of using Parallels and Meridians in Drawing Maps.—Parallels and meridians should *never* be used by a pupil in geography as helps for map-drawing. They do not aid the student to draw from memory; they necessitate the use of a copy even more than a blank page does; they lead the attention to the comparatively unimportant minutiae of the contour of the continent, while

the general shape and prominent characteristic projections and indentations are entirely overlooked. The relation between the coast-line of a continent and a system of these lines involves too many particulars, and cannot be remembered; and even if this relationship *should* be remembered, the lines themselves cannot be constructed by the pupil without the use of instruments, and at a great loss of time.

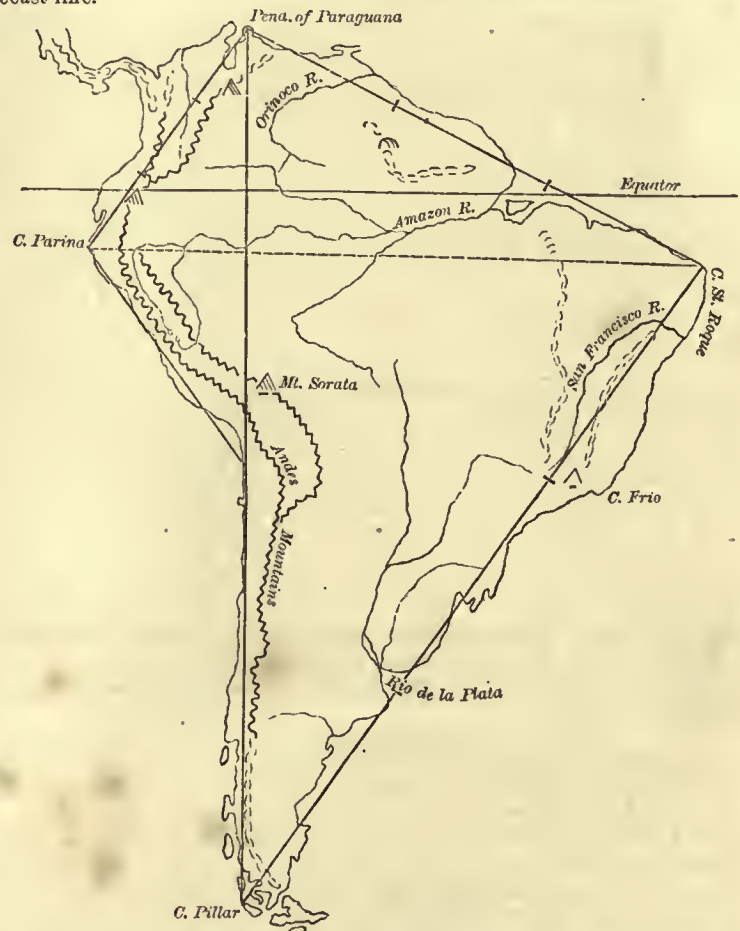
The Advantages of using Triangulations in Drawing Maps.—The easiest and, indeed, the only effectual way to draw from memory the map of a country, is to observe, in the first place, what convenient geometrical figure will give, by its lines and angles, the accurate position of the greatest number of leading points in the country. This geometrical figure, which can be easily remembered, and readily drawn by the eye, then serves as a basis on which to construct accurately from memory the general outlines of the proposed map. By the use of such a figure the pupil is led at once to the consideration of the most general laws of the form, after which the details will follow without difficulty.

To illustrate this method, an outline map of South America is here given, with directions for constructing the preliminary triangulation and drawing the coast-line.



1. *The Triangulation.*—First draw the vertical line AB, of any convenient length; bisect it at C; bisect the upper half at D. From D draw the horizontal line DE equal to one-half of AB, and trisect it. Draw DF equal to one-third of DE. Connect the points as in the figure, and trisect the lines FA, AE, and EB.

The figure thus drawn gives what may be called the geometrical expression of the continent, and serves as a basis for constructing the map. The angles at A, E, B, and F determine the accurate position of four of the most important points of the continent, and the sides give us the general direction of the coast-line, while the trisecting points serve as guide-posts for making certain projections or indentations. The simplicity of the construction of this figure consists in the fact that there are no angles to be measured, and that all distances are determined by reference to the first line, or measuring unit AB. This line may serve as a scale of miles for determining all distances upon the continent.



2. *The Coast-Line.*—The coast-line of South America is quite simple, and closely follows the sides of the triangulation. The point A, on the figure, coincides with the peninsula of Paraguana; E, with Cape St. Roque; B, with Cape Pillar; and F, with Cape Parina. The trisecting points, 2, 4, 5, and 6, determine respectively the positions of the Isthmus of Panama, the mouth of the Amazon, Cape Frio, and the mouth of the La Plata.

In drawing either of the continents, the pupil should first be taught to construct the triangulation accurately, upon which he afterwards may draw the coast-line, first through the use of a copy, and then from memory. It is all-important that the pupil should be able to draw the contour of a continent readily and accurately before he attempts to represent any of the inland features; for upon an imperfect drawing of the outline the details must necessarily be imperfect.

DIRECTIONS FOR DRAWING THE STATES.

For drawing the States no additional geometrical figures are necessary. All that is required is that, in each State, some one line shall be taken which will best serve as a measuring unit for determining the position of the greatest number of prominent points in the complete boundary. To illustrate this, a simple outline drawing of the four Middle States is here given. The measuring



unit in each State is the line extending from 1 to 2, and the order for drawing the different boundary lines must follow the order of the numbers.

The following directions will give the relative measurements of the above States.

NEW YORK.

From 1 to 2, first line, 100 miles long.

From 2 to 3 = first line.

From 3 to 4 = first line.

From 3 to 5 = first line.

From 5 to 6 = twice first line (+)

From 6 to 7 = one-half of first line.

From 7 to 8 = one-half of first line.

From 1 to 9 = first line, nearly.

The distance from the southern boundary of the State to the southern shore of Lake Ontario is equal to first line.

The eastern shore of the lake is midway between the Niagara River and the eastern boundary of the State.

The southern straight boundary is in a direct line with the southern boundary of Massachusetts. The northern boundary of Massachusetts is midway between 2 and 3.

NEW JERSEY.

From 1 to 2, first line, 50 miles long.

From 1 to 3 = three times first line.

The great bend of the river at 4 is midway between 1 and 3

Points 1, 4, and 3 are connected by the Delaware River, in the shape of a W turned thus, \approx

The distance of the upper bend of the river from the vertical line is equal to one-half of first line.

The distance of the lower bend from the vertical line is equal to three-fourths of first line.

Draw the horizontal line from 4 to 5, and, by trisecting the distance from 2 to 5, the position of the bay in which Staten Island is situated is determined.

Points 5 and 3 are connected by the coast-line slightly curved.

PENNSYLVANIA.

From 1 to 2, first line, 225 miles long.

From 1 to 3 = one-half of the one-third of first line.

From 1 to 4 = one-half of the distance from 1 to 3.

From 3 to 5 = two-thirds of first line.

From 5 to 6 = northern boundary.

Points 2, 7, and 6 are connected by the Delaware River, in the shape of a W turned thus, \approx .

DELAWARE.

From 1 to 2, first line, 100 miles long.

From 2 to 3 = one-half of first line, nearly.

When, by means of these simple directions, the outline of a State has been accurately drawn, the principal difficulty to be encountered has been overcome, and the art of representing the remaining features can be easily acquired.

It is very important that, in each State, the proper line should be chosen for the measuring unit. To serve this purpose, it must be a common measure or a common multiple of the other lines. Thus, in drawing the State of New York, some might be led to select the northern boundary as the measuring unit; but it will readily be seen how few distances this will give us as compared with those obtained by taking the length of Lake Champlain.

In conducting exercises in map-drawing, the class should be practised, first, in drawing upon the blackboard, under the immediate direction of the teacher; second, in drawing upon slates, their work to be submitted to the teacher; and third, in executing, at home, maps upon paper, to be presented to the criticism of both the teacher and the class.

Either the teacher or one of the most skilful pupils should execute a well-finished and accurate map upon the blackboard. From this drawing—which is much to be preferred to any printed outline map—the class may recite their lesson, and upon it each of the new features, as they are learned from day to day, may be represented.

It will be well to accompany every lesson in map-drawing with more or less practice in rapid sketching. Let one rapidly illustrate on the board the lesson which has just been recited, and, to excite emulation for quick work, let this exercise be timed. Pupils will, by practice, soon be able to draw a triangulation in half a minute, a continent in from two to five minutes, a State in from half a minute to two minutes, and a physical map in from eight to twelve minutes. Concert recitation should frequently accompany rapid sketching.

It will also be found a valuable exercise to require the pupil, while he is drawing a map, to briefly describe, in a lively manner, the features he is representing upon the board; his verbal explanations all the while keeping pace with his illustrations by the chalk.

All directions and exercises in map-drawing should be such as to prepare the pupil to draw rapidly, accurately, and without a copy.

As the object of studying maps is to obtain a knowledge of the divisions of the Earth's surface which they represent, and as this knowledge is most readily acquired by means of intelligent instructions in map-drawing, as soon as the pupil commences the study of maps he should begin to learn to draw them.

A further development of the method here explained will be found in Warren's Physical and Outline Charts, and in Appgars' Geographical Drawing-Book. In the latter work an attempt is made to reduce map-drawing to a science, while by the use of an original system of coloring and symbolic language the physical features, the populations of cities, and the heights of mountain-ranges and peaks are so represented to the eye as to leave the facts impressed upon the mind.

PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

ay represents the sound of a in fate; ah, that of a in far; aw, a in fall; ä, a in fat; ë, e in met; ëë, i in sit; ëh, e in berth; i, i in pine; i, i in pin; ö, öw, o in no; ö, o in not; öö, oo in good; öw, ou in our; ü, u in pure; ü, u in tun; gh, g in get; ñ, ni in onion; x, n in won't; th, th in then; th, th in this; u, prolonged sound of u in thus; ü, almost like e in her; ü, French u and German ü, a sound intermediate between those of ee and oo; no, ng sounded through the nose.

A.

Aalborg, ol'borg.
Aar, ar.
Abaco, ah'bab-ko.
Abeokuta, ahb-oo-ko'oh.
Aberdeen, ab-er-deen'.
Aberystwith, ab-er-ist'with.
Abiquiu, ah-be-ke-oo'.
Abomey, ab-o-may'.
Abrojos, ab-bray-o'hoce.
Abrohos, ah-brole'yoce.
Abydos, ah-bi'dos.
Abyssinia, ab-is-sin'e-ah. ("Mixed people:" so named by the Arabs, as showing that the people were not of pure Arab blood.)
Acapulco, ah-kah-pool'ko.
Acaray, ah-kah-rí'.
Ac'comack.
Acheen, at-cheen'.
Achill, ak'il.
Aconcagua, ah-kon-kah'gwah.
Adeu, ah'den, or ay'den.
Adije, ad'e-je.
Adirondack, ad-e-ron'dak.
Adour, ah-door'.
Adrianople, ad-re-an-o'pl. ("City of Adrian.")
Adriatic, ad-re-at'ik. (Named from "Adria," formerly an important city on the Gulf of Venice, now Adriatic.)
Afghanistan, ahf-gahn-is-tahn'. ("Afghan land.")
Africa, af're-kah.
Agra, ah'grah.
Agulhas, ah-gool'yahs. (Cape Agulhas, "Cape Needles.")
Air, ah-er'.
Aisae, ain.
Aix-la-Chapelle, aiks-lah-shah-pel'.
Ajaccio, ah-yah'chu.
Ajan, ah-zhahn'.
Akaba, ah'kab-bah.
Akerman, ah'ker-mahn.
Alabama, ä-l-ä-hal'mah. ("Here we rest:" said to have been so named by a peaceful tribe of Indians driven thither.)
Alamo, ä'l-ä-mo. (A "poplar-tree.")
Aland, ah'lahnd.
Alapaha, ah-lap'ä-haw.
Alaska, ah-lahs'kah.
Albany, aw'l'bä-ne.
Albemarle, ä-l-be-mar'l'.
Albuquerque, ah-l-boo-kër'kay.
Alcoy, ah-l-ko'e.
Alderney, awl'der-ne.
Alençon, ah-len'sün.
Aleutian, ah-loo'shan. (From *aleut*, a "bold rock.")
Alexandrowsk, ah-lex-ahn-drowsk'.
Algeria, ä-l-je're-ah.
Algiers, ahl-jeerz'.
Alicante, ä-le-kant'.
Alleghany, ä-l-le-gay'ne.
Aller, ah'l'er.
Allier, ah-l'e-ay'.
Almaden, ah-l-mah'then'.
Almansa, ah-l-mahn'sah.
Almeria, ah-l-may-re'ah.
Alnwick, an'olk.
Altal, ah-l'tl'.
Altamaha, awl-tah-mah-haw'.
Alton, awl'tün, or ä'l'tün.

Altona, ah'l'to-nah.
Altoona, ä-l-too'mah.
Alvarado, ah-l-vah-rah'do.
Amarapura, ah-mah-rah-poo'rah.
Amazon, am'ä-zün. (Named by the Indians Amas'ona, "boat-destroyer.")
Amboy'na.
America, ä-mër'e-kah. (Named from Americus Vesputius.)
Amberst, am'erst.
Amiens, am'e-enz.
Amirante, am-e-rant'.
Amoo, ah-moo'.
Amoor, ah-moor'.
Amoskeag, ä-mos'keg.
Amoy, ah-moy'.
Amsterdam. (From *Amsterdam*, "dam [or dike] of the Amstel.")
Anadir, ah-nah-deer'.
Anam, ah-nahn'.
Ancona, ahn-ko'nah.
Andaman'.
Andes, an'diz. (From a Peruvian word signifying "copper.")
Andor'ra.
An'dover.
Andros, ahn'dros.
Androsoggin, an-dros-kog'ghin.
Andujar, ahn-doo'har.
Angara, ahng-gah-rah'.
Angers, an'jerz.
Anglesea, ang'g'l-se.
Angola, ang-go'lah.
Angoulême, ong-goo-lem'.
Anguilla, ang-ghil'lah.
Annapolis.
Antannarivo, ahn-tah-nah-re-vo'.
Antarctic, ant-ark'tik. ("Opposite the Arctic.")
Antequera, ahn-tay-kay'rah.
Anticosti, an-to-kos'te.
Antigua, ahn-te'gah.
Antioquia, ahn-te-o-ke'ah.
Antilles, ahn-teel'.
Antongil, ahn-ton-zhil'.
Antwerp.
Apache, ah-pah'chay.
Apalachee, ap-ah-lah'che.
Aplachicola, ap-pah-lah-che-ko'lah.
Apenning, ap'en-nine.
Arabia, ä-ray-be-ah.
Araguay, ah-rah-gwí'.
Aral, ä'r'al. (Sea of Aral, "sea of islands.")
Aranjuez, ah-rah-hweth'.
Ararat, ä'r-ä-rat.
Araucania, ah-rah-kay'ac-ah.
Archangel, ark-ain'jel.
Archipelago, ark-pe'l-ä-go.
Arctic, ark'tik. (Arctic, from *arctos*, a "bear," signifies northern, because the constellation called the Great Bear lies towards the north pole: hence Arctic Ocean and Arctic Circle mean Northern Ocean, &c.; consequently, Antarctic means Southern.)
Arequipa, ah-ray-ke'pah.
Argentine, ar'jen-teen.
Arizona, ä-re-zo'nah.
Arkansas.
Armagh, ar-mah'.
Aroostook, ä-roos'took.
Ar'rss.
Ascension, as-sen'shun.
Ascutney, as-kut'ne.

Ashanteo, ahsh-ahn'te'.
Asia, ay'she-ah. (From *Asia*, a daughter of Oceanus.)
As'plawall.
Assam, ahs-sahm'.
Assiniboin, as-sin'e-boyn.
Assouan, ahs-soo-ahn'.
Assumption, as-sun'shun.
Astrakhan, ahs-trab-kahn'.
Atacama, ah-tah-kah'mah.
Atchafalaya, atch-ä-fä-l'ah. ("Lost water.")
Athabasca, ath-ä-bas'kah.
Athens, ath'enz. (So called from *Athene*, the goddess of wisdom.)
Atlas'tic. (So called from the Atlas Mountains.)
At'las. (The Atlas Mountains were named from Atlas, an ancient king of Mauritania, who was skilled in astronomy, and was reputed to have borne the world on his shoulders.)
Anch, ösh.
Auckland, awk'land.
Angela, öw-je'lah.
Augsburg, awgz'hurg.
Anrilac, o-reel-yahk'.
Au Sable, o-sahb'l'.
Australasia, aws-tral-ay'she-ah. ("Southern Asia.")
Australia, aws-tray'le-ah. ("Southern land.")
Austria, aws'tre-ah. ("Eastern kingdom." So named as being the eastern part of the dominions of Charlemagne.)
Auvergne, ö-vairn'.
Aux Cayes, o-kay'.
Auxerre, o-sair'.
Ava, ah'vah.
Avignon, ah-veen-yöno'.
Avon, ay'von.
Axum, ahk-soom'.
Azores, az'örz, or az'örz'. (From Port. *oçor*, a "hawk," a number of these birds being found there.)
Az'ov.

B.

Babelmandeb, bahb-el-mahn'deb. ("The gate of tears.")
Badajos, bad-ah-hoce'.
Baden, bah'den.
Baeza, bah-ay'thah.
Baffin.
Bagdad, bahg-dahd'.
Bagur, bah-goor'.
Bahamas, bah-hay'maz.
Bahia, bah-e'ah.
Baikal, b'kahl. ("Rich lake." It abounds in fish.)
Balearic, bäl-e-är'ik. (From *baleares*, "slingers." These islands produced the best slingers in the world.)
Balize, bäl-leez'. (This is a corruption of *Wahiz*, which the Spaniards called this place on account of its being the resort of a noted pirate named Wah-lee.)
Balkan, bahl-kahn'.
Balkash, bahl-kahsh'.
Balmoral, bäl-mör'al.
Balsas, bah'sahs.
Baltic, bawl'tik.
Baltimore, bawl'to-more.

Banca, bang'kah.
Baniff, banif.
Bangkok, bang-kok'.
Bangor, bang'gor.
Baniailuka, bah-ne-ah-loo'kah.
Baracua, bah-rah-ko'ah.
Barbadoes, bar-bay'does.
Barbuda, bar-boo'dah.
Barcelona, bar-say-lo'nah.
Barfleur, bar-flur'.
Bari, bah're.
Basle, bahl, or bahz'l.
Batabano, bah-tah-bah'no.
Batavia, bät-ay've-ah.
Batiscan, bah-tees-kong'.
Baton Rouge, bat'un-roozh'. ("Red stick.")
Bavaria, bä-vay're-ah.
Baylen, bi-len'.
Bayona, bah-yo'nah.
Bayonne, bah-yon'.
Bayou la Fourche, bi'öo-lah-foorsh'.
Bayreuth, bi'ruth.
Beaufort (U.S.), bü'firt.
Beauharnois, be-har-nay'.
Beanmaris, bo-may'ris.
Beauvais, bo-vay'.
Bechuanas, bet-choo-ah'naz.
Bedouin, bed'oo-in.
Begharmi, bay-gar'me.
Behring, he'ring.
Beirut, bay'root.
Beja, bay'zahh.
Beled-el-Jerid, bel-od'el-je-reed'. ("Land of dates.")
Belem, bay-len'o'.
Belfast'.
Belgium, hol'je-nm.
Belleisle, hel-ile'. ("Beautiful island.")
Belmonte, hel-mon'tay.
Beloit, be-loit'.
Beloochistan, bel-oo-chis-tahn'. ("Country of the Beloochees.")
Bemini, bay-me'ne.
Benares, ben-ah'röz.
Bengal, ben-gawl'.
Benguela, ben-gay'lah.
Benicia, be-nish'e-ah.
Benin, ben-ee'n'.
Benisouef, ben-e-sweef.
Benjarmassin, ben-yar-mahs-sin'.
Ben MacDhui, ben mak-doo'e.
Ben Ne'via.
Bergen (U.S.), ber'ghen.
Bergen (Norway), bër'gen.
Ber'lin.
Bermudas, ber-mon'daz. (Named after Bermudez, their discoverer, 1522.)
Berne, hern.
Besançon, hëh-zong-söng'.
Biddeford, bid'de-furd'.
Bigelow, big'lo.
Billau, bil-bah'lo.
Bir'mah.
Birmingham, bir'ming-äm.
Bis'cay.
Bistineau, bis-te-no'.
Blenheim, blen'im.
Blou, bloy, or blwah.
Boavista, bo-ah-vees'tah.
Bochnia, bok'ne-ah.
Bogota, bo-go-tah'.
Bohemia, ho-be'me-ah.
Boisé, bwah-zay'.
Bojador, hod-jah-dore'.

Bokhara, ho-kah'rah.
Bolivia, bo-liv'e-ah. (Named from General Bolivar.)
Bologna, bo-lone'yah.
Bolor, bo-lo're'.
Bombay'. ("Good bay.")
Bonifacio, bo-ne-fah'cho.
Bonita, ho-nen'.
Boonville, boon'vil.
Boothia, boo'the-ah.
Bordeaux, bor-do'.
Borgne, born.
Borneo, bor'ne-o.
Bornholm.
Bosphorus, bos'fo-rüs. ("Ox-ford.")
Boothia, both'ne-ah.
Bougainville, boo-gan-veel'.
Boulogne, boo-lone'.
Bourbon, boor'bün.
Bourges, boorz.
Bowdoinham, bo'din-ham.
Braganza, brah-gahn'zah.
Brahmaputra, brah-mah-poo'trah. ("Son of the Creator.")
Brattloro, brat't'l-bür-rüh.
Brazil, brä-zil'.
Brazos, brah'zos.
Breedee, brah'deh.
Brem'en.
Breslau, bres'law, or bres'löw.
Bristol.
Britain, brit'tn.
Brooklyn, bröck'lin.
Bruges, broo'jiz.
Brinn, bren'.
Brusa, broo'sah.
Brus'els.
Bucharest, boo-kah-rest'. ("City of enjoyment.")
Buda, bü'dah.
Budweis, böö'd'wice.
Buena Esperanza, bway'nah es-pay-rah'n'zah.
Buen Ayre, hwen I'ray.
Buenos Ayres, bo'nos ay'ris. ("Good air.")
Bug, böög.
Bulgaria, bööl-gay're-ah.
Bunker (bung'ker) Hill.
Burgas, hung-gahs'.
Burgos, boor'goce.
Bushire, boo-sheer'.
Buttes, bütes.

C.

Cabriel, kah-bre-el'.
Cahul, kah-bool'.
Caceres, kah'thay-rës.
Cachoeira, kah-sho-ay'e-rah.
Cadiz, kay'diz.
Caen, kono.
Caernarvon, ker-nar'von.
Caffraria, kaf-fray're-ah. ("Country of the Caffirs or Infidels.")—a name given by the Arabs to all who did not accept the Mohammedan religion.)
Cagliari, kah'l'yah-re.
Cahawba, kä-haw'bah.
Cahore, kah-or'.
Cairo (U.S.), kay'ro.
Cairo (Egypt), kay'ro. ("The victorious.")
Calais (Me.), kä'l'is.
Calais (France), kä'l'is, or kah-lay'.
Calcasteu, kä'l'ka-shon.
Calcutta, kä'l-kut'tah.

Caldera, kahl-day'rah.
 California, käl-e-for'ne-ah.
 Calho, kahl-lah'o, or kahl-yah'o.
 Cambay, kahm-bay'.
 Cambodia, kam-bo'de-ah.
 Cameroon, kam-er-roon.
 Cameta, kah-may'tah.
 Campeche, kam-pe'cho.
 Canada, kan'ä-dah.
 Canandaigua, kan-an-day'gwah.
 Canaries, kä-nay'reez.
 Canaveral.
 Can'cer. (This name is given to one of the tropics. "Cancer" signifies "a crab." As the crab moves in a backward direction, so the sun, when he reaches this tropic, moves in a backward direction, towards Capricorn.)
 Candahar, kahn-dah-har'.
 Can'dia
 Canca, kah-ne'ah.
 Cantabrian, kan-tay'bre-an.
 Can'ton (U. S.)
 Canton (China), kan-ton'.
 Cape. (From Lat. *caput*, a "head," or "beginning.")
 Capo Breton, kape brit'tin.
 Cap'ricorn. ("Goat's horn." The name given to the southern tropic. As goats delight in climbing, so the sun, when he reaches this sign, or tropic, turns round and ascends towards Cancer. Both Cancer and Capricorn are signs of the zodiac.)
 Caquetá, kah-kay'tah.
 Caracas, kah-rah'kaha.
 Carbonaro, kar-bo-nah'ro.
 Carcasonne, kar-kahs-son'.
 Cardenas, kar'day-nahs.
 Car'diff.
 Caribbean, kär-rib-be'an.
 Carlsruhe, karls'roo.
 Carolina, kär-o-lin'nah.
 Carpathian, kar-pay'the-an.
 Carpentaria.
 Carrara, kar-rah'rah.
 Cartagena, kar-ta-jo'nah. ("New Carthage.")
 Carveiro, kar-vo-ay'e-ro.
 Casale, kah-sah'lay.
 Cas'co.
 Caspian, kas'pe-an.
 Cassiquiare, kahs-se-ko-ah'ray.
 Castellan de la Plana, kaha-tel-yöwn' day lah plah'nah.
 Castellan, kaha-tel-no'.
 Castine, kas-teen'.
 Catahoula, kat-ä-hoo'lah.
 Catania, kah-tah'ne-ah.
 Catoche, kah-to'chay.
 Cats'kill.
 Cattaro, kaht'tah-ro.
 Cattedagat, kat'te-gat. ("Cat's gate.")
 Cauca, köw'kah.
 Caucasus, kaw'kä-sua. ("White mountain.")
 Cav'an.
 Caxias, kah-she'ahs.
 Caxim'bas.
 Caycos, kä'koce.
 Cayenne, kä-en'.
 Cayman, kä-mahn'. ("Alligator.")
 Cayos, kä'oce.
 Cayuga, kay-yoo'gah.
 C. di Leuca, de-lay'oo-kah.
 Celano, chay-lah'no.
 Celebes, sel'e-bes.
 Centoco, sen-to'say.
 Cephalonia, sel-ah-le'ne-ah.
 Ceram, se-rahm'.
 Ceredo, se-re'do.
 Cerigo, chér'e-go.
 Cotte, set.
 Cottigne, chat-teer'ray.
 Ceuta, soo'tah.
 Cévennes, say-ven'.
 Ceylon, sel'on, or se-löwn'.

Chagres, chah'grés.
 Chalons, shah-löno'.
 Champain, sham-plain'.
 Chaudeteur, sham-dé-h'loor.
 Charreton, shah-ron't'.
 Chariton, chär'e-tün.
 Chartres, shart'r.
 Chascomus, chaha-ko'mus.
 Chateaugay, chat-ä-gay'.
 Chatham, chat'am.
 Chattahoochee, chat-tä-hoo'che.
 Chaudière, sho-de-air'.
 Chaumont, sho-möno'.
 Chautauqua, shä-taw'kwah.
 Chelmsford, chemz'furd.
 Cheltenham, chelt'näm.
 Chemnitz, kem'nits.
 Cher, shair.
 Cheraw, che-raw'.
 Cherbourg, sher'burg.
 Chesapeake, ches'ä-peek.
 Chesuncook, che-sun'kook.
 Chetunal, chay-too-nahl'.
 Cheviot, chiv'e-ot.
 Cheyenne, she-en'.
 Chicago, she-kaw'go.
 Chichester, chitch'es-ter.
 Chihuahua, che-wah'wah.
 Chili, chil'le.
 Chillothe, chil-le-köth'o.
 Chiloe, che-lo-ay'.
 Chimboraço, chim-bo-rah'zo.
 China, chi'nah. (Chinese, *Chon-koo*, "centre of the world.")
 Chincha, chin'chah.
 Chippewa, chip'pe-wah, or chip'pe-waw.
 Cibao, se-bah'o.
 Cienfuegos, se-en-fway'goce.
 Cimarron, so-mar-röwn'.
 Cincinnati, sin-sin-nat'te. (Named from Cincinnati, the Roman Dictator.)
 Cincinatus, the Roman Dictator.)
 Ciudad Real, the-oo-dahd' ray-al
 Civita Vecchia, che-vo-tah vok'keh-ah.
 Cleveland, kleev'land.
 Coanza, ko-an'zah.
 Coatzacoalcas, ko-ah-tah-ko-ah'koce.
 Cobbe, kob'be.
 Cobija, ko-bo'hah.
 Cob'lenz.
 Cockburn, ko'burn.
 Coepang, koo-pahng'.
 Coimbra, ko-eem'brah.
 Colima, ko-le'mah.
 Cologne, ko-löwn'. (From *colonia*, a "colony.")
 Colorado, kol-o-rah'do. ("Colored.")
 Comayagua, ko-mi-ah'gwah.
 Co'mo.
 Comonur, ko-mo-noor'.
 Com'orin.
 Concepcion, kon-sep-se-öwz'.
 Concord, kong'kürd.
 Conecut, ko-no'küth.
 Coneus, ko-ne'sus.
 Congaree, kong-gä-re'.
 Congo, kong'go.
 Conhocton, kon-hok'tün.
 Conneautville, kon-ne-awt'vil.
 Connecticut, kon-net'e-kut.
 Constantinople, kon-stan-te-no-p'l ("City of Constantine.")
 Constitucion, kon-ste-too-se-öwn'.
 Continent, kon'te-nent. (From the Latin word *continere*, to "hold together, to comprise," &c. This word, in Geography, signifies a vast extent of land comprising several kingdoms or countries. Europe, Asia, Africa, and America are continents.)
 Con'tocook.
 Copenhagen, ko-pen-hay'ghen. ("Buying or trading port.")

Copiapo, ko-pe-ah po'.
 Coquimbo, ko-keem'bo.
 Cordova, kor'do-vah.
 Corea, ko-re'ah.
 Corfu, kor-foo', or kor'fü.
 Cor'inth.
 Corrientes, kor-re-en'tés. (A "current." There is a strong current in Mozambique Channel off Cape Corrientes.)
 Corsica, kor'se-kah.
 Corunna, ko-run'nah.
 Corval'is.
 Costa Rica, kos'tah re'kah. ("Rich coast.")
 Coté d'Or, kote-dore'.
 Cotopaxi, ko-to-pax'o.
 Coudersport, köw'ders pört.
 Covington, kuv'ing-tün.
 Coxsackie, köök-saw'ka.
 Cozumel, ko-zoo-mal'.
 Cracow, kray'ko.
 Creuse, kruz.
 Crouw, kruh.
 Crimea, krim-e'ah.
 Cronstadt, krön'stadt. ("King's town.")
 Cuba, kü'bah.
 Cuenca, kwen'kah.
 Cumana, koo-mah-nah'.
 Curaçoa, kü-rä-so'ah.
 Cuyaba, koo-yah'bah.
 Cuyahoga, kü-ä-ho'gah.
 Cuzco, koos'ko.
 Cyclades, sik'lah-deaz (Islands in the Archipelago. From the Gr. *kuklos*, a "circle." One group, particularly, surrounds Delos as with a circle: hence the name. The other islands are called *Sporades*, "scattered.")
 Cyprus, si'prüs.

D.

Dahlonaga, dah-lon'e-gah.
 Dahomey, dah-ho'may.
 Dakota, dah-ko'tah.
 Damara, dah-mah'rah.
 Damascus, dah-mas'kus.
 Damiatta, dam-e-el'tah.
 Dant'zig.
 Dannbe, dan'yooob.
 Dardanelles, dar-dä-nelz'.
 Darfur, dar-foor'.
 Darien, day'ro-en.
 Darmstadt, darm'stadt.
 Debretzin, day-bre'tsin.
 Dec'can. ("The south." It forms the southern portion of the peninsula of Hindostan.)
 Declerta, day-se-air'tah.
 Delaware, del'ä-wür.
 Delgado, del-gah'do.
 Delhi, del'le.
 Denbigh, den'bie.
 Den'mark. (A "low country.")
 Derne, der'nöh.
 Desaguadero, des-ah-gwah-thay'ro.
 Des Moines, de-moin'.
 Detroit, de-troit'. (A "strait.")
 Diamantina, de-ah-mahn-te'nah.
 Diarbekir, de-ar-bay-keer'.
 Dieppe, de-ep'.
 Digne, deefi.
 Dijon, de-zhöno'.
 Dinanic, de-när'ik.
 Dnieper, ne'per.
 Dolister, nees'ter.
 Dominica, dom-e-ne'kah.
 Dongola, dong'go-lah.
 Dordogne, dor-döwn'.
 Dornoch, dor'nook.
 Douro, doo'ro.
 Dovrefield, do'vréh-fe-eld. (From *dovre*, a "village," and *field*, a "mountain-ridge.")
 Drakberg, drak'börg.
 Dragignan, drah-ghen-yono'.
 Drave, drabh.
 Dresden.
 Dubuque, doo-löök'.

Duero, doo-ay'ro.
 Dulce, dool'say.
 Dumfries, dum-freec'e.
 Dundalk, dun-dawk'.
 Dundee'.
 Dunfermline, düm-fer'lin.
 Dun'kirk.
 Durango, doo-rahng'go.
 Durazzo, doo-rah't'so.
 Dne'seldorf.
 Dwina, dwi'nah, or dwo'nah.

E.

E'bro.
 Ecija, ay'the-hah.
 Ecuador, ek-wah-dere' ("Equator." So named from its situation, being intersected through its whole length by the equinoctial line.)
 Edinburgh, ed'in-bür-rüh. (Name supposed to be derived from Edwin, a king of Northumberland.)
 Ed'into.
 Egipt, e-ji'nah.
 Egypt, e'jipt.
 Eider, Y'der.
 Ekaterinburg, ay-kah'tay-recn-böörg.
 Elba, el'bah.
 Elbe, elb.
 Elborz'. ("Peaked mountains.")
 Eleuthera, e-loo'the-rah.
 Elgin, el'ghin.
 El Paso, el pah'so.
 Elsinore, el-se-nore'.
 Emilia, ay-meel'yah.
 Engaffo, en-gahn'yo.
 England, ing'gland.
 Enikale, en-e-kah'lay.
 Equator, e-kway'tor. (*Æqua-terra*. So called on account of its dividing the earth into two equal parts, north and south. From this central line latitude is reckoned.)
 Erebus, er'e-bus.
 Erfurth, ér'föört.
 Erie, e'ro.
 Erlan, ér'löw.
 Escorial, es-koo-re-ahl'.
 Espiritu Santo, es-pir'e-too sahn'to.
 Esquimaux, es'ke-mo.
 Esequibo, es-séh-ke'bo.
 Euphrates, yoo-fray'teez. ("To make glad." This river, like the Nile, annually overflows its banks, thereby fertilizing the adjacent country.)
 Europe, yoo'rüp.
 European, yoo-ro-pe-an.
 Eutaw, yoo'taw.
 Evansville, iv'anz-vil.
 Evora, ev'o-rah.
 Evreux, ev-rüh'.
 Eylau, I'löw.

F.

Falkirk, fawl-kirk'.
 Falkland, fawk'land.
 Falmouth, fal'müth.
 Falster, fahl'ster.
 Farallones, fah-rah-l-yo'nés.
 Faribault, far-e-bo'.
 Faro, fah'ro.
 Faroe, fah'ro.
 Fayetteville, fay'et-vil.
 Fee'jee.
 Ferdinandina, fer-nan-de'nah.
 Ferrol, fér-rol'e.
 Fezzan, fezzahn'.
 Finisterre, fin-is-tair'. ("Land's end.")
 Flomica, dom-e-ne'kah.
 Dongola, dong'go-lah.
 Dordogne, dor-döwn'.
 Dornoch, dor'nook.
 Douro, doo'ro.
 Dovrefield, do'vréh-fe-eld. (From *dovre*, a "village," and *field*, a "mountain-ridge.")
 Drakberg, drak'börg.
 Dragignan, drah-ghen-yono'.
 Drave, drabh.
 Dresden.
 Dubuque, doo-löök'.

Foggia, fod'jah.
 Foix, fwah.
 Fond du Lac, fond-doo-lahk'. ("Bottom of the lake.")
 Fontainebleau, fon-ten-ble'.
 Formentera, for-men-tay'rah.
 Formosa, for-mo'sah. ("Beautiful")
 Fortaleza, for-tah-lay'zah.
 Foveux, fo-vo'.
 France, franss. (France derives its name from the Franks,—i.e. freemen,—a confederacy of various German nations, who overran Gaul in the sixth century.)
 François, frong-swah'.
 Frankfurt, frank'furt.
 Fresno, fres-neel'yo.
 Frigid, frij'id. (From *frigus*, "cold." This name is given to two of the zones,—North and South Frigid.)
 Frijol, fro-hol'.
 Frontaras, fron-tay'rah.
 Fuerteventura, fwör'tay-ven-too'rah.
 Fundy, fun'de.
 Funen, foo'nen.
 Fünfkirchen, feenf'käär-ken.

G.

Gaeta, gab-ay'tah.
 Galapagos, gab-lah'pah-goce, or gal-lä-pay'gus. ("Islands of land-turtles.")
 Galatz, gal'lahts.
 Galena, gäl'e'nah. ("Silver or lead ore.")
 Galicia, gal-lah'e-ah.
 Gallego, gahl-yay'go.
 Gallinas (S.A.), gahl-yeh-nahs. (From *gallina*, a "hen.")
 Gallipoli, gahl-lip'o-le.
 Galveston, gal'väs-tün.
 Galway, gawl'way.
 Gambia, gahm'be-ah.
 Ganges, gau'jeez.
 Garonne, gah-ron'.
 Gasconade, gas-ko-naid'.
 Gatun, gah-toon'.
 Geelong, ghe-long'.
 Genargentun, jay-nar-jen-too'.
 Genesee, jen-ee-se'.
 Genesee, jen-ee-se'o.
 Geneva, jen-e'vah.
 Gentl, hay-noel'.
 Genoa, jen-o-ah.
 Georgia, jor'je-ah.
 GERAL, zhay-rah'l'.
 Germany, jer'mah-ne. (Lat. *Germania* "Wehrman," i.e. "war-man," was changed by the Romans into German: hence the name of Germany.)
 Ghanta, gawts. (*Ghaut* signifies a "mountain-pass.")
 Ghent, ghent.
 Gibraltar, je-braw'l'ter. (In the eighth century, Tarif, with an army of Saracens, landed here and built a castle on the rock, which was called Gib-el-Tarif,—i.e. the Mountain of Tarif: whence the present name.)
 Gila, he'lah.
 Gilolo, je-lo'lo.
 Girardeau, je-rar-do'.
 Girgeh, jeer'jeh.
 Giroude, je-roud'.
 Glasgow, glas'go.
 Glogau, gio'göw.
 Gloucester, glos'ter.
 Glückstadt, glock'stadt.
 Goa, go'ah.
 Gobi, gö'be.
 Godavery, go-dah-ver'e.
 Gollad, go-le-ad'.
 Gonalves, go-nive'.
 Gon'dar.
 Go'shen.
 Guha, gö'tah.
 Gottenburg, got'en-burg.
 Göttingen, get'ting-en.
 Gouverneur, gouv-er-noor'.

Gozo, got'zo.
 Gracias a Dios, grah'se-ahs ah de'oce.
 ("Thanks to God.")
 Gramplains, gram'pe-anz.
 Granada, grah-nah'dah.
 Greece, greese.
 Greenland.
 Greenwich (U.S.), green'fch.
 Greenwich (Eng.), grin'lj.
 Grenada, gren-ay'dah, or gren-ah'dah.
 Grenoble, gren-ob'l'.
 Grim'nell.
 Groningen, gron'ing-en.
 Grosswardein, groce-wahr'dine.
 Guadalaviar, gwah-dah-lah-ve-ar'.
 Guadalaxara, gwah-dah-lah-hah'rah.
 Guadalquivir, gaw-dal-kwiv'er. (The "great river.")
 Guadalupo, gwah-dah-loo'pay.
 Guadeloupe, gaw-deh-loop'.
 Guadiana, gwah-de-ah'nah.
 Guanahani, gwah-nah-hah'ne.
 Guanaxuato, gwah-nah-hwah'to.
 Guardafui, gwahr-dah-fwe'.
 Guardia, gwahr'do-ah.
 Guatemala, gaw-to-mah'lah, or gwah-tay-mah'lah.
 Guaviare, gwah-ve-ah'ray.
 Guayama, gwah-ah'mah.
 Guayaquil, gwah-ah-keel'.
 Guaymas, gwah-mahs.
 Guernsey, gher'ze.
 Gambia, ghe-ah'nah.
 Guinea, ghin'ne.
 Gnyandotte, ghi-an-dot'.

H.

Haarlem, har'lem.
 Hadramaut, hah-drah-mow't.
 Hague, haig. ("Count's wood.")
 Hainan, hi-nahn'. ("South of the sea.")
 Hakodadi, hah-ko-dah'do.
 Halifax, hal'e-fax.
 Halle, hal'lsh.
 Ham'burg.
 Ham'overfest.
 Han'over.
 Harrisburg, harr'is-burg.
 Hatch'ee.
 Hatteras, hat'er-ass.
 Havana, ha-van'ah.
 Haverhill, hay-ver-li.
 Havre, hahv'r. (A "harbor," or "haven.")
 Havre de Grace, hahv'r-deh-grahss'. ("Haven of grace.")
 Hawaii, hah-wi'a.
 Hayti, hay'te. ("Mountainous.")
 Haytien, hay'te-en.
 Hebrides, heb'rid-eez.
 Hecla, hek'lah.
 Hejaz, hed-jahz'.
 Helena, hel'e-nah.
 Heligoland, hel'e-go-lahnd. ("Holy land.")
 Hel'las.
 Hemisphere, hem'is-feer. (From the Greek, signifying "half a sphere or globe," when it is supposed to be cut through its centre in the plane of one of its greatest circles.)
 Henlo'pen.
 Herat, her-ah't'.
 Hereford, her'e-furd.
 Hermanstadt, her'mahn-staht.
 Hertberg, hert'berg.
 Hesse-Cassel, hess-kas'sel.
 Hesse-Darmstadt, hess-darn'staht.
 Hesse-Homburg, hess-hom'burg.
 Hiawassee, hi-ah-wos'se.
 Hières, he-ah'r'.
 Himalaya, him-ah-li'ah. ("Abode of snow.")
 Hin'doo-Koosh'.
 Hindoostan, hin-doo-stan'. (In Persiao, this term signifies the "country of

the Hindoos." *Hindoo* also signifies "black," and *stan*, "country,"—i.e. the "country of the blacks," the Hindoos being darker than the Persians. It may be derived from *Indus*, a "river.")
 Hoang-lo, ho-ahng-ho'. ("Yellow river.")
 Hobarton, hob'er-tun.
 Ho'land. ("Muddy or marshy land." Originally *Ollant*. A large portion of Holland lies below the level of the sea: hence the name Netherlands.)
 Holstein, hol'stine.
 Holston, hole'stun.
 Holyhead, hol'e-hed.
 Holyoke, hol'yoke.
 Honduras, hon-doo'rahs.
 Hongkong'. ("Sweet waters.")
 Honolulu, hon-o-loo'loo.
 Hoogly, hoog'le.
 Houghton, ho'tun.
 Houlton, hole'tun.
 Housatonic, hoo-sa-ton'ik.
 Housse, hoo'sah.
 Houston, ho'stun.
 Husliaga, wahl-yah'gah.
 Huamanga, wah-mahng'gah.
 Hue, hway, or hoo-ay'.
 Huesca, wes'kah.
 Hungary, hung'gä-ra. (Name derived from the "Hunni," or "Huns," who took possession of this country towards the close of the fourth century.)
 Inron, hñ'rün.
 Hyderabad, hi-dsr-ah-bahd'.

I.

Ibraila, e-br'l'lah.
 Ice'land.
 Idaho, i'dä-ho.
 Iheos, eel-yay'oce.
 Ill, e'le.
 Illimani, eel-ye-mah'ne.
 Illinois, il-lin-oyz', or il-lin-oy'.
 India, in'de-ah.
 Indiana, in-de-an'ah.
 Indianapolls, in-de-ä-nap'o-lls.
 Indiano'la.
 Indighirka, in-de-ghir'kah.
 Inhambane, een-ahm-bahn'.
 Innspruck, ins'pröök. ("Bridge of the Inn.")
 Inverness'.
 Ionian, i-o-ne-an.
 Iowa, i'o-wah.
 Iquique, e-ke'kay.
 Iran, e-rah'n'.
 Ireland, ir'land.
 Irkoutsk, ir-kootsk'.
 Irrawaddy, ir-rah-wod'de. ("Great river.")
 Irish, ir-tish'.
 Iser, e'zer.
 Isère, e-zair'.
 Islay (Hebrides), I'lay.
 Isle, eel.
 Isolette, e-so-let'.
 Ispahan, is-pä-hahn'.
 Italy, it'a-le.
 Itasca, i-tas'kah.
 Ithaca, ith'a-kah.
 Iviça, e-ve'sah.
 Itzaccihuatl, ees-tahk-se-whaht'l'. (The "white lady.")

J.

Jacmel, zhahk-mel'.
 Jaen, hah-en'.
 Jalapa, hah-lah'pah. (The medicinal herb *jalap* owes its name to this town.)
 Jalon, hah-lone'.
 Jamaica, jä-may'kah.
 Janina, yah-ni'ne-nah.
 Jun Mayen, yah-mi'en.
 Japan, jah-pan'. (Called by the Japan-

ese Nippon. *Nip* signifies "origin," and *pon*, "sun;"—i.e. "origin of the sun,"—the east.)
 Jaroslav, yah-ro-slahv'.
 Jassy, yah's'e.
 Java, jah'vah.
 Javary, hah-vah-re'.
 Jeendana, jeen-dah'nah.
 Jérémie, zhay-ray-me'.
 Jersey, jer'ze.
 Jesso, yes'so.
 Jeypore, jI-poor'.
 Jijiginsk, je-je-ghinsk'.
 Jiloco, he-lo'ko.
 Joannes, zho-ahn'nä.
 Jollet, jo'le-et.
 Jollette, zhol-le-et'.
 Jord'an.
 Jorullo, ho-rool'yo.
 Ju'an do Fu'ca.
 Ju'an Fernan'dez.
 Juba, zhoo'bah.
 Jujuy, hoo-hwee'.
 Junjata, joo-ne-ah'tah.
 Jura, joo'rah.
 Jurua, hoo-roo'ah, or zhoo-roo'ah.
 Jutay, hoo-ti', or zhoo-ti'.
 Jut'land.

K.

Kagosima, kah-go-se'mah.
 Kairwan, kir-wahn'.
 Kalmhari, kah-lah-hah're.
 Kalamazoo, käl-ä-nä-zoo'.
 Kamschatka, kahm-shaht'kah.
 Kanawha, kä-naw'wah.
 Kankakoe, kan-kaw'ke.
 Kansas, kan'zas. ("Smoky water.")
 Kara, kah'rah.
 Kaskaskia, kas-kas'ke-ah.
 Katahdin, kä-tah'din.
 Kazan, kah-zahn'.
 Kearsarge, keer'sarj.
 Kelat, ke-laht'.
 Kenia, ke'ne-ah.
 Ken'nebec.
 Kenosha, ken-o'shah.
 Kentucky, ken-tuk'a.
 Keokuk, ke'o-kuk.
 Kermadec, ker-mah-dek'.
 Keweena, ke-we'nah.
 Khartoom, kar-toom'.
 Khingan, kin-gahn'.
 Khiva, ke'vah.
 Khokan, ko-kahn'.
 Kiel, keel.
 Kiev, ke-ev'.
 Killmandjaro, kil-e-mahn-jah-ro'.
 Killarney, kil-lar'ne.
 Kingkita, king-ke-tah'o.
 Köblen, ke-ö'len.
 Kirghis, kir-gheez'.
 Kittan'ning.
 Klusiu, ke-oo-se-oo'.
 Klagenfurth, klah'ghen-fürt.
 Klausenburg, klöw'zen-böörj. ("Castle of the defile.")
 Kodlak, ke-de-ahk.
 Kolima, ko-le'mah.
 Konieh, ko'ne-eh.
 Königgrätz, ken'ig-grets.
 Königsberg, ken'igz-berg. ("King's town.")
 Kordofan, kor-do-fahn'.
 Kouka, koo'kah.
 Kuen-Lun, kwen-loon'.
 Kurile, koo'r'il. (Derived from *kooroo mitsi*,—i.e. the "rod of sea-weeds." *Kooroo* signifies "sea-weed.")
 Kurrachee, kur-rah-che'.
 Kwich'pak.
 Kyachta, ke-ahk'tah.

L.

Laaland, lah'lahnd.
 Labrador, lah-rä-dör'. (*Labrador* signifies a "husbandman," or "farmer." This land was called *terra labrador*,

"cultivable land," to distinguish it from Greenland.)
 Labuan, lah-boo-ahn'.
 Lacedive, lahk'kä-div'.
 Lachlan, lak'lan.
 La Crosse, lah-kross'.
 Ladoga, lah'd'o-gah.
 Ladrone, lah-drone'. (Called also the Mariana Islands. These were discovered in 1521, by Magellan, and called *Las Islas de los Ladrones*,—i.e. "the islands of the thieves." They were named also the Mariana Islands, in honor of the queen of Philip IV. of Spain.)
 La Fayette, la-fay-yet'.
 Lagos, lah'goco.
 La Guayra, lah-gw'rah.
 Lahaina, lah-hi'nah.
 Lahaa, lah'sah.
 Lamaille, lah-moil'.
 Lamurek, lah-moo-rek'.
 Lancaster, lank'ä-ster.
 Landes, lond.
 Langanaes, lahng'ah-ness.
 Laon, lah-on'.
 Laos, lah'oce.
 La Paz, lah-pahs'.
 La Plata, lah plah'tah. ("Silver." *Río de la Plata*, "river of silver.")
 Lap'land. ("Country of the Lapps.")
 Laramie, lär'ä-me.
 Laredo, lah-ray'do.
 Larissa, lah-ris'sah. ("New town.")
 La Rochelle, lah ro-she'l'.
 Lassa, lah'sah. ("Land of the divine intelligence." The grand temple of Buddha, with its gilded dome, is here; also, the residence of the Grand Lama.)
 Lat'itude. (From *latitudo*, "breadth." The ancients believed that the globe was a flat plain, and much longer from east to west than from north to south: consequently they called distance from north to south latitude, as they called distance from east to west longitude,—from *longitudo*, "length.")
 Lausenbug, löw'on-böörj.
 Lausanne, lo-zahn'.
 Laybach, li'bahk.
 Lazaro, lah'zah-ro.
 Leavenworth, lev'en-wurth.
 Lech, lek.
 Lecomp'ton.
 Lehigh, leh-horn'.
 Leh, lay.
 Leicester, les'ter.
 Leipsic, lip'sik.
 Leiria, lay-re'ah.
 Leith, leeth.
 Le Mans, leh-mox'.
 Lena, le'nah. (A "slugard;" so named on account of its sluggish course.)
 Lepanto, le-pan'to.
 Lerida, lèr'o-dah.
 Lev'en.
 Lew Chew, loo-choo'.
 Liberia, li-be're-ah. (From Lat. *libera*, "free.")
 Lichtenfels, lik'ten-fels.
 Liège, leej, or le-eizh'.
 Lively, leev'le.
 Liim Fiord, leem-fe-ord'.
 Lille, leel.
 Lima, le'mah.
 Linoges, le-nözh'.
 Lincoln, link'un.
 Linnho, lin'ne.
 Lipari, lip'ah-re.
 Lippe, lip'pöh.
 Lisbon, liz'bün.
 Liv'erpool.
 Llandaff, lan-daff'.
 Llano Estacado, l'yn'ho es-tah-kah'do. ("Staked plain.")

Llanos, l'yal'noce. (*Llanos*, "plains." A term applied to the extensive plains of South America,—the same as prairies in North America or steppes in Russia.)
 Llerena, l'yay-ray'nah.
 Loango, loh-ang'go.
 Lobos, lo'boce.
 Löff'den.
 Logroño, le-grone'yo.
 Loire, lwahr.
 Lombardy, lom'bar-de. (Lombardy derives its name from the *Longobardi*, a people of German extraction, who established themselves here in the sixth century.)
 Lomond, lo'münd.
 London, lun'dün.
 Lorea, lor'kah.
 Los Angeles, loca an'jeh-lez.
 Los Roques, loca ro'kës.
 Louisiana, loo-e-ze-ah'd'.
 Louisiana, loo-e-ze-ah'nah.
 Louisville, loo'is-vil.
 Louvain, loo-vayn'.
 Lowell, lo'el.
 Lubek, loo'bek.
 Lucera, luk'kah.
 Luccerne, loo-ern'.
 Lucknow, luk'nöw.
 Luneburg, loo'nöh-burg.
 Lux'emburg.
 Luzon, loo-zone'.
 Lyons, li'ünz.

M.

Maas, mahs.
 Macao, mah-köw'.
 Macassar, mah-kahs'ar.
 Machias, mat-chi'as.
 Mackenzie, mak-ken'ze.
 Mackinaw, mak'o-naw.
 Macon (U.S.), may'kün.
 Macquarrie, mak-kwör'ro.
 Madagascar, mad-ä-gas'kar.
 Madawaska, mad-ä-wäs'kah.
 Madeira, mah-de'rah. (*Madaira* signifies, in Portuguese, "timber." These islands were so named on account of their magnificent forests. The Madeira River flows through a densely-wooded region.)
 Madeira (River), mah-day'rah.
 Madras, mä-drass'.
 Madrid, mah-drid'.
 Maclstrom, may'l'strum. (A "mill-stream.")
 Maese, mah'seh.
 Maestricht, mahs'trikt.
 Magadoxa, mag-ah-dox'ah.
 Magdalena, mag-dä-le'nah, or mahgdah-lay'nah.
 Magellan, mah-jel'lan.
 Maggiore, mahd-jo'ray. (*Lago Maggiore*, "large lake.")
 Maimatchin, mi-mah-cheen'.
 Main, mayn.
 Majorca, mah-jor'kah. (Majorca and Minorca were anciently named *Gymnasia*. The epithet *major*, the "greater," was given to one, while that of *minor*, the "less," was applied to the other.)
 Malabar, mä-lä-har'.
 Malacca, mä-lak'kah.
 Malaga, mä-lä-gah.
 Malaya, mah-lay'she-ah.
 Maldivé, mal'dive. ("Thousand Isles.")
 Malta, maw'l'tah.
 Namoro, mah-mo-ray'.
 Manaar, mah-nar'.
 Manheim, mah-hime.
 Manila, mä-ni'l'tah.
 Manitouline, mah-e-too-leen'.
 Manitowoc, man-e-to-wok'.
 Mantehoorla, mannt-choo're-ah.
 Mantua, man'tü-ah.

Philadelphia, fil-ä-del-fe-ah. ("City of brotherly love.")
 Philippine, fil'lip-pia.
 Philippiopolis, fil-llp-pop'o-lia.
 Phoenix, fe'nix.
 Piacenza, pe-ah-chen'zah.
 Piacina, pe-ah-se'nah.
 Pichiocha, pe-chie'chah.
 Picolata, pik-o-lay'tah.
 Piedmont, peed'mont. ("Foot of the mountain.")
 Pileomayo, pil-ko-m'fo.
 Piaaleña, pe-nah-lay'nah.
 Piqua, pik'wab, or pik'way.
 Pisa, pe'zab.
 Piscataqua, pis-kat'ä-kway.
 Piscataquis, pis-kat'ä-kwis.
 Pisnerga, pe-swer'gah.
 Pittsburgh, pits'burg.
 Plaquemine, plak-meen'.
 Plymouth, plim'üth.
 Podesti, po-des'te.
 Poitiers, poi-teerz'.
 Poland. ("Flat land.")
 Policastro, po-le-kahs'tro.
 Polynesia, pol-e-ne'sho-ah. ("Many islands.")
 Ponce, pon'say.
 Pondicherry, pon-de-shör're.
 Pongo, pong'go.
 Pontchartrain, pon-shar-trayn'.
 Pontiac, pon'te-ak.
 Popayaa, po-pi-ahn'.
 Popocatepetl, po-po-kah-tah-pet'l'. ("Smoking mountain.")
 Porogos, po-rön-goc'e.
 Portalegre, por-tah-lay'gray.
 Port au Prince, pört-ö-prins'.
 Port Mahon, pört-mä-höwn'.
 Porto Imperial, por'to eem-pay-re-ahl'.
 Porto Rico, por'to re'ko. ("Rich harbor.")
 Porto Vecchio, por'to vek'ke-o. ("Old harbor.")
 Portsmouth, pörts'müth.
 Portugal, pört'yoo-gal.
 Posea, po'zen.
 Potomac, po-to'mak.
 Potosi, po-to'se, or po-to-se'.
 Poughkeepsie, po-kip'se.
 Paultney, pötl'ne.
 Powhatan, pöw-ä-tan'.
 Poyang, po yahng'.
 Praga, prah'gah.
 Prague, prsig.
 Prairie du Chien, pray're doo-sheen'. ("Dog meadow.")
 Pregel, pray'ghel.
 Pres'burg.
 Presidio del Norte, pray-se'de-o del nor'tay.
 Presque Isle, presk-eel'. (A "peninsula.")
 Primero, pre-may'ro. ("First.")
 Prip'et.
 Privas, pre-vahs'.
 Prussia, prush'yah.
 Puebla, pweb'lah. ("Town," or "village.")
 Pueblo, pweb'lo.
 Puerto Principe, pwër'to preen'se-pay. ("Prince's port," or "chief gate.")
 Punjab'.
 Punta Arenas, poon'tah ah-ray'nahs.
 Purissima, poo-rees'se-mah.
 Purus, poo'roos.
 Pyrenees, pli'en-eenz.

Q.

Quebec, kwe-bek'. (The "narrows.")
 Queretaro, kay-ray-tah'ro.
 Quesaltenango, kay-sahl-tay-nahn'go.
 Quilon, ke'lo-ah.
 Quimper, käm-pair'.
 Quincy, kwln'se.
 Quincebaug, kwln-ne-bawg'.
 Quito, ke'to.

R.

Rabatt, rah-bah't'.
 Racine, rah-seen'.
 Radack, rah'dahk.
 Ragusa, rah-goo'sah.
 Raleigh, raw'le.
 Ralick, rah'lik.
 Rangoon, rang-gooon'.
 Rapida, rap-id-an'.
 Rappahan'cock.
 Raritan, rar'e-tün.
 Rat'isboa.
 Ravenna, rah-ven'nah.
 Reading, red'ing.
 Recife, ray-se'fay.
 Refnaes, ref'nesa.
 Reggio, red'jo.
 Reikiavik, ri'ke-ah-vik. ("Steamtown.")
 Rendsburg, rends'böörög.
 Rennes, ren.
 Requeña, ray-kayn'yah.
 Resen, ray'zen.
 Rens, ray'ooco.
 Rev'el.
 Revillagigedo, ray-veel'yah-ho-hay'do.
 Rhelmis, reemz.
 Rhine, rine.
 Rhode Island, rode'f'land.
 Rhodes, rödz.
 Rhodope, rö'do-pe.
 Rhone, rone.
 Ribe, re'bëh.
 Richelieu, re-shë-lü'.
 Rideau, re-do'.
 Riga, re'gah.
 Rio del Norte, re'o del nor'tay. ("River of the north.")
 Rio Grande, re'o grahn'day. ("Great river.")
 Rio Janeiro, ri'o jä-ne'ro. (Rio de Janeiro, "river of January." The place having been discovered in January, this name was given afterwards both to the city and the river.)
 Rioja, re-o'hah.
 Rio Negro, re'o nay'gro. ("Black river.")
 Roanoke, ro-an-oke'.
 Rochelle, ro-shel'.
 Rochester, retch'es-ter.
 Romagna, ro-mahn'yah.
 Romania, ro-mah'oe-ah.
 Romanos, ro-mah'noce.
 Rome. (Named from Romulus, its founder.)
 Roscom'mon.
 Rot'terdam. (Name derived from a "dam of the Rotte," a little river which runs through the city.)
 Ronen, ro'en.
 Roxo, rö'ho.
 Rügen, re'ghen.
 Ruskas Poyana, rus'kah po-yah'nah.
 Russels, rush'yah.

S.

Sabine, sah-been'.
 Sable, say'b'l.
 Saco, saw'ko.
 Sacramento, sak-rah-men'to.
 Sadão, sah-döw'no'.
 Saghalien, sah-gah-le'en.
 Sagüaw, sag'e-naw.
 Sagua la Grande, sah'gwah lah grahn'day.
 Saguenay, sah-g-e-nay'.
 Sahara, sä-hay'rah. (A "desert.")
 Saigon, si-göwn'.
 Salado, sah-lah'do. ("Salt.")
 Salamanea, sah-lah-mahng'kah.
 Sa'lern.
 Saiford, sawl'fürd.
 Safina (U. S.), sä-li'nah.
 Salinas, sah-lo'nahs.
 Salisbury, sawlz'ber-re.

Sallee, sahl-lay'.
 Salonica, sah-lo-ne'kah.
 Saultillo, sä-til'lo.
 Saluda, sä-loo'dah.
 Salween, sahl-wen'.
 Salzburg, sahlts'böörög.
 Samara, sah-mah-rah'.
 Samarang, sah-mah-rahng'.
 Samarcand, sah-mar-kahnd'.
 Samos, say'mos.
 Saaa, sah-nah'.
 San Diego, sahn de-ay'go.
 San Dominguez, sabn-dö-me-airzh.
 Sandusky, san-dus'ke.
 Sandwich, sand'witch.
 San Felipe, sahn fe-le'pay.
 San Francis'co.
 Saugamon, san'gä-mon.
 Saugar, sahn-gar'.
 San Joaquin, sahn ho-ah-keen'.
 San José, sahn ho-say'.
 San Juan, sahn hoe-ahn'.
 San Juan Bautista, sahn hoo-ahn' böw-tees'tah.
 San Lucas, sahn loo'kahs.
 San Luis de Potosi, sahn loo'is day po-to-se'.
 San Marino, sahn mah-re'no.
 San Miguel, sahn me-gbel'.
 San Saba, sahn sah'bah.
 San Salvador, sahn sahl-vah-dore'. ("Holy Saviour.")
 San Sebastian, sahn say-bahs-te-ahn'.
 Santa Cruz, sahn'tah krooss. ("Holy cross.")
 Santa Fé, sahn'tah fay. ("Holy faith.")
 Santa Maura, sahn'tah mäw'rah.
 Saatander, saa-tan'der, or sahn-tahn-dair'.
 Saatarem, sahn-lah-reng'.
 Santiago, sahn-te-ah'go. ("Saint James.")
 Santiago de Cuba, sahn-te-ah'go day koo'bah.
 Santorini, sahn-to-re'ne.
 São Felipe de Benguela, söw'no fay-le'pay day ben-gay'lah.
 Saone, sone.
 São João, söw'no zhöw'no'.
 São Paulo, söw'no pöw'lo.
 Saragossa, sah-rah-gos'sah.
 Sranac, sär-ä-nak'.
 Sarasu, sah-rah-soo'.
 Saratoga, sär-ä-to'gah.
 Sarawak, sah-rah-wahk'.
 Sardinia, sar-din'yah.
 Saskatchewan, sas-katch'ä-wön. ("Swift current.")
 Sassari, sahs'sah-re.
 Saugerties, saw'ger-teez.
 Saut de St. Marie, so deh sahno mah-re'.
 Saut St. Marie, soo sent may're.
 Save, sahv.
 Saxony, sax'o-ne.
 Scandinavian, skan-de-nay've-an.
 Scheldt, skelt, or sheld.
 Schemnitz, shem'nits.
 Schenectady, sken-ek'tä-de.
 Schoodic, skoo'dik.
 Schuyler, ski'ler.
 Schuyllkill, skool'kil. (It is said that the first explorers of the Delaware River passed the mouth of the Schuyllkill without observing it: hence its name, signifying "hidden creek.")
 Schwerin, shway-rsen'.
 Scio, she'o, or si'o.
 Seloto, si-o'to.
 Seitate, si'tyoo-ate.
 Scot'land.
 Scutari, skoo'tah-re.
 Searcy, ser'se.
 Sebas'ticook.
 Sehaatopol, seb-as-to'pol.
 Secundo, say-koon'do. ("Second.")
 Segovia, se-go've-ah.
 Segre, say'gray.

Segura, say-goo'rah.
 Selae, sayn, or sen.
 Sena, say'nah.
 Seneca, sen'e-kah.
 Senegal, sen-e-gawl'.
 Senegambia, sen-e-gam'be-ah. (Named from the two large rivers which flow through the country,—viz., the Senegal and the Gambia.)
 Sennaar, sen-nar'.
 Senae, sen'neh.
 Seres, sür'es.
 Sereth, say-ret'.
 Sergipe del Rey, sér-zhe'pay del ray.
 Servia, ser've-ah.
 Seshoke, say-shay'kay.
 Severo Vostochnoi, say-ray'ro vos-tok'noy.
 Sevier, sev-er'.
 Seville, sev'il, or se-vil'.
 Seychelle, say-sheel'.
 Shanghai, shang-hi'.
 Shan'non.
 Sheboy'gan.
 Sheffield, shef'feeld.
 Shenandoah, shen-an-do'ah.
 Shilinks, shil-looks'.
 Shiraz, she-rahz'.
 Shrewsbury, shroze'ber-re, or shrooz'ber-re.
 Shuia, shoo'yah.
 Shumla, shoom'lah.
 Siberia, si-be're-ah.
 Sicily, sis'il-e.
 Sierra, se-er'rah. (Sierra literally means a "saw," and is applied to a mountain-range, because at a distance it presents a notched appearance like the teeth of a saw.)
 Sierra Estrella, se-er'rah es-trel'yah.
 Sierra Leone, se-er'rah le-o'ne. ("Lion mountains.")
 Sierra Madre, se-er'rah mah'dray. ("Mother mountains.")
 Sierra Morena, se-er'rah mo-ray'nah. ("Brown mountains.")
 Sierra Nevada, se-er'rah nay-vah'dah. ("Snow mountains.")
 Sihon, se-hon'.
 Sikoke, se-ko'ke'.
 Silan, se-lahn'.
 Silesiria, sil-is'tre-ah.
 Simferopol, sim-fer-o'pol.
 Simoda, se-mo'dah.
 Sinai, si'nay, or si'nay-l.
 Sinaloa, sin-ah-lo'ah.
 Singapore, sing-gah-pore'. ("City of lions.")
 Siout, se-oot'.
 Sioux, soo.
 Sisal, se-sahl'.
 Siwah, se'wah.
 Skager Rack, skah-gher-rahk'. ("Crooked strait of Skagen.")
 Skowhegan, sko-be'gan.
 Skyros, ske'ros.
 Sles'wick.
 Sli'go.
 Slout, sloot.
 Smolensk'.
 Smyrna, smir'nah.
 Socouusco, so-ko-noos'ko.
 Socorro, so-ko-ro'.
 Socotra, sok'o-trah.
 Sofala, so-fah'lah. (Supposed to be the "Ophi" of Scripture.)
 Sokoto, sok-o-to'.
 Somalia, so-maw'le.
 Sombereete, som-bray-ray'tay.
 Sombrero, som-bray'ro.
 Somme, som.
 Songari, son-gah're.
 Sonora, so-no'rah.
 Sooloo, soo-loo'.
 Soongaria, soon-gay're-ah.
 Sophia, so-fe'ah.
 Sorata, so-rah'tah.

Sorel, so-rel'.
 Sorla, so're-ah.
 Soudan, soo-dan'. (Caled-es-Soudan, "land of the blacks.")
 Southampton, sahh-amp'tun.
 Spa, spaw.
 Spartel, spar-tel'.
 Spezia, sped'ze-ah.
 Spitzbergen, spite-berg'en.
 Spree, spray.
 Squillace, skwil-lah'chay.
 Stanovoi, stah-no-voy'.
 Sta. Maria, sahn'tah mä-re'rah.
 St. Augustine, sent-aw-gus-teen'.
 Staunton, stan'tün.
 St. Blas, sent-blahs'.
 St. Croix, sent-kroy'.
 St. Domingo, sent-de-ming'go.
 Stellacoom, sti-lah-koom'.
 St. Elias, sent-e-li'as.
 St. Etienne, saxt-ay-te-en'.
 Stettin, stet-teen'.
 Steubenville, stoo'ben-vil.
 St. Genevieve, sent-jeu-e-veev'.
 St. Helena, sent-hel-e-nah.
 St. Hellers, sent-hel'yers.
 St. Lawrence, sent-law'rensa.
 St. Lazaro, sent-lah'zah-ro.
 St. Louis, sent-loo'is.
 St. Malo, sent mah'lo.
 Stock'holm.
 Stolpenünde, stol'pëh-meer-dëh.
 St. Pierre, saxg pe-air'.
 St. Quentin, saxg köno-taxo'.
 Strabane, strä-ban'.
 Stralsund, strahl'söönt.
 Stras'burg.
 Strelitz, stray'litz.
 Stromboli, strom'bo-le.
 St. Ubes, sent-yoobz'.
 Stutt'gard.
 Suaken, swah'ken.
 Sucluil, soo-cheel'.
 Suere, soo'kray. (Formerly Chuquisaca, choo-ke-sah'kah.)
 Sudetic, soo-det'ik.
 Suez, soo'ez.
 Suir, shoör.
 Sumatra, soo-mah'trah.
 Sumbawa, soom-baw'wah.
 Sumburgh, sum'bür-rüh.
 Sunda, sun'dah.
 Surat, soo-rah't'.
 Susquehanna, süs-kwe-han'nah.
 Sutlege, sut'lej.
 Suwane, soo-waw'ne.
 Swanssea, swon'se.
 Swstow, swah-töw'.
 Swe'den.
 Swit'zerland.
 Sydney, sid'ne.
 Syra, se'rah.
 Syracuse, sir'ä-küze.
 Syria, sir're-ah. (From the Greek *suria*, a contraction of *Assuria*,—i.e. the land of Assur, the son of Shem.)
 Szamos, söh-mosh'.
 Szegedin, seg'ed-in.

T.

Tabasco, tah-bahs'ko.
 Tabreez, tah-breez'.
 Tacazze, tah-kalt'say. (The "terrible" from its numerous cataracts.)
 Taflelt, tah-fe-let'.
 Tagus, tay'gus.
 Tahiti, tah-be'te.
 Tahlequah, tah'le-kwah.
 Tai-yuen, ti-yoo-en'.
 Talavera, tah-lah-vay'rah.
 Tallabuana, tahl-kah-wah'nah.
 Talladega, tä-lä-de'gah.
 Tallahassee, tä-lä-has'se.
 Tallapoosa, tä-lä-poo'sah.
 Tamatave, tah-mah-tal'vay.
 Tamaulipas, tah-möw-le'paha.
 Tampico, tahm-pe'ko.

Tanaro, tah-nah'ro.
 Taoganyika, tahn-gaha-ye'kah.
 Tangier, tahn-jeer'.
 Taosa, tah'ose.
 Tapajos, tah-pah'zhoce.
 Taranto, tah'rahn-to.
 Tarazona, tah-rah-tho'nah.
 Tarbes, tarb.
 Tarija, tah-re'bah.
 Tarnopol, tar-no'poi.
 Tarragona, tar-rah-go'nah.
 Tartary, tar'tah-re.
 Tasmacia, taz-nay'ne-ah.
 Taudeny, tow-day-ne'.
 Taunton, tan'tun.
 Taurus, tau'rus.
 Tchad, chahd.
 Tcherkasi, chër-knh'se.
 Tchernigov, chër'ne-gov.
 Tchernowitz, chër'no-vitz.
 Tchiao-tou, chin-too'.
 Tchoul, choo'e.
 Tchoulikova, chool-ko'vah.
 Teentsio, te-en-tseen'.
 Teheran, tëh-her-ahn'.
 Tehuanatepec, tay-wahn-tay-pek'.
 Teify, ti'va.
 Temeavar, tem-esh-var'.
 Teneriffe, ten-er-if'.
 Teoueseec, teu-nes-so'.
 Tepefeli, tay-pay-lay'na.
 Tepic, tay-pek'.
 Terceira, tër-say'e-rah. ("Third.")
 Terra del Fuego, tër'rah del fü'e-go.
 ("Land of fire." This island was discovered, in 1520, by Magellan, and so named by him on account of the number of fires he saw along the coast, which he supposed to be the eruptions of volcanoes.)
 Terra Nova, tër'rah no'vah. ("New land.")
 Terre Haute, tër-rèh-hotè'. ("High land.")
 Tetas, tay'tahs.
 Tete, tay'tay.
 Toulada, tay-oo-lah'dah.
 Texas, tay'as.
 Tex'el.
 Thames, temz.
 Thebes, theebz.
 Theiss, tice.
 Thian-Shan, te-ahn-shahn'. ("Celestial mountains.")
 Thibet, tib'et. (One of its native appellations signifies the "snowy region of the north.")
 Thibodeaux, tib-o-do'.
 Thorn, torn.
 Thur, tur.
 Ti'ber. (This river was originally called *Albula*, from the clearness of its waters, and afterwards *Tiberis*, from Tiberinus, King of Alba, who was drowned there.)
 Tibesty, te-bee-te'.
 Tiburon, te-boo-röwn'.
 Ticao, te-che'no.
 Ticonderoga, ti-kon-de-ro'gah.
 Tiete, te-ay'tay.
 Tif'lis, or Tef'lia.
 Tig'ris.

Timbuctoo, tim-buk'too.
 Timor, te-more'.
 Timoriaut, te-mör-löwt'.
 Tioga, ti-o'gah.
 Tippecanoe, tip-pe-kä-noo'.
 Titicaca, te-te-kah'kah.
 Tobago, to-bah'go.
 Tobique, to-beek'.
 Tobolsk, to-bolek'.
 Tocantine, to-kahn-teens'.
 Toledo, to-le'do.
 Telosa, to-lo'sah.
 Tomblighy, tom-big'be.
 Tonawanda, ton-a-wön'dah.
 Tongoy, ton-go'e.
 Tonquin, ton-keen'.
 Toole, too-e'le.
 Topeka, to-pe'kah.
 Tormes, tor'mes.
 Toronto, to-ron'to.
 Tor'rid. (*Torrid*, "hot," from *torreo*, to "roast." This term is applied to one of the zones, viz. that lying between the tropics, on account of the extreme heat which prevails here.)
 Tortugas, tor-too'gaz. (So named from the quantity of tortoises seen there. *Tortuga* means "tortoises.")
 Touion, too-löw'o'.
 Toulouse, too-looz'.
 Tournay, toor-nay'.
 Tours, toor.
 Towanda, to-wön'dah.
 Trafalgar, traf-al-gar'.
 Trausylvania, tran-sil-vay'ne-ah. (This name was given by the Hungarians; Transylvania signifying the "country beyond the woods,"—i.e. the extensive woody mountains which separate this province from Hungary.)
 Treas Vaal, trah-us-vahl'.
 Trebizond, treh'e-zond.
 Tremoli, tren'o-je.
 Tren'ton.
 Tres Columnas, trës-ko-foo'nahs.
 Tres Montes, trës-mon'tes.
 Treves, treevz.
 Trieste, tre-est'.
 Trinidad, trin-c-dad'. ("Trinity.")
 Tripoli, trip'o-le. ("Three cities." Three large towns formerly occupied the site of the present Tripoli.)
 Tripolizza, tre-po-lit'sah.
 Trop'ica. (Derived from the Greek *trepō*, "to turn," because the sun in his annual course—the ecliptic—turns when he reaches the signs of Cancer and Capricorn. The term "tropical" is applied to every thing produced indigenously within those two circles, or, in other words, within the Torrid zone.)
 Troyes, trwah.
 Truxillo, troo-beel'yo.
 Tsadda, t'sad'dah.
 Tuaricks, too-ah-reeks'.
 Tuat, too-ah't'.
 Tubac, too-bahk'.
 Tucson, took-sons'.
 Tucuman, too-koe-mahn'.
 Tula, too'lah.
 Tula, too'lay. (A "bulrush.")

Tunguragua, toong-goo-rah'gwah.
 Tunis, too'nia.
 Turin, too'rin.
 Turkestan, toor-kee-tahn'. ("Country of the Turks.")
 Turkey, tur'ke.
 Tuscafoosa, tus-kä-foo'sah.
 Tuscany, tus'kä-ne.
 Tuxpan, toos-pahn'.
 Tyrol, tir'roi.

U.

Uanpea, wöw'pëa.
 Ubeda, oo-bay'uhah.
 Ucayale, oo-ki-ah'lay.
 Uist, wis't.
 Ujein, oo-jano'.
 Umbagog, um-bay'gog.
 Umaa, oo'may-o.
 Umpqua, ump'kwah.
 Ungava, ung-gah'vah.
 Uniamet, oo-ee-ah-may'se.
 Upernavik, oo'per-nah-vik.
 Up'sal.
 Ural, yoo'ral.
 Urbana, ur-ban'nah.
 Ures, oo'rës.
 Uroa, oo'roce.
 Uruguay, oo-roo-gwi'.
 Ush'ant.
 Utah, yoo'taw.
 Utica, yoo'te-kah.
 Utrecht, yoo'trekt.
 Utrera, oo-tray'rah.

V.

Vaigatch, vi-gatch'.
 Valdal, vah'di.
 Valdivia, vah-de-ve-ah. ("Rich valley.")
 Valence, vah-löns'.
 Valencia, vah-len'che-ah.
 Valenciennes, vah-löng-se-en'.
 Valladolid, val-lä-do-lid'.
 Valparaiso, vah-pah-ri'so. ("Vale of paradise.")
 Valverde, väl-ver'de.
 Vancouver, van-koo'ver.
 Vannes, vahn.
 Vanua Levu, vah-noo'ah lay'voo.
 Vaudreuil, vo-druil'.
 Veils, vi'lëh.
 Venaugo, ve-nang'go.
 Vendée, vöng-day'.
 Venetia, ven-e'she-ah.
 Venezuela, ven-ee-we'lah. ("Little Venice." So called by the Spaniards because they found some Indian villages built on piles in Lake Maracaybo, reminding them of the mode of building in Venice.)
 Venice, ven'isa.
 Vera Cruz, vay'rah kroos. (The "true cross.")
 Verd (Cape). ("Green" cape.)
 Vermejo, vär-may'bo. ("Vermilion.")
 Vermont'. ("Green mountains.")
 Veronah, vay-ro'nah.
 Verailles, ver-sayiz'.
 Vesoul, vëh-zool'.
 Vesuvius, ve-soo've-us.
 Vevay, ve-vay'.
 Vicks'burg.

Victoria, vik-to're-ah.
 Vienna, ve-en'nah.
 Vienne, ve-en'.
 Vigo, ve'go.
 Vilaine, ve-layn'.
 Villa del Fuerte, veel'yah del fwer'tay.
 Villa Real, vil'lah ray-ahl'.
 Villa Rica, vil'lah re'kah.
 Vindhya, vind'yah.
 Virgenea, veer-hay'nës.
 Virginia, vir-jin'e-ah. (So named in honor of the maiden queen of England, Elizabeth.)
 Visa, ve'sah.
 Visou, ve'say-oo.
 Vistula, vis'tü-lah.
 Viterbo, ve-tër'bo.
 Viti Levu, ve'te lay'voo.
 Vitoria, ve-to're-ah.
 Volcano, vol-kay'no. (Name derived from *Vulcanus*, "Vulcan," the god of fire. According to the ancients, his forges were under Mount Etna, as well as under every other burning mountain: hence the name.)
 Volga, vol'gah.
 Voages, vözh.

W.

Waag, wahg.
 Wabash, waw'bash.
 Wabashaw, waw'baah-shaw.
 Wabembe, wah-hem'bay.
 Wachusett, waw-choo'set.
 Waco, way'ko.
 Waday, wah'di.
 Waimate, wi-mah'tay.
 Wales, wallz. (Derived from *Gallia*, the Welsh being considered a remnant of the ancient Gauls.)
 Wallachia, waw-lay'ke-ah.
 Wallcoatook, wöl-foo-stook'.
 Walwisch, wahl'vish.
 Wapsipin'econ.
 War'aw.
 Wartha, war'tah.
 Wasatch, wah-satch'.
 Washington, wösh'ing-tün.
 Washita, wösh'e-taw.
 Waukegan, waw-ke'gan.
 Waukesha, waw'ke-shaw.
 Weimar, wi'mar.
 Wener, way'ner.
 Werschitz, wër'kita.
 We'ser.
 Wetumpka, wo-tum'kah.
 Weymouth, way'muth.
 Wieliczka, v'yay-litsh'kah.
 Wiesbaden, wees'bah-den.
 Wight, wite.
 Wilkesbarre, wilks'bär-ro.
 Willamette, wil-lah'met.
 Wil'mington.
 Winnebago.
 Winnebigoishah, win-no-be-go'shiah.
 Win'ipeg.
 Winnipegooa, win-ne-pe-goose'.
 Winnipicogee, win-ne-pe-sok's.
 ("Beautiful lake among the highlands," or, "smile of the Great Spirit.")

Wloona, we-no'nah.
 Winooski, we-noos'ko.
 Wisconsin.
 Wit'tenberg.
 Woolwich, wööl'ich, or wöö'l'ij.
 Woonsocket, wöön-sok'et.
 Worcester, wöös'ter.
 Wot'chiah.
 Wurtemberg, wur'tem-berg.
 Wyoming, wi-o'ming.

X.

Xarayee, ahah-ri'se.
 Xenia, zeen'e-ah.
 Xeres, hay-rës'.
 Xingu, shing'go'.
 Xucar, hoo'kar.

Y.

Yablonoj, yah-blo-noy'. ("Mountains of apples.")
 Yad'kia.
 Yakoutsck, yah-kootsk'.
 Yang-tse-Kiang, yahng-tse-ke-ahng'. ("Blue river." Called sometimes Ta Kiang,—i.e. "great river,"—the largest river in China. It is called, poetically, the "Son of the sea.")
 Yaqui, yah-ke'.
 Yarkaud'.
 Yarmouth, yar'muth.
 Yazoo, yä-zoo'.
 Yed'co.
 Yem'en.
 Yenisei, yen-e-say'o.
 Yeniseisk, yen-e-say'isk.
 Yonne, yon.
 Youcon, yoo-köwn'.
 Youghall, yöh'hil.
 Ypsilanti, ip-se-an'ta.
 Yucatan, yoo-kah-tahn'.
 Yuma, yoo'mah.
 Yuthia, yoo'the-ah.

Z.

Zacatecas, sah-kah-tay'kahs.
 Zacatula, sah-kah-too'lah.
 Zaizan, zi-zahn'.
 Zambesi, zahm-bay'ze.
 Zamora, sah-mo'rah.
 Zanguebar, zang-gay-bar'.
 Zante, zah'nt.
 Zanzibar, zah-zo-bar'.
 Zara, zah'rah.
 Zealand, ze'land. ("Sea-land.")
 Zhehol, zhay-hol'.
 Zone. (From the Greek *zonë*, a "girdle." In Geography we understand zone to signify a division of the earth: i.e. the earth is said to be divided into five zones or portions, such as five equally sized belts or girdles would completely encircle.)
 Zuñi, zoon-yo'.
 Zurich, zoo'rik.
 Zutphen, zut'fen.
 Zuyder Zee, zee'ze'. ("South sea." In contradistinction to the North Sea, with which it is connected.)
 Zwollendam, zwel-len-dahm'.
 Zwoile, zwöl'lëh.
 Zytomir, zhit-o-meer'.

GEOGRAPHICAL AND STATISTICAL TABLES.

DIMENSIONS OF THE EARTH.

	Miles.
Polar Diameter	7,899
Equatorial Diameter	7,925
Equatorial Circumference	24,899

SURFACE OF THE EARTH.

The area of the entire surface of the globe is estimated at nearly 200,000,000 square miles; of which, a little more than 50,000,000 miles are land, and somewhat less than 150,000,000 are water.

AREA OF THE LAND-SURFACE OF THE GLOBE.

	Square Miles.
Eastern Continent	31,000,000
Western Continent	13,750,000
Australia, Greenland, and other islands	5,250,000
Total	50,000,000

AREAS OF THE PRINCIPAL ISLANDS.

AMERICA.	
	Square Miles.
Greenland	720,000
Newfoundland	50,000
Cuba	36,000
Iceland	40,000
Hayti	29,000
Vancouver Island	13,500
Jamaica	5,500

EUROPE.	
	Square Miles.
Great Britain	87,000
Ireland	32,000
Sicily	10,500
Sardinia	9,300

ASIA.	
	Square Miles.
Nippon	109,000
Jesso	62,000
Seghalien	47,000
Kiusiu	28,300
Ceylon	25,000
Sikoce	21,200
Formosa	15,000

AFRICA.	
	Square Miles.
Madagascar	225,000

OCEANICA.	
	Square Miles.
Australia	3,120,000
Borneo	300,000
Papua, or New Guinea	260,000
Sumatra	150,000
New Zealand	95,000
Celebes	70,000
Luzon	56,600
Java	50,000
Mindanao	35,000
Tasmania	28,000
Hawaii	4,000

AREA OF THE WATER-SURFACE OF THE EARTH.

	Square Miles.
Pacific Ocean	83,000,000
Atlantic Ocean	30,000,000
Indian Ocean	21,000,000
Antarctic Ocean	13,000,000
Arctic Ocean	3,000,000
Total	150,000,000

ESTIMATED AREAS OF SOME OF THE PRINCIPAL LAKES.

	Square Miles.
Caspian Sea	145,000
Sea of Aral	30,000
Lake Superior	31,500
Lake Michigan	23,150
Lake Huron	23,100
Lake Baikal	14,000
Great Slave Lake	11,800
Lake Erie	7,800
Lake Ontario	6,900
Lake Winnipeg	6,500
Lake Ladoga	6,190
Lake Nicaragua	4,000
Lake Titicaca	4,000
Great Salt Lake	1,875

HEIGHTS OF SOME OF THE PRINCIPAL MOUNTAIN-PEAKS OF THE GLOBE.

NORTH AMERICA.	
	Feet.
Mount St. Elias, Russian America	17,860
Popocatepetl, Mexico	17,717
Mount Brown, Rocky Mountains	16,000
Sierra Nevada, California	15,500
Mount Hood, Oregon Territory	14,900
Fremont's Peak, Rocky Mountains	13,470
Long's Peak, Rocky Mountains	12,500
Pike's Peak, Rocky Mountains	12,000
Clingman's Peak, (highest land east of the Mississippi)	6,940
Mount Mitchell, North Carolina	6,470
Mount Washington, White Mountains, New Hampshire	6,234
Mount Tahawus, or Marcy, New York	5,300

SOUTH AMERICA.	
	Feet.
Aconcagua, Chili	23,910
Chimborazo, Ecuador	21,420
Sorata, Bolivia	21,286
Itamba, Brazil	5,755

EUROPE.	
	Feet.
Elbruz, (highest of the Caucasus Mountains,) Russia	17,776
Mont Blanc, (highest of the Alps,)	15,668
Mount Maladetta, (highest of the Pyrenees,)	11,436
Mount Scardus, (highest of the Balkan Mount's,) Turkey	10,000
Konjakofski-Kamen, Ural Mountains, Russia	5,397
Ben Nevis, (highest of the Granpian Mount's,) Scotland	4,368
Snowdon (highest mountain in Wales,)	3,571

ASIA.	
	Feet.
Everest, Himalaya Mountains, (highest in the world,)	29,100
Kanchingga, Himalaya Mountains	28,176
Dhawalagiri, Himalaya Mountains	28,000
Hindoo Koosh, Cabul	20,000
Mount Ararat, Turkey in Asia	17,216
Mount Lebanon, Syria, Jeb-el-Makmel	12,000
Mount Olympus, Turkey in Asia	9,100
Mount Sinai, Arabia	7,497

AFRICA.	
	Feet.
Mount Kilimandjaro	20,000
Mount Kenia	20,000
Abba Yared, Abyssinia	15,300
Piton des Neiges, Isle of Bourbon	12,500
Peak of Teneriffe, Canary Islands	12,182
Mount Miltan, (highest of the Atlas Mount's,) Morocco	11,400
Snow Mountains, Cape Colony	10,000
Peak of Pico, Azores	7,613

OCEANICA.	
	Feet.
Mount Ophir, Sumatra	13,842
Semero Mountain, Island of Java	13,000
Mount Grohena, Society Islands	8,500
Mount Kosciusko, New South Wales	6,500
Mount Humboldt, Tasmania	5,520

ELEVATIONS OF SEVERAL ACTIVE VOLCANOES

	Feet.
Aconcagua, Chili	23,910
Gualateiri, Peru	22,000
Arequipa, Peru	20,320
Cotopaxi, Ecuador	18,875
Tolima, New Grenada	18,020
Popocatepetl, Mexico	17,717
Pichincha, Ecuador	15,924
St. Helens, United States	13,300
Mauna Loa, Sandwich Islands	13,120
Erebus, Antarctic Land	12,400
Etna, Sicily	10,874
Hecla, Iceland	5,110
Souffriere, Guadalupe (W. I.)	5,108
Morne Garon, St. Vincent's, West India Islands	5,007
Jorullo, Mexico	4,265
Vesuvius, Naples, Italy	3,948

LENGTHS OF THE PRINCIPAL RIVERS IN THE WORLD.

NORTH AMERICA.	
	Miles.
Missouri, to its junction with the Mississippi	2,900
Missouri to the sea, forming the longest river in the world	4,100
Mississippi proper	2,800
Mackenzie	2,500
St. Lawrence	2,200
Arkansas	2,000
Rio Grande	1,800
Kwchupuk	1,600
Saskatchewan and Nelson	1,600
Columbia	1,200
Nebraska	1,200
Red River	1,200
Colorado, in California	1,100
Yellow Stone	1,000
Ghio	950
Kansas	900
Tennessee	800
Fraser	750

	Miles.
Red River of the North	700
Colorado, in Texas	650
Brazos	650
Wisconsin	600
Cumberland	600
Alabama	600
Wabash	600
Apalachicola and Chattahoochee	550
Sisquahanna	500
Potomac	500
James	500
Roanoke	500
Savannah	500
St. John, New Brunswick	450
Connecticut	450
Great Pedes	450
Trinity	450
Great Whale	400
Delaware	400
Altamaha	400
Sacramento	400
Penobscot	350
Hudson	350
Cape Fear	350
Pearl	350
Nueces	350
Sabine	350
Severn	300
Kennebec	300

SOUTH AMERICA.	
	Miles.
Amazon	3,600
Rio de La Plata, (including the Parana,)	2,250
Madeira	2,000
Orinoco	1,500
St. Francisco	1,300
Tocantins and Araguay	1,100
Colorado	1,000
Rio Negro	1,000
Magdalena	900
Parnaiba	900

EUROPE.	
	Miles.
Volga	2,000
Danube	1,600
Don	1,000
Dnieper	1,000
Rhine	950
Dwina	700
Petchora	600
Elbe	600
Loire	600
Vistula	550
Tagus	550
Dalester	500
Guadiana	500
Oder	450
Douro	450
Rhone	450
Po	450
Seine	450
Mezens	400
Desna	400
Bog	400
Guadalquivir	400
Duna	350
Niemien	350
Ebro	350
Dabl	300
Bug	300
Wezer	300
Garonne	300
Thames	223

ASIA.	
	Miles.
Yang-tse-Kiang	2,800
Leua	2,400
Ob	2,500
Hoang-Ho	2,500
Yenisei	2,300
Amoor	2,200
Cambodia	2,000
Indus	1,700
Irrawaddy	1,700
Ganges	1,500
Brahmaputra	1,500
Euphrates	1,400
Amoo, or Oxus	900
Satwen	900
Tigris	800
Nerbudah	800
Meinam	800

AFRICA.	
	Miles.
Nile	3,000
Niger, or Joliba	2,600
Zambesi	1,800
Senegal	1,200
Orange	1,000
Gambia	700

OCEANICA.	
	Miles.
Murray	1,300

AREAS AND POPULATIONS OF THE DIFFERENT COUNTRIES OF THE GLOBE.

	Sq. Miles.	Population.		Sq. Miles.	Population.	RUSSIAN EMPIRE IN DETAIL.	
NORTH AMERICA.			ASIA.				
Danish America { Greenland.....	720,000	9,000	Turkey.....	662,000	18,000,000		
{ Iceland.....	40,000	65,000	Russia in Asia.....	5,750,000	8,329,000		
British America.....	2,816,760	3,485,000	Turkestan.....	640,000	6,500,000		
United States (including Russian America).....	3,612,000	31,415,000	Chinese Empires.....	4,700,000	477,000,000		
Indians in the United States.....		400,000	Japan.....	1,156,000	35,000,000		
Mexico.....	668,000	8,218,000	Hindoostan, (including Ceylon).....	1,250,000	187,668,000		
Central America.....	200,000	2,162,000	Farther India.....	920,000	42,000,000		
West Indies.....	95,000	4,023,000	Afghanistan.....	350,000	6,000,000		
Total.....	8,152,760	49,777,000	Beloohistan.....	150,000	1,500,000		
			Persia.....	470,000	9,000,000		
			Arabia.....	1,200,000	8,000,000		
			Total.....	15,420,000	754,997,000		
SOUTH AMERICA.			AFRICA.				
Venezuela.....	410,000	1,565,000	Barbary.....	658,000	15,208,000		
United States of Colombia.....	460,000	2,363,000	Great Desert.....	2,600,000	300,000		
Peru.....	220,000	1,040,000	Egypt (including Nubia and Kordofan).....	500,000	5,125,000		
Bolivia.....	480,000	1,987,000	Abyssinia.....	250,000	3,000,000		
Pern.....	510,000	2,865,000	Eastern Africa.....	600,000	3,000,000		
Chill.....	250,000	1,676,000	Cape Colony and Natal.....	128,000	385,279		
Argentine Confederation and Buenos Ayres.....	900,000	1,172,000	Other countries of Southern Africa.....	200,000	100,000		
Uruguay.....	70,000	241,000	Western Africa.....	690,000	17,000,000		
Paraguay.....	75,000	1,337,000	Soudan.....	1,700,000	11,200,000		
Brazil.....	3,100,000	10,914,000	Ethiopia.....	3,000,000	3,000,000		
{ British.....	78,000	162,000	African Islands.....	230,000	5,100,000		
{ Dutch.....	60,000	57,000	Total.....	10,786,000	63,418,279		
{ French.....	35,000	25,000					
Patagonia and adjacent islands.....	350,000	120,000					
Total.....	6,936,000	24,624,000					
EUROPE.			OCEANIA.				
Russia in Europe.....	2,101,000	68,197,000	Australasia.....	3,120,000	1,400,000		
Austria.....	227,000	34,671,000	Australia.....	28,000	60,000		
France.....	212,000	37,472,000	Tasmania.....	95,000	100,000		
Turkey in Europe.....	207,000	15,500,000	New Zealand.....	350,000	600,000		
Spain.....	182,750	16,302,000	Papua, and other islands.....				
Sweden.....	168,000	3,860,000	Malaysia.				
Norway.....	121,000	1,434,000	Borneo.....	300,000	3,000,000		
Great Britain and Ireland.....	121,000	29,321,000	Sumatra.....	150,000	4,000,000		
Prussia.....	137,000	22,769,000	Java.....	50,000	9,530,781		
Italy.....	108,000	24,150,000	Philippine Islands.....	120,000	3,815,000		
Portugal.....	36,500	3,988,000	Celebes.....	70,000	2,000,000		
Denmark.....	14,500	1,608,000	Spice, and other islands.....	70,000	1,000,000		
Greece.....	19,950	1,332,000	Polynesia.				
Switzerland.....	15,230	2,534,000	Sandwich Islands.....	6,000	74,000		
The Netherlands.....	13,620	3,700,000	Other islands.....	144,000	370,000		
Belgium.....	11,313	4,895,000	Total.....	4,503,000	25,079,781		
Bavaria.....	29,320	4,807,000					
Wurtemberg.....	7,675	1,721,000					
Baden.....	5,904	1,435,000					
Saxony.....	5,770	2,837,000					
Mecklenburg.....	5,831	652,000					
Hesse-Darmstadt.....	2,853	807,000					
Saxe-Altenburg.....							
Saxe-Coburg-Gotha.....	3,698	740,000					
Saxe-Meiningen.....							
Saxe-Weimar-Eisenach.....							
Oldenburg.....	2,421	205,000					
Brunswick.....	1,531	282,000					
Nassau.....	2,751	457,000					
The Schwartzburg Principalities and Waldeck.....	1,160	254,910					
Anhalt.....	990	182,000					
Rouss-Heitz and Reuss-Schleitz.....	562	125,500					
Lippe-Deimold and Lippe-Schaumburg.....	645	137,000					
Lichtenstein.....	53	7,150					
Hamburg.....	151	208,000					
Lubeck.....	114	49,400					
Bremen.....	84	89,000					
Total.....	3,767,376	288,818,969					
RECAPITULATION.—POPULATION OF THE WORLD.							
	Sq. Miles.	Population.					
North America.....	8,152,000	49,777,000					
South America.....	6,936,000	24,624,000					
Europe.....	3,767,376	288,818,969					
Asia.....	15,420,000	754,997,000					
Africa.....	10,786,000	63,418,279					
Oceania.....	4,503,000	25,079,781					
Antarctic Lands.....	109,145						
Total.....	49,732,521	1,205,615,382					

	Sq. Miles.	Population.
Russia in Europe.....	2,101,000	68,197,000
Asiatic Russia.....	5,786,000	8,327,000
Total.....	7,887,000	77,524,000

	Sq. Miles.	Population.
Great Britain and Ireland.....	119,000	29,307,199
Ionian Islands, Malta, Gibraltar, &c.....	1,192	354,797
New Britain.....	5,125,000	158,000
British Columbia and Vancouver Island.....	2,154,500	89,000
Canada.....	210,000	607,000
New Brunswick.....	27,037	252,000
Nova Scotia and Cape Breton Island.....	18,800	336,000
Newfoundland and Prince Edward's Island.....	42,200	203,495
British West Indies.....	12,583	1,091,000
Honduras.....	13,500	25,639
British Guiana.....	76,000	155,000
British India, Aden, and Hong Kong.....	1,200,000	187,745,000
Cape Colony, Natal, and other African Possessions.....	138,000	953,000
Australia, Tasmania, New Zealand, &c.....	3,600,000	1,211,000
Total.....	7,210,812	222,382,130

	To whom belongs.	Sq. Miles.	Population.
Hayti { Hayti.....	Independent.	29,000	800,000
{ Dominica.....	"		200,000
Cuba.....	Spain.	5,000	1,396,000
Porto Rico.....	"	3,865	330,000
Jamaica.....	Great Britain.	5,468	377,433
Trinidad.....	"	2,000	84,438
Barbadoes.....	"	168	152,727
Grenada, &c.....	"	138	31,900
St. Vincent.....	"	131	31,755
Tobago.....	"	90	15,450
St. Lucia.....	"	300	27,141
Antigua.....	"	108	35,408
Montserrat.....	"	49	7,053
St. Christopher.....	"	68	20,741
Virgin Islands.....	"	137	6,053
Dominica.....	"	291	25,065
Bahama Islands.....	"	5,424	27,519
Quadeloupe, &c.....	France.	615	139,055
Martinique.....	"	322	137,455
St. Martin's.....	Holland and France	32	6,500
Curacao, &c.....	"	275	31,835
St. Eustatius.....	"	190	1,903
Santa Cruz.....	Denmark.	105	22,862
St. Thomas.....	"	43	12,561
St. John's.....	"	42	1,715
St. Bartholomew's.....	Sweden.	25	9,000
Margarita.....	Venezuela.	540	15,000
Total.....		54,424	3,946,829

NINE OF THE LARGEST PRODUCING STATES OF SOME OF THE MOST IMPORTANT STAPLES OF THE UNITED STATES.

Corn in 1866.	Bushels.	Wheat in 1866.	Bushels.	Oats in 1866.	Bushels.	Hay in 1866.	Tons.	White Potatoes in 1866.	Bushels.
Illinois.....	155,844,350	Illinois.....	28,551,421	Pennsylvania.....	64,954,560	New York.....	4,759,516	New York.....	31,166,678
Indiana.....	127,676,247	Wisconsin.....	20,307,920	New York.....	54,029,350	Illinois.....	2,340,063	Pennsylvania.....	15,636,859
Ohio.....	99,766,822	Iowa.....	15,753,323	Illinois.....	30,054,370	Pennsylvania.....	1,970,836	Maine.....	6,146,725
Kentucky.....	65,564,630	Michigan.....	14,740,639	Ohio.....	22,187,420	Ohio.....	1,963,799	Vermont.....	5,305,045
Iowa.....	52,288,184	New York.....	12,556,406	Wisconsin.....	17,174,086	Michigan.....	1,218,959	Illinois.....	5,102,035
Tennessee.....	46,880,933	Pennsylvania.....	10,519,660	Iowa.....	12,607,749	Iowa.....	1,161,039	Michigan.....	5,037,298
Missouri.....	46,819,543	Ohio.....	10,208,854	Virginia.....	10,245,156	Wisconsin.....	1,151,477	Ohio.....	4,516,640
Pennsylvania.....	35,831,877	Indiana.....	9,114,562	Indiana.....	10,158,662	Indiana.....	1,088,932	New Jersey.....	4,039,708
New York.....	22,809,893	Maryland.....	4,383,708	Michigan.....	8,293,877	Maine.....	957,772	Wisconsin.....	3,940,273

Tobacco in 1866.	Pounds.	Cotton in 1866.	Bales 400 lbs. each.	Rice in 1866.	Pounds.	Wool in 1866.	Pounds.	Sugar in 1866.	Hhds. of 100 lbs.
Virginia.....	114,480,516	Mississippi.....	1,195,699	South Carolina.....	119,100,528	Ohio.....	10,648,101	Louisiana.....	297,816
Kentucky.....	61,683,856	Alabama.....	997,978	Georgia.....	52,507,652	New York.....	9,454,473	Florida.....	1,761
Tennessee.....	46,064,983	Louisiana.....	722,218	North Carolina.....	7,593,976	Pennsylvania.....	4,752,523	Georgia.....	1,167
North Carolina.....	39,423,900	Georgia.....	701,840	Louisiana.....	6,456,017	Michigan.....	4,062,858	Texas.....	590
Maryland.....	29,993,875	Texas.....	405,100	Mississippi.....	657,293	Vermont.....	2,975,544	Wisconsin.....	283
Ohio.....	25,963,815	Arkansas.....	367,485	Alabama.....	490,559	California.....	2,631,922	Mississippi.....	244
Illinois.....	17,546,981	South Carolina.....	353,413	Florida.....	223,209	Virginia.....	2,509,443	South Carolina.....	198
Missouri.....	12,952,285	Tennessee.....	227,450	Tennessee.....	30,516	Illinois.....	2,477,563	Alabama.....	108
New York.....	9,824,384	North Carolina.....	145,514	Texas.....	26,670	Indiana.....	2,466,264	North Carolina.....	38

AREAS AND CAPITALS OF THE UNITED STATES IN 1868. POPULATION AND EDUCATIONAL STATISTICS FROM THE CENSUS OF 1860.

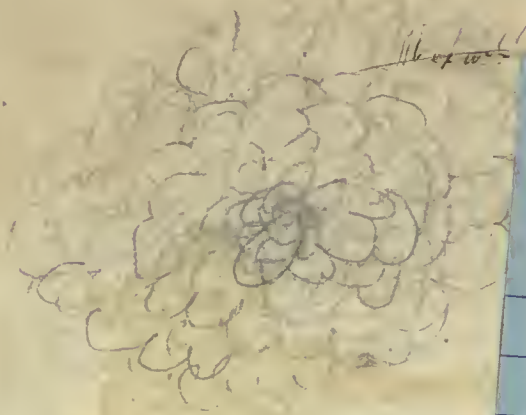
STATES AND TERRITORIES.	CAPITALS.	Area.	Whites.	Free Colored.	Slaves.	Total.	Number attending Schools and Colleges.	Annual Expenditure for Education.	Persons over 20 years unable to read and write.	Total number of volumes in public libraries.
Maine.....	Augusta.....	35,000	626,952	1,327	.....	628,279	189,210	\$533,610	8,595	405,901
New Hampshire.....	Concord.....	9,280	325,579	494	.....	326,073	82,934	343,575	4,717	227,212
Vermont.....	Montpelier.....	10,212	314,389	709	.....	315,098	79,565	294,345	8,916	167,429
Massachusetts.....	Boston.....	7,800	1,221,464	9,602	.....	1,231,066	249,293	2,035,401	46,921	1,997,151
Rhode Island.....	Providence and Newport.....	1,306	170,668	3,952	.....	174,620	31,568	213,327	6,112	465,419
Connecticut.....	Hartford and New Haven.....	4,750	451,520	8,627	.....	460,147	89,936	618,235	8,833	404,206
New York.....	Albany.....	47,000	3,831,730	49,005	.....	3,880,735	805,550	4,917,794	121,878	2,436,576
New Jersey.....	Trenton.....	8,320	646,699	25,318	18	672,035	119,216	798,629	23,081	433,321
Pennsylvania.....	Harrisburg.....	46,000	2,849,266	56,849	.....	2,906,115	669,961	3,135,819	81,515	1,344,924
Delaware.....	Dover.....	2,120	90,589	19,829	1,798	112,216	18,672	115,309	13,169	88,470
Maryland.....	Annapolis.....	11,124	615,918	83,942	87,189	687,049	79,675	437,357	37,518	235,055
District of Columbia.....	.....	60	60,764	11,131	3,185	75,080	.....	121,854	6,881	191,723
Virginia.....	Richmond.....	38,352	712,495	56,064	477,903	1,246,462	154,963	1,042,879	86,452	67,150
West Virginia.....	Wheeling.....	23,000	334,916	1,978	.....	336,894	.....	.....	.....	.....
North Carolina.....	Raleigh.....	60,704	631,100	30,463	331,059	992,622	116,567	656,684	74,977	190,091
South Carolina.....	Columbia.....	34,000	291,388	9,914	402,406	703,708	46,590	497,837	16,208	471,542
Georgia.....	Milledgeville.....	58,000	691,588	3,500	462,193	1,057,286	94,687	687,339	44,257	272,935
Florida.....	Tallahassee.....	59,268	77,748	932	110,425	140,255	8,503	95,511	5,461	46,375
Alabama.....	Montgomery.....	50,722	526,431	2,690	435,080	964,201	98,204	711,108	38,000	155,275
Mississippi.....	Jackson.....	47,156	353,901	773	436,631	791,305	.....	699,201	15,636	178,745
Louisiana.....	Baton Rouge.....	41,346	357,629	18,647	331,726	708,002	48,023	931,706	19,010	116,604
Texas.....	Austin.....	274,356	421,294	355	182,566	604,215	63,625	556,302	18,476	86,538
Ohio.....	Columbus.....	39,904	2,302,838	36,664	.....	2,339,502	605,656	2,825,885	64,828	790,666
Indiana.....	Indianapolis.....	33,809	1,339,000	11,428	1,350,428	338,091	800,238	820,238	62,716	467,662
Illinois.....	Springfield.....	55,410	1,704,323	7,628	.....	1,711,951	405,121	2,420,134	50,264	244,394
Kentucky.....	Frankfort.....	37,680	919,617	10,684	225,483	1,155,684	182,659	942,556	70,040	141,012
Tennessee.....	Nashville.....	45,600	826,782	7,300	275,719	1,109,801	163,022	984,465	72,054	245,228
Arkansas.....	Little Rock.....	52,198	324,191	144	111,115	435,450	42,726	188,759	23,665	23,221
Missouri.....	Jefferson City.....	65,350	1,063,509	3,572	114,931	1,182,012	263,483	1,051,786	60,545	181,884
Michigan.....	Lansing.....	66,451	742,314	6,799	.....	749,113	188,604	621,567	15,485	250,656
Wisconsin.....	Madison.....	53,924	774,710	1,171	.....	775,881	184,709	703,966	16,546	150,559
Iowa.....	Des Moines.....	55,045	673,844	1,104	.....	674,948	107,008	652,642	19,951	107,104
Minnesota.....	St. Paul.....	83,531	173,396	259	.....	173,655	24,150	101,382	4,763	33,649
California.....	Sacramento.....	188,981	361,353	4,086	.....	365,439	25,916	493,849	19,693	149,064
Oregon.....	Salem.....	95,274	52,337	128	.....	52,465	10,816	60,080	1,511	5,300
Kansas.....	Topeka.....	81,318	106,379	625	2	107,206	13,332	40,792	3,067	9,735
Nevada.....	Carson City.....	112,090	6,812	45	.....	6,857	.....	.....	150	.....
Nebraska.....	Omaha City.....	75,995	28,759	67	15	28,841	3,296	12,219	634	10,742
TERRITORIES.										
Washington.....	Olympia.....	69,994	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
Idaho.....	Boise City.....	90,932	11,138	30	.....	11,168	1,088	23,976	438	11,325
Montana.....	Virginia City.....	143,776	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
Dakota.....	Yankton.....	149,797	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
Utah.....	Salt Lake.....	88,056	2,576	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
Colorado.....	Denver.....	104,500	40,214	30	29	40,273	7,944	32,738	323	5,476
Arizona.....	Prescott.....	113,916	34,231	46	.....	34,277	.....	.....	.....	.....
New Mexico.....	Santa Fe.....	121,201	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
Indian Territory.....	Tahlequah.....	68,991	82,924	85	.....	83,009	.....	1,466	9,449	32,785
Russian American Purchase.....	Sitka.....	577,390	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	7,944	.....	.....
Wyoming.....	Cheyenne.....	90,800	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
Total.....		3,611,849	26,975,575	487,996	3,953,760	31,414,719	5,634,374	\$32,440,305	1,186,311	12,529,949

In consequence of the abolition of slavery throughout the United States, the slaves in the above table should now be classed as Free Colored. The Indians of the United States were not included in the Census of 1860. Of these there are estimated to be about 400,000; thus making the total population of the United States nearly 32,000,000.

AGRICULTURAL AND MANUFACTURING STATISTICS OF THE UNITED STATES FROM THE CENSUS OF 1860.

STATES AND TERRITORIES.	AGRICULTURAL STATISTICS.										MANUFACTURING STATISTICS.		
	Wheat, bushels.	Corn, bushels.	Oats, bushels.	Cotton, bales, 400 lbs.	Rice, pounds.	Tobacco, pounds.	Sugar, hds., of 1000 lbs.	Wool, pounds.	Hay, tons.	Irish Potatoes, bushels.	Sweet Potatoes, bushels.	Amount of capital invested.	Value of raw material used.	Value of annual product.
Maine.....	233,877	1,546,071	2,988,959	.....	.....	1,583	1,495,063	975,803	6,374,617	1,425	\$22,000,000	\$20,861,452	\$36,075,498
New Hampshire.....	238,966	1,414,628	1,329,233	.....	.....	21,281	1,160,212	642,741	4,137,543	161	25,900,000	24,400,000	45,500,000
Vermont.....	431,127	1,463,020	3,630,267	.....	.....	12,163	2,975,544	940,178	5,253,498	623	9,500,000	8,110,000	16,000,000
Massachusetts.....	119,783	2,167,063	1,980,075	.....	.....	3,233,198	377,267	665,331	3,201,901	616	133,000,000	141,000,000	266,000,000
Rhode Island.....	1,131	458,912	244,453	.....	.....	705	90,899	82,722	542,909	916	23,300,000	23,400,000	47,500,000
Connecticut.....	52,401	2,059,835	1,622,218	.....	.....	6,000,133	336,956	602,425	1,833,148	2,710	45,720,000	40,140,000	83,000,000
New York.....	8,681,100	20,061,048	35,175,134	.....	1,120	5,764,582	8,454,473	3,564,793	26,447,394	7,529	175,449,206	209,899,590	379,623,550
New Jersey.....	1,763,128	9,723,336	4,539,132	.....	.....	149,455	349,250	508,726	4,171,690	1,034,832	40,000,000	42,600,000	81,000,000
Pennsylvania.....	15,045,231	28,196,821	27,387,147	.....	.....	3,181,586	4,752,523	2,245,413	11,087,467	103,187	189,000,000	145,800,000	285,500,000
Delaware.....	912,941	3,892,337	1,046,910	.....	.....	9,999	50,201	36,973	377,931	142,213	5,600,000	5,375,000	9,920,000
Maryland.....	6,103,480	13,444,922	3,959,298	.....	.....	38,410,965	491,511	191,744	1,264,429	236,740	61,800,000	21,900,000	42,576,000
District of Columbia.....	12,760	80,840	23,543	.....	.....	15,200	100	3,183	81,693	5,668	2,650,000	2,801,000	5,512,000
Virginia.....	13,129,180	33,360,704	10,186,720	12,727	8,225	123,967,757	2,509,443	445,133	2,292,398	1,960,817	26,400,000	30,880,000	51,300,000
North Carolina.....	4,743,706	30,078,564	2,781,860	145,514	7,593,976	32,853,250	38	883,473	181,365	830,565	6,140,039	9,310,000	14,450,000
South Carolina.....	1,285,631	15,065,606	936,974	353,413	119,100,528	104,412	198	427,102	87,587	226,735	4,115,683	3,620,000	6,800,000
Georgia.....	2,544,913	30,776,293	1,231,817	701,840	52,507,652	919,316	1,767	946,229	46,448	303,789	6,508,541	11,160,000	10,000,000
Florida.....	2,808	2,824,538	46,899	63,322	223,209	758,015	1,161	58,594	11,478	18,766	1,129,759	6,675,000	965,000
Alabama.....	1,222,487	32,761,194	682,179	997,978	499,559	221,284	108	681,404	62,211	491,646	5,439,917	8,260,000	4,400,000
Mississippi.....	579,452	29,563,735	221,235	1,195,699	657,293	127,736	244	637,729	32,901	414,320	4,563,873	3,740,000	2,460,000
Louisiana.....	29,283	16,205,856	89,377	722,218	6,456,017	40,610	297,816	296,187	52,721	294,655	2,060,981	7,110,000	15,500,000
Texas.....	1,464,273	16,521,593	985,889	405,100	25,670	98,016	590	1,497,748	11,865	174,182	1,846,612	3,850,000	2,770,000
Arkansas.....	955,298	17,758,665	475,268	367,485	216	999,577	410,255	9,356	418,010	1,566,540	1,040,000	909,000	2,150,000
Tennessee.....	5,409,863	50,748,266	2,267,814	227,450	30,516	38,931,277	1,400,508	143,499	1,182,005	2,604,672	17,270,000	9,265,000	17,100,000
Kentucky.....	7,394,811	64,043,633	4,677,029	4,092	24,407	108,102,433	2,325,124	158,476	1,756,531	1,057,557	20,000,000	21,380,000	36,320,000
Ohio.....	14,532,570	70,637,140	15,409,234	.....	.....	25,528,972	10,648,101	1,564,502	8,955,101	304,445	58,000,000	70,000,000	125,000,000
Michigan.....	8,313,185	12,162,110	4,036,980	.....	.....	120,621	4,062,858	768,256	5,261,245	33,492	24,000,000	19,000,000	35,200,000
Indiana.....	15,219,120	69,641,591	5,317,831	.....	1,219	7,246,132	2,466,294	622,426	3,866,647	299,516	18,875,000	27,360,000	43,250,000
Illinois.....	24,159,500	115,296,779	15,220,029	6	.....	7,014,230	2,477,563	1,77					

Maxwell Book Price 2.00



Maxwell

14 DAY USE
 RETURN TO DESK FROM WHICH BORROWED
EDUCATION - PSYCHOLOGY LIBRARY
 This book is due on the last date stamped below, or on the date to which renewed.
 Renewed books are subject to immediate recall.

7 DAY USE DURING SUMMER SESSIONS

DEC 5 1962

JAN 2 RECD

SEMESTER LOAN

DEC 16 1987

STRICTLY TO BE CALLED

RECEIVED

DEC 22 1987 -1 PM

EDUC-PSYCH. LIBRARY

LD 21-50m-6,'60 (B1321s10)476

General Library
 University of California
 Berkeley

3,953,760
 487,446
 4,441,756
 24,915,575
 31,417,331
 400 000
 31,817,331

31,517,331

COWPERTHWAIT & CO.

PUBLISHERS AND BOOKSELLERS,
PHILADELPHIA,

INVITE ATTENTION TO THE FOLLOWING

VALUABLE SCHOOL PUBLICATIONS.

WARREN'S GEOGRAPHICAL SERIES.

WARREN'S PRIMARY GEOGRAPHY.

WARREN'S COMMON SCHOOL GEOGRAPHY.

WARREN'S PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY.

Forming a complete geographical course, adapted to all grades of schools. The Maps and Engravings are of the very highest order of excellence; and in all of the books the Maps are in the same volume with the descriptive text. The series is now used in most of the principal cities and towns of the United States; and wherever the books have been adopted they have received the warmest commendations of those who have used or examined them.

WARREN'S PHYSICAL CHARTS.

IN TWO SERIES.

FIRST SERIES.—Fourteen Physical and Outline Charts, mounted upon Card-board, making Seven Tables, enclosed in a Portfolio, and accompanied by a Hand-Book for the Teacher. Price, per set, \$18.00.

SECOND SERIES.—Eight Political and Outline Charts, mounted upon card-board, price, per set, \$10.00. Same as to the arrangement as the first particular.

WARREN'S PHYSICAL DRAWING-BOOK.

A Recently Improved System of Map-Drawing by the use of Pencils and Ink, with a variety of ornaments.

GREEN'S SERIES OF GRAMMARS.

COMPLETE IN FIVE VOLUMES.

GREEN'S ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

GREEN'S ANALYTICS.

This valuable series of School Books was prepared by Professor A. S. GREEN, of Brown University. They are best recommended for their general use as text-books in the common schools in all parts of the United States.

COLBURN'S SERIES OF ARITHMETICS.

THE CHILD'S ARITHMETIC.

COLBURN'S INTELLECTUAL ARITHMETIC.

COLBURN'S COMMON SCHOOL ARITHMETIC.

COLBURN'S ARITHMETIC AND ITS APPLICATIONS.

These valuable works were prepared by DANA P. COLBURN, Master of the Rhode Island State Normal School. They are eminently practical, and have received the warm approval of all those who have had the opportunity to examine them.

POTTER & HAMMOND'S SYSTEM OF PENMANSHIP.

IN THREE SERIES.

The School Series.—Nos. 1 to 9 inclusive.

The Ladies' Series.—Nos. 10 to 12 inclusive.

The Mercantile and Ornamental Series.—Nos. 13 to 15 inclusive.

The system is rendered very complete by its division into three series, so that it now meets the wants of all, from the young child in the primary school, to the mature person who wishes to improve in Flourish, Capitals and General Copy.

By the use of the *writing-board*, the writing is done with a *pen*, and the *pen-drawing* is done with a *pen*, and the *pen-drawing* is done with a *pen*. The series are not surpassed in respect to *accuracy* and *ease*.

POTTER & HAMMOND'S BOOK-KEEPING.

IN SINGLE AND DOUBLE ENTRY.

IN THREE VOLUMES, BOUND IN TWO.

1. Common School Book-Keeping. No. 1 & 2.
2. The High School Book-Keeping.

COMPLETE, THOROUGH, AND EXHAUSTIVE.

POTTER & HAMMOND'S WRITING CHARTS.

These charts contain all the elementary principles and rules of penmanship. The most complete, methodical, and useful ever published.

PENMANSHIP EXPLAINED.

A Book of 120 pages containing Full Instructions for the use of the Pen.

BERRARD'S HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

A Full volume of 527 pages, bound in cloth. It is well adapted for the increasing popularity of this series.

BERRARD'S MANUAL OF SPANISH ART AND LITERATURE.

An charming little book of 180 pages, adapted to be highly useful in schools.

GOODRICH'S CHILD'S HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

Designed as a first book of history for schools. Illustrated with numerous anecdotes.

LEACH'S COMPLETE SPELLING-BOOK.

All the difficulties in orthography are so arranged and classified in the manual, that they may be easily overcome by the pupil.

Booksellers and School-Teachers are invited to correspond with us in regard to any of our books. We will send them on trial, or in exchange for other books.